

WORLD WAR II

**A TEACHING LESSON PLAN AND TOOL
DESIGNED TO PRESERVE AND DOCUMENT THE
WORLD'S GREATEST CONFLICT**



**PREPARED BY THE WORLD WAR II VETERAN'S COMMITTEE, WASHINGTON, DC
UNDER A GENEROUS GRANT FROM THE DODGE JONES FOUNDATION**

INDEX

Preface

Organization of the World War II Veterans Committee	Tab 1
Educational Standards	Tab 2
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • National Council for History Standards • State of Virginia Standards of Learning 	

Primary Sources Overview	Tab 3
---------------------------------------	--------------

Background

Background to European History	Tab 4
---	--------------

Instructors Overview	Tab 5
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pre – 1939 • The War 1939 – 1945 • Post War 1945 	

Chronology of World War II	Tab 6
---	--------------

Lesson Plans (Core Curriculum)

Lesson Plan Day One:	Prior to 1939	Tab 7
Lesson Plan Day Two:	1939 – 1940	Tab 8
Lesson Plan Day Three:	1941 – 1942	Tab 9
Lesson Plan Day Four:	1943 – 1944	Tab 10
Lesson Plan Day Five:	1944 – 1945	Tab 11
Lesson Plan Day Six:	1945	Tab 11.5
Lesson Plan Day Seven:	1945 – Post War	Tab 12

(Supplemental Curriculum/American Participation)

Supplemental Plan Day One:	American Leadership	Tab 13
Supplemental Plan Day Two:	American Battlefields	Tab 14
Supplemental Plan Day Three:	Unique Experiences	Tab 15

Appendixes

A.	Suggested Reading List	Tab 16
B.	Suggested Video/DVD Sources	Tab 17
C.	Suggested Internet Web Sites	Tab 18
D.	Original and Primary Source Documents	Tab 19
	for Supplemental Instruction	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • United States • British • German 	
E.	Veterans Organizations	Tab 20
F.	Military Museums in the United States	Tab 21
G.	Glossary of Terms	Tab 22
H.	Glossary of Code Names	Tab 23
I.	World War II Veterans Questionnaire	Tab 24

Preface

I. Organization of the World War II Veterans Committee

The World War II Veterans Committee, a non-profit project of the American Veterans Center, got its start with the successful WWII Chronicles radio series. This series, hosted by the late great "Voice of WWII" Edward J. Herlihy, became a big hit nationwide with over 500 stations carrying the weekly series from 1991 to 1995. Following that success the WWII Veterans Committee was launched and has become our nation's premier organization dedicated to the delivery of veterans stories through all forms of media. In 2004 the Committee has surpassed the 65,000-supporter mark nationwide.

The World War II Veterans Committee supports a wide-ranging program in film, television, radio and publications in an effort to preserve the legacy of the World War II generation for current and future generations.

The Committee publishes the quarterly "World War II Chronicles" newsletter, produces documentaries for radio and television and publishes books and special studies.

The Committee also sponsors a student essay contest, a speakers program for schools and maintains a "Vets Hotline" where veterans can call in and record their stories.

The Committee's Annual Edward J. Herlihy Awards Banquet offers the opportunity to honor WWII veterans off all branches - and to pay special tribute to fellow veterans' organizations.

Our committee's goal is to deliver veterans stories to the American public through all forms of media. Thus our motto:

"Bringing the stories of the Greatest Generation to the Latest Generation."

For more information about the Committee or becoming a supporter, write to: The World War II Veterans Committee, 1100 N. Glebe Road, Suite 910, Arlington, VA 22201 or send an email to: tholbert@americanveteranscenter.org

II. National/State Educational Standards

The World War II Veterans Committee hopes to do its part in keeping the history of World War II in our schools. Sadly, though young people's interest in the World War II-era is growing, contemporary high schools are focusing on the subject less and less, and teachers are burdened by textbooks that too often shift the focus away from the brave men and women who defeated Nazism, Fascism, and Japanese Imperialism and toward present-day special interests. It is our hope that with this curriculum, teachers will have the tools to properly teach a subject that so many young people do want to learn about.

Veterans across America have long recognized an unfortunate fact: most of today's high school classrooms offer scant instruction on the importance of World War II. Interestingly, however, contemporary high school students share the public's fascination for "all things WWII." The commercial success and critical accolades enjoyed by such recent films as *Saving Private Ryan*, *the Thin Red Line*, and *Pearl Harbor* suggests an interest that is unlikely to wane. The recent HBO multi-episode series "Band of Brothers" provided viewers with 10 hours of close-in viewing experience, all of it focused on the real life exploits of one very busy US Army unit. But what about our veterans and the stories they have to share? What, if anything, can be done now to ensure their stories are shared with students in today's and tomorrow's classrooms? What can be done to ensure that students understand the issues involved in WWII, and that they appreciate the legacy of the Greatest Generation who fought and died to defeat Nazism, Fascism and Japanese militarism and to save the cause of freedom?

Lastly, it is intended that this curriculum plan will meet the standards that have been established at the national, state and local levels for the study of both American History and World History.

National Council for History Standards

At the national level this curriculum will meet the National Standards for History, Basic Edition 1996 that was developed by the National Center for History in the Schools at the University of California, Los Angeles under the guidance of the National Council for History Standards. The standards were developed with funding from the National Endowment for the Humanities and the U.S. Department of Education. The standards that were established include;

American History (Era 8)

Standard 3

The causes and course of World War II, the character of the war at home and abroad, and its reshaping of the U.S. role in world affairs.

Standard 3A

The student understands the international background of World War II.

Standard 3B

The student understands World War II and how the Allies prevailed.

Standard 3C

The student understands the effects of World War II at home.

World History (Era 8)

Standard 4

The causes and global consequences of World War II

Standard 4A

The student understands the causes of World War II

Standard 4B

The student understands the global scope, outcome, and human costs of the war.

Standard 5

Major global trends from 1900 to the end of World War II.

Standard 5A

The student understands major global trends from 1900 to the end of World War II.

Standards of Learning for the State of Virginia

At the state level the curriculum is intended to meet the criteria established for the various Standards of Learning (S.O.L.)'s. As an example the State of Virginia's SOL's that have been developed and implemented include the following requirements for the historical period surrounding World War II.

Standard VUS.10

The student will demonstrate knowledge of World War II by:

Standard VUS.10a

identifying the causes and events that led to American involvement in the war, including military assistance to Britain and the Japanese attack on Pearl Harbor;

Standard VUS.10b

describing the major battles and turning points of the war in North Africa, Europe, and the Pacific, including Midway, Stalingrad, the Normandy landing (D-Day), and Truman's decision to use the atomic bomb to force the surrender of Japan;

Standard VUS.10c

describing the role of all-minority military units, including the Tuskegee Airmen and Nisei regiments;

Standard VUS.10d

describing the Geneva Convention and the treatment of prisoners of war during World War II;

Standard VUS.10e

analyzing the Holocaust (Hitler's "final solution"), its impact on Jews and other groups, and postwar trials of war criminals.

Standard VUS.11

The student will demonstrate knowledge of the effects of World War II on the home front by:

Standard VUS.11a

explaining how the United States mobilized its economic, human, and military resources;

Standard VUS.11b

describing the contributions of women and minorities to the war effort;

Standard VUS.11c

explaining the internment of Japanese Americans during the war;

Standard VUS.11d

describing the role of media and communications in the war effort.

World History (Era VII: Era of Global Wars, 1914 to 1945)Standard WHII.10

The student will demonstrate knowledge of political, economic, social, and cultural developments during the Interwar Period by

Standard WHII.10c

examining events related to the rise of aggression, and human costs of dictatorial regimes in the Soviet Union, Germany, Italy, and Japan, and identifying their major leaders, i.e. Joseph Stalin, Adolf Hitler, Benito Mussolini, Hirohito, and Hideki Tojo.

Standard WHII.11

The student will demonstrate knowledge of the worldwide impact of World War II by

Standard WHII.11a

explaining economic and political causes, major events, and identifying leaders of the war, with emphasis on Franklin D. Roosevelt, Harry Truman, Dwight D. Eisenhower, Douglas MacArthur, George Marshall, Winston Churchill, Joseph Stalin, Adolf Hitler, Hideki Tojo and Hirohito;

Standard WHII.11b

examining the Holocaust and other examples of genocide in the twentieth century;

Standard WHII.11c

explaining the terms of the peace, the war crimes trials, the division of Europe, plans to rebuild Germany and Japan, and the creation of international cooperative organizations.

III. Primary Sources Overview

With the advent of the internet, access to a wide variety of historic materials became available to any person who has access to a computer and the world wide web. The greatest source for materials that can assist in teaching about World War II is the United States Government. The best thing of all is that this material is free. The majority of the U.S. Government holdings that relate to World War II are in storage at the National Archives and Records Administration (NARA) facility located at College Park, Maryland. Known as NARA II, the bulk of the textual records that were created in the World War II years as well as the photographs and motion pictures that were taken by combat photographers are in storage here. NARA has created an online website entitled “the Digital Classroom” that allows visitors to view and download a wide variety of historic documents and photographs that relate to World War II. Please see the appendix at the rear of this lesson plan for information about how to visit this web site.

Additionally, the National Archives and Records Administration administers a nationwide network of facilities throughout the United States. This includes 16 research facilities where individuals can access a variety of information related to World War II.

Other U.S. Government sources for information on World War II include the military services; the U.S. Army, the U.S. Navy, the U.S. Air Force (formerly the Army Air Force), and the U.S. Marine Corps. Each of these services maintains a historical organization that is charged with recording the history of the service. Each of these historical organizations maintains their own web site that provide access to various documents, histories and information about that services actions which include activity in World War II. Additionally, many of these services maintain a network of museums that provide a varied visual experience that enables the study of history with a “hands-on” experience. These museum facilities have static displays of the vehicles and equipment from both sides of the World war II conflict. Please see the appendix at the rear of this lesson plan for information to visit these web sites.

Additional sources for information about World War II may be found at the state and local level. Some states have created their own museums and organizations that serve as repositories for understanding the World War II experience. Many veterans groups, both on the particular unit level such as the 101st Airborne Division Association or the Veterans of Foreign Wars (VFW) have been in existence prior to or since World War II. Most have web sites that can provide unit histories or information about particular actions that are of noteworthy interest.

Many veterans groups maintain speaker’s bureaus’ that are dedicated to providing either a World War II veteran or someone with in-depth knowledge to speak to groups that are interested in learning about World War II. Please see the appendix at the rear for further information.

Background to European History and the Causes of World War II

As the Age of Napoleonic France closed with the Battle of Waterloo in 1815, many of the nations of Europe began to experience a rise of Nationalistic feelings. In response to these feelings, the European monarchs tightened their grip on the reigns of government. As an outgrowth of this royal prerogative, the major empires of Europe began a competitiveness that was to encompass the remaining years of the 19th century. This competition was fueled by the advent of the Industrial Revolution, the discovery of new natural resources in the undeveloped parts of the world and a search for new markets for manufactured goods. In 19th Century Europe the dominant governments included the all encompassing British Empire on which the “sun never set”; the rejuvenated French Monarchy; the Russian behemoth that straddled both Europe and Asia; the Austro-Hungarian Empire that comprised of numerous nationalities and ethnic cultures; the militaristic Prussian Empire and the aging and sick man of Europe known as the Ottoman Empire. Each of these empires had their own national goals for their own best interests. These goals became known as the concept of “Imperialism”. For each, it was their desire to take the natural resources from areas throughout the world that were under their control and expand their own national interests. In the course of these events we see the conflicts that emerged between them. On the other hand we also see other actions that served to bring them together, because a common bond at a particular period of time would serve their own interests. The Crimean War of 1853 – 1856 began as a dispute between Russia and France and saw alliances being created between Turkey, France, England, Sardinia (Piedmont, Italy) and Austria who had already formed an alliance with Prussia. The outcome of the war saw Russia being humiliated at the expense of having the other countries gain concessions, rights and territories from her. Within ten years Prussia would conduct three quick wars against Denmark, Austria and France. The result was the creation of the modern state of Germany. In the Italian peninsula, the Kingdom of Sardinia-Piedmont was responsible for taking the lead over a ten year period that saw a modern Italy emerge by 1870. In each of these situations, the major European powers were focused on their own national interests that would give them more power in European and World affairs. The one interesting event that actually saw them all work together, albeit for individual reasons, was the Boxer Rebellion of 1900 in China. The relief expedition that came to the aid of the besieged legation quarter of Peking in the summer of 1900 consisted of military personnel from England, France, Italy, Japan, Russia, the United States, Germany and Austria-Hungary. Each of these countries had significant financial interests that they wanted to preserve in China. The outgrowth of all of this was very competitive nationalities that would shift as events changed. The dawn of the 20th century saw a world that was strongly “Euro-centric”.

Since Germany was one of the last countries to develop during the 19th century it found itself in great competition to “catch-up” to the wealth of colonies, natural resources and markets that the other European powers had enjoyed. In the competition that this created Germany came into conflict with neighbors in various parts of the world to include

Africa. The balance of power in Europe was tipping toward a strong German alliance with Austria-Hungary. As Austria-Hungary sought to maintain their territory and extend their influence in the Balkans, also known as the “Powder Keg” of Europe, conflict arose in Sarajevo that was to plunge the world into war.

The mutual “self defense” alliances that had existed in the 19th century quickly brought the Euro-centric world in conflict. By the end of the four and a half years of fighting, over 20 million people had perished and an incalculable value of loss and damage had been wrought on Europe and the world. With the exception of England, the empires that brought on the “Great War” ceased to exist. The Russian Empire collapsed under Communism, the Austro-Hungarian Empire was dissolved in to a mere fraction of its former self, the German Empire lost land and territory in both their continental possessions and their overseas colonies. The Ottoman Empire shrunk and became ripe for its subsequent demise in the early 1920’s. Meeting in the Palace of Versailles on the outskirts of Paris, the victorious allied powers imposed a treaty on a defeated Germany that was to sow the seeds of another war. This angst that this treaty would create in Germany would be inflamed by the oratorical skills of an Austrian who had served as a corporal in a Bavarian Infantry Regiment in the Great War.

The discord and unrest that emerged in Germany after World War I came primarily from one clause of the Versailles Treaty. That clause was in Part VIII, Reparation, Section I. – General Provisions. Article 231. “The Allied and Associated Governments affirm, and Germany accepts, the responsibility of Germany and her allies for causing all the loss and damage to which the Allied and Associated Governments and their nationals have been subjected as a consequence of the war imposed upon them by the aggression of Germany and her allies”. This became known to Germany as the “War Guilt” clause. To those in Germany after the war it became the rallying point that would bring groups of different backgrounds together under a common cause. Those Germans felt that the actions of Germany at the start of World War I was not entirely their fault and that their country was being made to bear the entire burden for the war. On top of that it was felt that France was demanding unjust compensation for her losses in the war. These reparation claims were seen to be of such a degree that they would cripple Germany economically for decades. Many Germans felt that France was trying to retaliate against Germany for her actions during the Franco-Prussian War of 1870-1871.

On all accounts, there was bitterness. Germany was angry for being blamed for the war, being forced to pay enormous reparations and for the loss of what was considered sovereign territory. Italy was unhappy with the Versailles Treaty because they were not given the lands containing Italian speakers from the former Austro-Hungarian Empire. In the Middle East, small Arab nationalistic groups who were finally free of the Ottoman yoke of domination now found themselves being made mandates and protectorates of the British and French governments. Russia no longer existed as an Empire that stretched from Central Europe to the Pacific Ocean. It was now known as the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics and was not even extended an invitation to participate in the ceremonies of the Versailles Treaty. This new socialist state found itself being occupied by the victorious Allies who were trying to protect the supplies originally sent to the Czar from falling in to the hands of the Bolsheviks. In the Siberian far east, a Regiment of the

United States Army watched an army of over 60,000 Japanese soldiers attempt to occupy Russian lands that the Soviets were too weak to defend. Japan as a nation was quite happy with some of the outcome from the Versailles treaty. Japan was assigned a mandate over the Marshall, Mariana and Caroline Islands in the Central Pacific that had once belonged to Germany. Japan soon demonstrated a desire to do more than just serve as a guardian when they began building permanent facilities and began to collect information about the entire region.

When World War I began, the United States under President Woodrow Wilson was determined not to get involved in “this European War”. At the end of World War I, the United States had suffered 55,000 battle deaths and a near equal number of deaths from disease, sickness, and accidents. The Great Influenza Epidemic of 1918 was raging across the world and the United States was suffering at levels not seen in her brief history. Maintaining troops in Europe was a costly endeavor, “bring them home was the cry”.

Germany was not forced to undergo the modern equivalent of being a vanquished foe at the end of World War I. Rather when the armistice took effect on the 11th of November 1918, German soldiers were marshaled into the units and within days began an organized withdrawal back across the frontiers of Belgium, France and Luxembourg, finally crossing the Rhine River in December of 1918. These units kept much of their individual equipment and small arms that even included some automatic weapons. Their systematic retreat was followed by the victorious allied armies. In some cases the distance between the German and allied forces was no more than five or six miles. This was quite unusual since in wars past, the vanquished foe would always have had to surrender its weapons and equipment in the formal surrender ceremony. It must not be forgotten, that the end of World War I was not caused by a formal surrender, but rather it was an armistice which merely meant a cessation of the fighting.

INSTRUCTORS Overview

The structure of World War II can be broken into three very easy to understand periods of history. There were a great deal of events and historic actions that served to lay the ground work for the root causes of World War II. No student of this conflict can fully understand World War II without recognizing the underlying background of the event. Many people merely memorize or concentrate on the factual events that immediately led up to the war. While it is important to recognize these events, a student of the conflict needs to recognize that a conflict of this magnitude was inevitable in light of the events of the 19th century. Most people who study history will readily agree that the outcome of World War I, also known as the “Great War”, certainly contributed to the initiation of another war within 20 years. The first period of World War II history covers all the actions that occurred prior to the actual outbreak of hostilities. The second phase includes the actual period of the war itself. This second period is the one that is most often documented and reflected in the publications, movies, and media of the war. And rightly so, since this is the true nature of the struggle. The third and final phase of World War II can be described as the “aftermath” period. The third phase shaped the events and historic period for the second half of the 20th century. This is the phase that has most affected us as we entered the third millennium.

1. Pre – 1939.

This phase is essential to help recognize the development of Italy, Germany and Japan as important nations in the world. This development occurs through a variety of means and for a variety of reasons. Included in this period is an analysis of the events and their subsequent outcomes that shaped the world after World War I.

2. 1939 – 1945:

This phase is the actual armed conflict of World War II. Although the United States was not drawn into the war until December 7, 1941, it had been indirectly involved since early 1940. At the time of the American entry into World War II, the European countries had been fighting since September 1939. Interestingly enough, in Asia the conflict is often thought of as starting in 1931 due to Japan’s aggression against Chinese interests on the mainland. The course of the war saw significant events happen with the watershed year being 1942. In 1942 both the Germans and the Japanese began to suffer serious setbacks in their respective theaters of war. Further, it was in 1942 that the United States began full scale industrialization necessary to produce goods and equipment for the war. The United States, the Soviet Union and the United Kingdom joined to form an alliance known as the “Allies”. War fighting strategy was developed that a Europe first and Asia/Pacific second would be followed. Slowly, but surely the Allies began to push back the Axis powers of Germany and Japan from their greatest expansion culminating in the end of hostile actions in May and August of 1945.

3. Post – 1945

This phase led to the development of what became known as the “Cold War”. At the cessation of hostilities in both Europe and Asia there was a rush to claim and occupy the national territories that had been formerly controlled by the Axis powers. Some of these divisions had been previously agreed on while others had not. Additionally, the size and scope of the conflict had never been encountered previously. That led to efforts to punish those responsible for the causative events of the war. Military tribunals were established in both Europe and Asia they were tasked to deal with “Crimes against Humanity” as well as the criminal acts which that took place during the course of the war. Both of these types of tribunals were charged with bringing to justice those individuals who were thought to have been perpetrators. Even today, there is still debate about the legacy these trials have left and the notion of one nation punishing another because it was the vanquished in a conflict.

Chronology of World War II

1919:

- Fascist political party established by Benito Mussolini in Italy – 23 March
- Treaty of Versailles signed – 28 June
- Adoption of the Constitution for the Weimar Republic in Germany – 31 July

1920:

- Birth of the League of Nations – 10 January
- Through the Treaty of Versailles Belgium acquires the German areas of Eupen and Malmedy – 20 September
- Through the Treaty of Versailles Japan acquires the German Colonial North Pacific Islands of the Caroline, Marshall, and Marianas – 17 December

1921:

- British and French occupy key German cities when Germany is declared in default of reparations payments directed by the Treaty of Versailles – 8 March

1922:

- Treaty of Rapallo – Germany & Russia – 16 April
- Japanese occupation troops finally leave Russia – 1 October
- Italian Fascists “March on Rome” and take control of the government – 28 October
- Washington Conference – 12 November
- Benito Mussolini granted control of Italian government – 25 November

1923:

- Americans depart from their occupation of the German Rhineland – 11 January
- French occupy Rhineland areas that were vacated by Americans – 11 January
- French & Belgian forces occupy the Ruhr in Germany – 11 January
- Nazi “Beer Hall” putsch, Munich, Germany – 8 November

1924:

- Lenin dies in Russia – 21 January

1925:

- Hindenburg elected President of Germany – 26 April
- Locarno Conference & Treaty – 16 October

1926:

- Japan experiences strong growth of Imperialistic and militaristic feelings - January

1927:

- Termination of the Inter-Allied Commission of Military Control in Germany – 31 January
- Stalin assumes unquestioned control of Russia – 27 December

1928:

- Kellogg-Briand Pact – 27 August

1929:

- Italy signs the Lateran Treaties with the Papacy creating the Vatican City-State – 11 February

1930:

- French and British depart from their occupation of the German Rhineland – 30 June

1931:

- Japanese invasion of Manchuria – 19 September

1932:

- Nazi party power begins to decline as they lose seats in the German Reichstag elections – 6 November

1933:

- Adolph Hitler appointed Chancellor of Germany – 30 January
- Belgium begins to strengthen fortifications along border with Germany – 16 March
- First “Concentration Camp” established in Germany at Dachau (outside of Munich) – 20 March
- Japan announces withdrawal from the League of Nations – 27 May
- Germany takes control of the government of the “Free-State” of Danzig – 20 June
- Germany withdraws from the League of Nations – 14 October

1934:

- “Night of the Long Knives” in Germany (elimination of Hitler’s rivals) – 30 June
- Nazi’s in Austria fail, due to Italy’s aggressive response, in their attempt to seize power by the assassination of Austrian Chancellor Dollfuss – 25 July
- Hindenburg dies – 2 August
- Hitler becomes President and Chancellor of Germany – 19 August

1935:

- Plebiscite held in the Saar Basin by the League of Nations – 13 January
- Germany (Hitler) denounces the provisions of the Versailles Treaty – 16 March
- Italy invades Ethiopia – 3 October

1936:

- The Netherlands begins to strengthen military establishment due to German and Japanese actions - January
- Germany reoccupies the Rhineland (violation of the Locarno Treaty) – 7 March
- Spanish Civil War erupts between Republicans and Nationalists – 18 July
- Germany and Italy pledge support to Nationalists in the Spanish Civil War – 18 July
- Russia pledges support to the Republicans in the Spanish Civil War – 18 July
- Rome – Berlin Axis is established between Italy and Germany – 25 October
- Germany concludes a pact of mutual assistance with Japan – 25 November

1937:

- Italy begins a massive rearmament program – January
- Tension grows between England/France and Germany/Italy over the death of German sailors in the “Deutschland Incident” off the coast of Spain during the Spanish Civil War – 23 June
- Japanese bomb British interests in China (wounding ambassador) – 7 July
- Japan begins all out military campaign to seize control of China – 7 July
- Italy withdraws from the League of Nations – 11 December
- Japanese aircraft “accidentally” bomb American and British ships near Nanking (“Panay Incident”) – 12 December
- Nanking, the capital of China falls to Japanese forces who unleash incredible brutality against the inhabitants that becomes known as the “Rape of Nanking” – 13 December

1938:

- Germany creates a “Greater Germany” by annexation/unification with Austria (“Anschluss”) – 12 March
- Munich Conference (Chamberlain, Daladier, Hitler) agrees to “dismember” Czechoslovakia – 12 September
- Germany occupies the Sudetenland portion of Czechoslovakia – 29 September

1939:

- Spanish Civil War ends with a victory for Franco’s Nationalist forces – 28 March
- Germany occupies the remainder of Czechoslovakia – 15 March
- British Government introduces conscription – 27 April
- Italy invades and occupies Albania – 7 April
- Russia and Germany sign a Non-Aggression Pact – 23 August
- Germany invades Poland and starts World War II in Europe – 1 September
- England and France declare war on Germany – 3 September
- England declares a naval blockade of Germany – 3 September
- Russia, led by General Zhukov, halts and defeats Japanese aggression at the Battle of Khalin-Gol in Eastern Russia – 15 September
- Russia invades Poland from the east – 17 September
- Polish government in Warsaw surrenders – 27 September
- Russia and Germany divide the occupation of Poland – 29 September
- Russia invades Finland – 30 November
- Russia is expelled from the League of Nations – 14 December

1940:

- End of the First Russo-Finnish War with Russia victorious – 12 March
- Germany invades Denmark – 9 April
- Germany invades Norway – 9 April
- Germany invades Luxembourg – 10 May
- Germany invades Holland – 10 May
- Germany invades Belgium – 10 May
- Winston Churchill replaces Neville Chamberlain as Prime Minister of England – 10 May
- Germany invades France – 17 May
- England and France complete the evacuation their forces from Dunkirk (“Operation Dynamo”) – 8 June
- Italy declares war against France and England – 10 June
- Italy attacks France through Alpine border regions – 10 June
- Russia occupies Latvia, Lithuania and Estonia – 15 June
- Germany occupies the English Channel Islands – 21 June
- France and Germany agree to an armistice, Vichy France established – 22 June
- Charles de Gaulle establishes a French government in exile in London – 23 June

- Roosevelt approves bill creating an American “two-ocean” navy – 20 July
- Italian forces invade Egypt from Libya – 13 September
- Selective Service Act passed in the United States – 16 September
- Japan occupies French Indo-China – 22 September
- United States embargos the export of scrap iron and steel – 26 September
- Germany, Italy and Japan create a “Three Power Pact” (Tri-Partite) – 27 September
- Germany begins an aggressive campaign for air superiority over the English Channel and Southern England (Battle of Britain) as a precursor for the invasion of England (Operation Sea Lion) – 8 August
- England and the United States conclude the “Lend – Lease” Pact (passed by Congress 11 March 1941) – 2 September
- German forces occupy Rumania to secure the oil fields – 8 October
- British Royal Air Force defeats the German Luftwaffe in the Battle of Britain – 12 October
- Germany begins intensive campaign to bomb English cities in what becomes known as the “Blitz” – 10 November
- Hungary joins the Axis powers – 20 November
- Rumania joins the Axis powers – 23 November
- British launch surprise offensive against Italians in Egypt – 8 December

1941:

- Bulgaria join the Axis powers – 1 March
- German forces (Afrika Korps) under Rommel reinforce Italian forces in North Africa and launch an offensive against the British – 3 April
- German forces invade Yugoslavia and Greece – 6 April
- Russia and Japan conclude a “non-aggression pact” – 13 April
- German airborne forces invade the island of Crete – 20 May
- German battleship Bismarck sunk in the Atlantic by the British after the Bismarck had sunk the British HMS Hood – 27 May
- Germany invades Russia (“Operation Barbarossa”), but fail to capture Moscow – 22 June
- American forces land in Iceland to provide protection and convoy support – 7 July
- England and Russia pledge aid to each other against Germany – 13 July
- American General Douglas MacArthur becomes Commander-in-Chief of American forces in the Far East – 26 July
- England and the United States issue the Atlantic Charter – 14 August
- England and the United States sign agreement with Russia to provide war materials and supplies – 1 October
- American navy destroyers are sunk by German submarines, USS Kearny (17th) and USS Reuben James (31st) – October
- Hideki Tojo becomes Japanese Prime Minister and Minister of War – 17 October
- Japan bombs American bases at Pearl Harbor, Hawaii – 7 December
- Japan attacks and occupies the Philippine Islands – 7 December
- Japan attacks and captures Hong Kong and Malaya – 7 December

- United States declares war against Japan – 8 December
- German and Italy declare war against the United States – 11 December
- England declares war on Japan – 20 December

1942:

- United States begins the “round-up” of Japanese, German and Italian personnel for internment or deportation – 19 February
- Japan occupies Burma – 8 March
- American carrier launched B-25 bombers attack Tokyo inflicting minimal damage (Doolittle Raid) – 18 April
- United States engages Japanese forces in the Coral Sea – 7 May
- United States halts Japanese advance at Midway Island – 4 June
- Japanese forces invade and occupy the Aleutian islands of Attu and Kiska – 12 June
- Germany lands two teams of agents on the east coast (New York/Florida) of the United States with the goal of committing acts of sabotage – 12 June / 18 June
- German advances in North Africa finally halted by the British at El Alamein – 7 July
- United States Army and Marines land in the Solomon Islands and engage the Japanese forces on the island of Guadalcanal – 7 August
- Germany advances across southwest Russia and begins the siege of Stalingrad – 22 August
- United States determines Italians who are not naturalized will not be classified as “enemy aliens” – 12 October
- British forces under Montgomery launch major offensive at El Alamein that begins to push the German Afrika Korps westward – 23 October
- United States and British forces land in North Africa (Operation Torch) – 8 November
- Germany occupies Vichy France – 11 November
- United States Naval forces defeat Japanese Navy at the Solomon Islands – 12 November

1943:

- British and America supplies significantly aid Russia through the northern convoy routes to Archangel, eastern convoy routes to Vladivostok and southern convoy routes through the Persian Gulf to Iran and into Russia – January
- Churchill and Roosevelt meet for the Casablanca Conference in North Africa and establish the concept of accepting only an “unconditional surrender” from the Axis powers – 14 January
- Russia completes the destruction of the German 6th Army at Stalingrad – 2 February
- American forces pushing eastward and British forces pushing westward meet in Tunisia as the Germans are forced from North Africa – 8 April
- Russia begins great offensive that begin to push German forces westward – 1 July
- American/British forces invade Sicily – 10 July
- Resignation and arrest of Mussolini and the Fascist party is ended in Italy – 26 July

- Conference between Churchill and Roosevelt held in Quebec, Canada to discuss a second front invasion – 24 August
- American/British forces invade mainland Italy – 3 September
- Italy surrenders and withdraws from World War II – 8 September
- Additional German forces are rushed into Italy and seize key cities and areas – 11 September
- Allied forces halted by the German Gustav Line north of Naples – 1 October
- Allied forces try to break through the Gustav Line at Monte Cassino, but are repulsed with heavy losses – 20 November
- Roosevelt meets with Churchill and Stalin in Tehran, Iran to finalize plans for the opening of a second front. Additionally, Churchill and Roosevelt meet with Chinese leader Chiang Kai-shek discuss plans in the war against Japan – 28 November

1944:

- American and British forces land at Anzio (south of Rome) in an attempt to break the stalemate along the Gustav Line – 23 January
- Americans begin invasion of the Marshall Islands – 2 February
- American and British forces break through the Gustav Line and link up with Allied forces from Anzio – 18 May
- American/British forces occupy Rome – 4 June
- American/British forces land at Normandy (Operation Overlord) – 6 June
- American B-29 bombers begin air bombing campaign against Japanese home islands – 16 June
- Allied forces including Patton's Third Army break out (Operation Cobra) of the Normandy bridgehead and move toward Paris – 9 July
- American forces complete capture of Guam – 11 August
- American/British forces land in Southern France (Operation Anvil-Dragoon) – 15 August
- Allies enter and liberate Paris – 24 August
- Allies enter Belgium and liberate Brussels – 2 September
- American First Army reaches the border of Germany (Siegfried Line) – 12 September
- American Seventh Army moving up from southern France link up with American Third Army near Dijon – 15 September
- Dumbarton Oaks Conference held in Washington, D.C. to develop a permanent international organization to keep the peace – 9 October
- American forces land on Leyte in the Philippines – 19 October
- Battle for the Hurtgen Forest – 1 November
- German forces launch their final counter-offensive (Operation Watch on Rhine) of the war (Battle of the Bulge) – 16 December

1945:

- Roosevelt, Churchill and Stalin meet at Yalta in the Crimea to discuss post war plans for Germany, Austria and eastern Europe – 7 February
- Americans defeat the Japanese at the Battle for Iwo Jima – 19 February
- American/British forces break through the German Siegfried Line and enter Germany crossing the Rhine River initially at Remagen – 7 March
- Americans invade and eventually defeat the Japanese at Okinawa – 1 April
- Russia ends its “non-aggression” pact with Japan – 5 April
- Roosevelt dies suddenly, Harry Truman becomes President of the United States – 12 April
- American forces meet the Russian forces at the Elbe River – 25 April
- Mussolini and his mistress are captured and killed by Italian partisans as he tried to escape to Switzerland – 28 April
- German forces in Italy surrender unconditionally – 28 April
- Hitler and his wife Eva Braun die in Berlin – 30 April
- Russian forces occupy Berlin – 1 May
- Germany signs the terms for unconditional surrender in Rheims, France – 7 May
- France given part of the American Occupation Zone of Germany and Austria – 18 May
- San Francisco Conference completes plans for the formation of the United Nations – 26 June
- United States and British Naval and Air forces attack the Japanese home islands and destroy remnants of the Japanese Navy and Air Force – 10 July
- Allies issue a demand to Japan for an unconditional surrender, which is subsequently ignored – 26 July
- Winston Churchill is replaced as Prime Minister by Clement Atlee – 26 July
- America drops the Atomic Bomb on Hiroshima – 6 August
- Russia declares war on Japan and begins an invasion of Manchuria – 8 August
- America drops the Atomic Bomb on Nagasaki – 9 August
- Japan agrees to the terms of surrender provided that Emperor Hirohito can remain on his throne – 14 August
- American occupation forces land in Japan – 28 August
- Japan signs the terms for unconditional surrender on the U.S.S. Missouri in Tokyo Bay – 2 September
- United Nations formally comes into existence – 24 October
- Allied International War Crimes Tribunal convenes at Nurnburg, Germany – 20 November
- Korea remains divided after the Moscow conference – 27 December

1946:

- United Nations holds first session in London – 10 January
- International War Crimes Tribunal Convenes at Tokyo, Japan – 10 April
- Chinese Nationalists and Communists begin all out civil war – 14 April

LESSON PLAN - DAY ONE

Subject:

The period of history in Europe and the world that preceded the outbreak of World War II in September 1939. Since the cessation of the guns of World War I life in Europe has been a struggle for all nations as they try to rebuild. Did these interwar years merely serve as a temporary truce among the nations? The strong feelings that were created as a result of the terms of the Treaty of Versailles seemed to remain just below the surface of each country. It will only be a matter of time that they will emerge and lead Europe into another war that is far more destructive than the last.

Educational Goals:

The Student will learn facts and comprehend the events pertaining to:

- The underlying causes of World War II
- The provisions of the Treaty of Versailles that ended World War I
- The rise of Fascism in Europe and Asia
- The economic effects of the world wide depression of the 1920's
- The establishment of Communism

Duration of instruction time required:

- 45 – 50 minutes

Required materials:

- World or American History Textbook
- Map of Europe
- Map of Asia

Supplemental materials (included):

- **Photograph of Adolf Hitler** (under "X") as a soldier in World War I (National Archives; NARA file#: 208-PU-93Y-4)
During World War I Hitler served as a common soldier rising to the rank of Corporal.
Question to the students: "Do you think that Hitler's experience as a common enlisted soldier in World War I have an effect on how he would conduct World War II? Answer: Yes, since he only saw the small picture of his own area of operations in WWI and throughout the course of WWII the German generals did not have complete trust in him based on his own wartime experiences.

- **Photograph of German Reichstag Fire**, shortly after Hitler's appointment to power (National Archives; NARA file#: 208-N39835)
 The Reichstag fire of February 1933 provided Hitler with a pretext to assume more ruling power and dissolve the authority of the elected Reichstag.
Question to the students: Do you think that when the elected Reichstag members allowed Hitler to assume dictatorial power he would later relinquish those same powers? Answer: Depending on the depth of the student knowledge, they should be able to recognize that once someone gains a degree of power they are certainly not willing to give it up at a later time.
- **German Air Sport Membership Book**
 Since Germany was prohibited from maintaining an Air Force many pilots maintained their flying proficiency by joining various flying or glider clubs.
Question to the students: By using false sporting organizations to train and maintain basic proficiency, do you think that these individuals would be prepared sufficiently to enter the military? Answer: Many individuals who already had basic skills would use these opportunities while those who wished to learn could do so. Further, the individuals who really had no skill or aptitude could be "washed out" without much investment of time.
- **German Workers Front Membership Book**
 In order to maximize the German labor force, all able men and women had to serve in productive employment in either private or government service.
Question to the students: Do think all people regardless of their personal situation should be expected to work? Answer: Germany was a totalitarian state in which all the people served the government. In America it is just the opposite.
- **German Travel Pass**
 As Germany became more and more a totalitarian state citizens were required to carry a variety of documentation that governed what they could and could not do, including travel throughout Germany and outside of Germany.
Question to the students: Do you think that a country has the right to restrict the travel of its residents? Answer: Responses from the students may vary, but again the students have to remember that Germany had begun to suspend the citizens "civil rights" when they took power in 1933.
- **German Army Identification Book**
 Men who were serving, or who had served, in the Germany armed forces were required to carry documentation attesting to their status. Former soldiers from World War I were still considered to be involved in the German military if still physically able.
Question to the students: How long should someone be eligible or face the potential for military service? Answer: Many varied responses. In some European countries today men are eligible for call up to serve in the armed forces through their mid-50's.

- **Life Magazine; July 10, 1939**

As war clouds approached in Asia, the American public was still able to keep informed of the key personalities within the Japanese government.

Question to the students: Do you see a trend in the Japanese personalities who were occupying power in the Japanese government? Should the United States government have taken to heart some of the commentary that is listed in the article? Answer: The article points out the militaristic leanings of many of these individuals. Most likely the American government was already familiar with the potential for trouble that was “brewing” in the Japanese government.

Instructional evaluation (included):

- Ten question multiple choice quiz
- Answer sheet
- Suggestions and exercises for evaluation and review of primary source materials

Topics to be covered:

1. The Treaty of Versailles
2. Chaos in Germany
3. Rise of Fascism
 - Italy - Mussolini
 - Germany – Hitler
 - Spain - Franco
4. Japanese Expansion
 - Militarism - Emperor
5. Establishment of Communism
 - Lenin - Stalin

Methodology:**Part I.**Option One:

Instructor can provide to each student copies of the related materials as listed above and lead the students in a discussion of the events as they transpire

Option Two:

Instructor can highlight and summarize in a lecture format the events that encompass each of the above listed topics.

Part II.

Teacher will provide to each of the students copies of the various primary source documents (Included) and perform a review and critique of each in the following manner:

- a. What is the overall purpose or theme of each document?
- b. What is the significance of each document to the people of the period?
- c. Does each document provide a good visual imagery of the particular period of history being represented?

The Treaty of Versailles

The fighting on the Western Front in World War I ended by agreement between the Allied governments of England, France, and the United States and the Central Powers of Germany and Austria at the 11th hour of the 11th day of the 11th month in the year 1918.

An armistice or agreement to stop fighting was signed in the railway passenger coach of French Marshal Ferdinand Foch at 05:00 AM the woods of Compiègne, France. The cessation was to take effect in six hours. The Armistice provided for the immediate evacuation of all of the German controlled territory in France, Belgium and Luxembourg and withdrawal of all German military forces to areas in Germany that were east of the Rhine River.

The leader of Germany was known as the Kaiser, a corruption of the Latin Word Caesar. The Kaiser Wilhelm (William) II abdicated his throne on the 9th of November 1918 and fled to Holland where he would live until his death in 1940. Germany was then proclaimed a Socialist Republic by the political leaders in Berlin.

This date, November 11, 1918, in American history would become known as Armistice Day and would be celebrated as a holiday. This lasted until after World War II when it was renamed “Veteran’s Day”. In England and the British Commonwealth it became known as “Remembrance Day”.

By agreement the Allied powers began meeting in Paris on January 18, 1919. This was known as the “Paris Peace Conference”. There were 27 nations that were represented as the “Victorious Powers”. Those victorious allies present included representatives from the United States, the United Kingdom, Canada, Australia, South Africa, New Zealand, France, Italy, Japan, Belgium, Bolivia, China, Cuba, Ecuador, Hellenes (Greece), Guatemala, Haiti, Hedjaz (Arabia), Honduras, Liberia, Nicaragua, Panama, Peru, Poland, Portugal, Rumania, Serbia-Croatia-Slovenia (Yugoslavia), Siam (Thailand), Czechoslovakia, and Uruguay. The “Big Three” major participants of the conference were President Woodrow Wilson of the United States, Prime Minister David Lloyd George of England, and President Georges Clemenceau of France. The Italian Prime Minister Vittorio Orlando played a lesser role as part of the “Big-Four” of the Allied leaders.

Germany as a country was excluded from participating in the Peace Conference process until they were presented with the terms of the treaty nearly ready for signature. Russia which became known as the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics was also excluded from the Peace Conference. They had earlier reached a negotiated end of the war with the Germans in the Treaty of Brest-Litovsk which they signed on March 3, 1918, abandoning their territorial occupations of Eastern Europe including Poland, the Baltic States and areas near western Asia and the Middle East.

The Germans had hoped that the Peace Settlement at Versailles would be based on American President Woodrow Wilson’s Fourteen Points. Due to conflicts among the big three over the terms of the treaty many of Wilson’s points faded from view in the

discussions. A League of Nations was created early in the process with the goal to somehow maintain the peace in the world.

Germany was presented with the draft treaty on May 7, 1919. The treaty was found to be objectionable for a number of reasons, but only slight changes were enacted in the draft document. With growing unrest at home, Germany felt they were forced to sign the treaty.

The **Treaty of Versailles** was signed in the Hall of Mirrors in the Palace of Versailles on the 28th of June 1919.

1. Germany was to accept guilt for causing the war under the “War Guilt Clause #231.
2. Germany was to lose the territory of Alsace-Lorraine
3. Germany was to return parts of Belgium
4. Germany was to forfeit her overseas colonies
5. Germany was to provide parts of West Prussia to Poland in order to give Poland an “outlet to the sea”
6. Germany was to be occupied on the West bank of the Rhine River for 15 years
7. Germany was to pay reparations for 30 years of an amount yet to be determined
8. Germany was to limit their armed forces to 100,000 men, maintain no air force and have a navy of six ships and no submarines.

Of the major powers, the Treaty of Versailles was subsequently ratified by the governments of Germany, France, England, Italy and Japan. It was never ratified by the United States.

The **Treaty of St. Germain** was signed on September 10, 1919 between the victorious allied powers and the remains of the Austro-Hungarian Empire.

1. Austria was to recognize the independence of the countries of Czechoslovakia, Yugoslavia, Poland and Hungary
2. Austria was to cede parts of their southern provinces
3. Austria was limited to an army of 30,000
4. Austria was to pay reparations for 30 years
5. Austria was forbidden to create any type of union with Germany

The **Treaty of Neuilly** on November 27, 1919; the **Treaty of Trianon** on June 4, 1920 and the **Treaty of Sevres** on August 20, 1920 dealt with the disposition of the other nations that were part of the Defeated Central Powers. They reflected the future course of Bulgaria, Hungary and the Ottoman Empire respectively.

Chaos in Germany

With the collapse of the German military and government in November 1918 Germany descended into a state of chaos with no one group or governmental agency in charge of the country. This led to the creation of various quasi-military organizations of former soldiers and sailors (“Freikorps”) that were intended to provide some sort of order in the various cities through Germany. These Freikorps units came into violent clashes throughout Germany, but most notably in the major cities of Berlin and Munich.

Among the various political parties that existed in Germany at the end of World War I was the small Communist party. In December these Communists, known as “Spartacists”, recognizing that they could not take power in Germany through democratic means, attempted to take power through a rebellion as they had in Russia. In January 1919, the Communists took control of Berlin. However, this rebellion was short lived and was put down brutally by the Freikorps units on behalf of the new German Provisional Government. These new leaders of Germany in the Provisional Government realized that to remain in Berlin where the Communists had a large amount of popular support would not allow them to begin a new democratic government without undue influence. For this reason the resort city of Weimar to the southwest was selected as the new seat for the fledgling German government. It was here that the new constitution for Germany was created and the democratic institution in Germany became known as the Weimar Republic. While these new German leaders were meeting in Weimar, further unrest was occurring in other places such as Bavaria and the Ruhr regions. In each of these places the differences between the political parties bordered on civil war as each place was dealt with in a firm manner by the Freikorps. Throughout the next three years stretching into 1923 various political parties throughout Germany attempted to seize power with violent means rather than follow the democratic process spelled out by the Weimar Constitution. It was in this scenario that the victorious Allied powers continued to occupy the Rhineland to ensure that Germany would pay their reparations that had been placed on them by the Treaty of Versailles.

It was under these circumstances that the German people and particularly the German military felt that they had not been actually “defeated” at the end of World War I, but had been sold out by the “disloyal traitors” in the government. Rather than being decisively defeated in battle, the German military simply retreated from their frontline positions into Germany. These feelings when coupled with the internal unrest of Germany and the failure of the Allied occupation forces to provide order outside of the Rhineland created a climate that quickly provided nationalistic tendencies for the Germans to reclaim their “honor”. The activities of the various Freikorps units to provide some degree of order among the chaotic cities of Germany additionally contributed to the rise and continuance of militaristic tendencies in the German population. These characteristics began to pave the way for the introduction of new political ideas imported from Italy that became known as Fascism.

Rise of Fascism

Italy - Mussolini

At the conclusion of World War I Italy was counted among the victorious allies that had defeated Germany and Austria-Hungary. The majority of the Italian participation in the war stemmed from their agreement in the Treaty of London in April 1915. In this treaty Italy was to be given the areas from the Austrian-Hungarian Empire of the South Tyrol, Trentino, Trieste, Dalmatia as well as an expansion of her African holdings at the expense of the Ottoman-Turkish Empire. In May 1915 Italy declared war against the German led Central Powers.

At the end of the war and in the provisions of the Treaty of Versailles Italy did not get all of the territory that had been promised. This led to further unrest in Italy, although not to the level of Germany, among rival political parties to include a smaller Communist party. Out of these various groups emerged a new political party known as the Fascio di Combattimento or “Fascists” led by a former World War I soldier and newspaper editor, Benito Mussolini. These Fascists consisted of many former soldiers who adapted the Black shirt as their militaristic uniform. From the start Mussolini became actively involved in the postwar Italian political scene. By 1922 the Fascists had grown in power after seizing control of the city governments in Fiume, Bologna and Milan from rival political parties such as the Communists. This subsequently led to the March on Rome in October 1922 by the Fascists and Mussolini being given dictatorial powers by the King Victor Emmanuel III to restore order to Italy. If nothing else the most memorable act accorded to Mussolini early in his tenure as Prime Minister was that “he made the trains run on time”.

From this start Mussolini continued to grow in power and gain greater support among the Italian people. Mussolini continued to build up the Fascist political party and his own “personal cult” even gaining the nickname of “Il Duce” or the leader. As time went on Mussolini saw himself as the person who could restore the former glory of the Roman Empire to 20th century Italy. His leadership continued to foster a spirit of Nationalism among the Italian people that was incorporated into the very militaristic Fascist party. He was not completely supported by everyone which led to assassination attempts, such as Irish woman Violet Gibson in 1926. It was in 1929 that Mussolini secured his most sought after support when he negotiated the Lateran Accords with Pope Pius XI which gave temporal power for pope to rule the Vatican City state and a significant amount of monetary support in return for Papal support of the Italian government.

Beginning in the 1930's Mussolini saw himself as a leader in European politics who was determined to restore the prestige and power of a unified Italy. This included developing imperialistic aims in Africa that would allow Italy to compete on the world stage against the established interests and empires of both England and France. In the 1930's Italy continued their Imperialistic dreams by moving into territories in

Africa and the Balkans that would increase their economic and political power. Since the early 1930's Mussolini had been strengthening his positions in Eritrea and Italian Somaliland that bordered Africa's lone autonomous country – Ethiopia. By 1935 Italy was ready and in October began their invasion of Ethiopia. Within nine months Italian forces had overrun the country and the Emperor Haile Selassie fled the country. Subsequently appearing at the Headquarters of the League of Nations in Geneva after the fall of his country it seems that Selassie became quite prophetic in his address to this international body. His words were an impassioned plea for justice that seemed to fall on deaf ears, for the League's sanctions against Italy were rescinded within the month. Ironically it was reported that he then told the members that today it was his country that was under attack and occupation, but soon it would be theirs.

Germany – Hitler

When the Armistice of World War I was signed on the 11th of November 1918, Adolph Hitler was in a German hospital recovering from the effects of a poison gas attack he had endured while serving in Belgium. As the terms of the Versailles Treaty took effect Hitler found himself returning to his military roots as a soldier in a Bavarian Infantry Regiment. His wartime service had been such that he was wounded twice and had received both the Iron Cross First and Second Class (**See included photograph of Hitler in WWI**). This was unusual for a junior non-commissioned officer and it becomes ironic when it is realized that he received his Iron Cross First Class based on the recommendation of his Regimental Adjutant who was Jewish. These were the only military decorations that Hitler would wear throughout his life.

Hitler returned to Munich, remaining in the military as a reservist, where he became a member of the Intelligence Section of the Munich Military District. In this capacity he was responsible to monitor the various political parties that were emerging in the Bavarian capital and report any potential unrest or demonstrations to his chain of command. This eventually led to his attending a meeting of a small group known simply as the German Workers Party. This group was one of many from among the socialist, communist, Catholic, and nationalistic groups who competed for the support of the returning military veterans and the conservative Bavarians. After a few days Hitler returned to the German Workers Party and became a member, eventually giving up his position in the post war German military. It was quickly recognized that Hitler had a strong gift as a speaker and could be counted on to provide fiery rhetoric that seemed to stir both passion and peoples emotions. Starting out as the propaganda chief he quickly rose to the leadership of the organization which changed its name to the National Socialist German Workers Party (N.S.D.A.P) which became known as the Nazi party. Being a veteran's organization many of the members continued to wear their old uniforms which were adapted to the color of Brown and militarized into various organizational formations. This body became known as the Sturm Abteilung (Brown Shirts/Storm Troopers) or S.A. Hitler adopted the symbol of the Swastika to be the identifying emblem of his party since it was an ancient design that conveyed an Aryan heritage.

As early as 1922 the American Military Attaché's office in Germany was reporting on the Nazi party as a popular movement and as a counterpart to the Italian Fascists. The report recognized Hitler as possessing great oratorical skills and the arousing of nationalist feelings in Bavaria that parallel those in Fascist Italy. Further the Attaché's report highlights Hitler's recognition that democracy will not work in Germany and that a national dictatorship is necessary.

By 1923 Hitler considered the Nazi party sufficiently populist and organized that he felt it could stage a take over of the Bavarian government in the capital of Munich. In early November Hitler and his follows took over a crowd of nearly 5,000 people in Munich's Burgerbraukeller (destroyed in WWII bombing). This became known as the Munich Beer Hall Putsch. Within a period of 12 hours Hitler experienced both the anguish of defeat and the rise of his political star. As he and his followers left the beer hall on their way to the Bavarian governmental offices they were confronted by a company of Bavarian police. In the ensuing melee between the two armed groups 16 Nazi's were killed and several next to Hitler were wounded including Herman Goering. Hitler emerged unscathed. He was quickly arrested and brought to trial for his treasonous acts. If more than anything Hitler's trial served to catapult him to national prominence in Germany and provided for him a platform in which to articulate his ideals. Rather than being deported from Germany (Hitler was Austrian and this was his greatest fear) he was sentenced to five years imprisonment at the Landsburg prison in upper Bavaria.

After serving nine months he was released and returned to Munich. While in prison Hitler took the time to dictate his personal testament to his co-conspirator Rudolf Hess which subsequently became known as "Mein Kampf" (My Struggle). From the time of his release in 1925 to his ascension of power in 1933, the Nazi party gained both prominence and membership throughout Germany. Eventually Hitler, as had Mussolini in Italy, gained the support of important industrialists who provided much needed funding to keep his party solvent. By 1930 the Nazi party had gained a respectable number of seats in the German Parliament (Reichstag) (**See included photograph of Reichstag Fire**) that made Hitler a major political personality in Germany. By 1932 Hitler challenged Hindenburg in the presidential election when he got 11 million votes to Hindenburg's 18 million. Finally in 1933 Hitler was appointed Chancellor of Germany by Hindenburg and a large number of Nazi party members began to occupy significant positions in the German government. This event saw the demise of the Weimar Republic that had emerged at the end of World War I. Within a short time Hitler's cult of the personality strengthened with him being referred to as "Der Furher" (the leader).

In the years after Hitler's assumption of power Germany began a strong rearmament program that saw ways around the restrictions imposed by the Treaty of Versailles. In violation of the provisions of the Versailles Treaty various organizations were developed that would serve to form a sort of training ground for a future, resurgent German military. To this end little by little the democratic reforms that had made the Weimar Republic faded away. Press censorship, restrictions and a police state became the norm with the German people being told that it was their duty to place the

interests of the German state before their own interests. All activity was controlled for the German people and the normal routine each day became highly regimented which in turn required people to give their complete support to the German government. **(See included documents – German Air Sport membership book / German Labor Front Membership Book / German Travel Pass / German Army Identity Book)**

Spain - Franco

The Gods of war spared Spain involvement in World War I, but the disaster of the Spanish Civil War brought to Spain destruction and the loss of life that made up for that oversight. In the years following World War I Spain suffered a series of political upheavals that had been developing since the late 19th century. The inequities of the social system and the class distinction in Spain found fertile ground in the unhappiness of the workers and peasants of the country. Frequent disputes between the aristocracy, the church, the academic centers and students and industrial workers and farmers led to mutinies, censorship and rebellions. By 1931 the Spanish King Alfonso XIII agreed to general elections that were intended to provide a more representative government. The events following these elections led to King Alfonso leaving Spain and brought about his abdication from power.

The resultant Republican government took control and began issuing decrees that stripped the wealthy of their power and lands and began direct attacks on the Catholic Church in Spain. Within a year, the army found itself more at odds with the new government than with previously hostile workers and farmers. By 1936 the turmoil in Spain had reached crisis stage and the army was preparing for open revolt. On one side of the political spectrum stood the Republicans or Loyalists who supported the current governing regime. Their support centered on the anti-clerical communists, the socialists, the factory workers and labor organizations. On the other side of the political spectrum stood the Spanish military who fostered a strong Nationalist feeling and had the strong backing of the Catholic Church. They were further supported by the remaining aristocratic landowners and conservatives who felt a kinship with the Fascists of Italy. Beginning with the revolt of the Spanish army in Morocco under the leadership of General Francisco Franco, hostilities quickly escalated.

In late 1936 the warring parties of the Spanish Civil War began to seek outside help in order to tilt the balance of the war toward their cause. Russia began to provide volunteers and equipment as well as financial aid to the Republican-Loyalist forces. Likewise saw Hitler and Mussolini provide aid in the form of military equipment and personnel to Franco's nationalists. For the next three years Spain was proving to be a harbinger of what was to come as these rival ideologies fought for control of Spain. Finally in March 1939 Franco and the Nationalists entered Madrid and proclaimed a new government under their control. The effect of the war to Spain was to be saving grace that spared them from participation directly in World War II. However, Spain had suffered over 700,000 dead and untold destruction and devastation to the country that would take a long time to overcome.

Shortly after the German invasion of Poland on September 1, 1939 Spain declared their neutrality in the new European conflict. Within a year Hitler would meet with Franco in an attempt to convince Spain to enter World War II on the side of the Germans. Meeting with no luck, Hitler described his encounter with Franco as saying he would rather have teeth extracted than have to deal with Franco.

Both Hitler and Mussolini found themselves as leaders of their countries through legal means. This would subsequently pose difficult problems for those in their respective governments who disagreed with them, particularly in the military. Both leaders had the military pledge their loyalty to them personally rather than to the government. Both rose to power by being anti-Communist and highly nationalistic and fostered militarism throughout their political party and their country. Germany more so than Italy suffered the rampant inflation that led to the economic ruin of many small shopkeepers and ordinary citizens. The great world wide depression that began in 1929 with the collapse of the American Stock markets reeked havoc on the fragile economy of Europe. These events further drove the ordinary citizen to seek political leadership in both Germany and Italy that could give them a better life. The rise of Franco and Fascism in Spain postdated the Italian and German experience by more than ten years. However, the results were the same that Fascist dictatorships based on the “cult of the personality” were in existence in three major European countries.

Japanese Expansion

Militarism - Emperor

Since the beginning of recorded Japanese history the ruler of Japan has always been attributed with God like status. By the advent of the 20th century and the end of the Meiji era, the Japanese Emperor had long ceased to function as the ruler or the nation. He had become a figurehead who held the singular power of being able to change any particular course of action that the Japanese government and ministers had adopted on his behalf.

Since the end of the Sino-Japanese War, the Russo-Japanese War and the World War I conflicts Japan had continued to eye expansion in the far east. These forces were a very visible presence when the American Forces in Siberia under Major General Graves confronted the Japanese Army in 1919. With the eventual departure of the Americans, Japan was the sole major power still with forces in Bolshevik Russia. Japan subsequently relented under various international and Russian pressures and left the newly constituted Union of Soviet Socialist Republics in 1922 after realizing that their imperial expansion could be better served to the south in China. As a result of the Treaty of Versailles, Japan had been given Germany's North Pacific Islands (Caroline, Marshall, and Marianas) which they quickly occupied and incorporated into their expansion plans in the Pacific rim.

Western European and American influences crept into the very orderly Japanese society in the 19th century and the 20th century. This subsequently saw the introduction of both democratic governance and the introduction of radical segments into the Japanese society. Included in these radical segments of society were the militaristic organizations consisting of patriotic young officers from the Army and Navy. With this came an increase in the influence of the military, particularly the army, in Japanese foreign policy and politics. Japanese industry was continuing to expand their influence in the Pacific to the extent that Japan had become the dominant nation in Asia. The only rivals that now faced Japan were the Europeans, primarily the English, and the United States.

China was still weak from the revolutionary events of the turn of the century and was seen as any easy prey for expansionist aims. Using a pretext of events in 1931 the Japanese forces, that had previously occupied southern Manchuria since 1916, occupied the remainder of Manchuria with little response from the Chinese government that was involved with its own civil war. This event has been advanced by some as the actual starting point for World War II. Remaining satisfied with their success, the Japanese military slowly began to build up their presence in China. In the summer of 1937 Japan again continued their expansion into China under the pretext of encountering Chinese forces during night maneuvers. Chinese resistance was minimal and within six months Japanese forces had moved through Peking, Shanghai and were entering the Chinese Nationalist capital at Nanking. The Japanese conduct at Nanking angered popular sentiment in the United States. This was further fueled with the death and injury of American sailors on the U.S.S. Augusta in Shanghai harbor from stray Japanese artillery rounds. The subsequent sinking of the American gunboat the U.S.S. Panay on the Yangtze River near Nanking with the loss of two and wounding of 51 American seamen created even further outrage against Japan. By late 1938 Japan had a commanding presence in China that would be the base for further expansion once World War II began in earnest.

The rise of militarism in Japan continued to increase sharply in the 1930's by a series of assassinations of the more moderate leadership in the Japanese government. (See included Life Magazine July 10, 1939) The remaining liberal and moderate members of the Emperor's cabinet fell under the fear of death if they should oppose the expansionist plans of the armed forces. Many of these assassinations were repeatedly carried out by young army and naval officers who had patriotism as their motivation. At subsequent judicial proceedings these men were given very light sentences which they never completed. Included in these actions was vicious infighting among the military leadership with the result being that those senior officers who favored restraint in foreign relations were murdered. Failure of the Emperor to step in and denounce the aggressiveness of the Japanese armed forces set the course for Japan in World War II which became resolutely set when Hideki Tojo became prime minister in October 1941.

Establishment of Communism

Lenin – Stalin

The revolution in Russia had been a long time in coming. Beginning with numerous attempts, both successful and not, various groups had tried to remove the Romanov Czars from the throne of Russia. Although that majority of these groups wanted to gain more rights for the Russian people and at the same time end the monarchy they were only successful to a degree. After the 1905 “Bloody Sunday” deaths the Czar allowed the Russian people to participate in the government through the Duma or parliament. However, this participation proved to be inconsistent and had little real voice in the functions of the government under the Czar.

By the start of World War I Russia had aligned itself with their ethnic peers (Serbia) as well as England and France against both Germany and Austria-Hungary. It did not take long for Russia to feel the sting of defeat and the impact of the war to the Russian citizens. With few available to provide the necessary agricultural support for a five million man army and the general populace, Russia spiraled into disarray. Finally in early 1917 the first of two revolts struck the country. The Czar abdicated his throne and subsequently was held prisoner and ultimately killed along with his family. At first the Provisional Russian government under Alexander Kerensky kept Russia in World War I, but with more defeats and setbacks Russia was falling into near anarchy. By late fall 1917, a second revolution took place which ended any pretense of democratic government and catapulted the Bolshevik party into power and control of Russia under Vladimir Lenin. In early 1918, Russia signed the Treaty of Brest-Litovsk, thus ending their participation in World War I. The capital of Russia was moved from Petrograd (St. Petersburg) to the historic capital of Moscow and the Kremlin fortress.

After World War I ended for Russia a violent civil war erupted that pitted the Bolshevik revolutionaries (later to be known as the Communists or Reds) against the forces who proclaimed their loyalty to the Monarchy and the Czar (known as Whites). To complicate matters further England, France, Japan, and the United States moved their soldiers into Russia ostensibly to protect vast stores of war materials from falling into the hands of the Germans. By 1921 the Red Communist forces had gained control of the country and the foreign powers had for the most part left Russia. Lenin began to consolidate his power and bring some form of order, self-sufficiency and government to Russia. By 1924 Lenin was dead from a stroke and Trotsky (War Minister) and Stalin (General Secretary) were involved in a power struggle for the control of the leadership of Russia. Ultimately Stalin emerged the victor while Trotsky found himself living all over Europe and ultimately settling in Mexico.

In the decade of the later 1920's and the 1930's Russia under Stalin moved away from the monarchy that had once been Russia. Stalin was determined to modernize Russia and put it on an equal footing with the major European powers. This included a need to make Russia both an industrial and agricultural power. Ultimately, Russia suffered as an outcast among the world powers who feared the rise of the Communist state. Thus both Germany and Russia were looked upon as being outcast nations in the years after World War I. In Stalin's Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (U.S.S.R.) the price the people would have to pay for this modernization was

staggering. It has been estimated that in excess of twenty million Russians perished under Stalin's collectivization policies and governmental purges. However, Russia emerged now on the European stage as a major player who would not be so easily dismissed.

Name: _____ Date: _____

Multiple-Choice Quiz: Lesson One – The underlying causes of World War II
(circle the correct answer)

1. What was the term that described the document that ended the fighting for World War I?
 - a. Surrender
 - b. Armistice
 - c. Capitulation
 - d. Treaty

2. What American holiday is celebrated today to commemorate the end of the fighting in World War I?
 - a. Remembrance Day
 - b. Victory Day
 - c. Memorial Day
 - d. Veterans Day

3. Which major European power was excluded from participating in the Versailles Peace Process?
 - a. Russia
 - b. Belgium
 - c. France
 - d. Italy

4. The Germans expected the Versailles Peace Treaty to be based on what?
 - a. Lloyd George's parliamentary proclamation
 - b. Wilson's Fourteen Points
 - c. Clemenceau's Compiegne declaration
 - d. Kaiser Wilhelm's negotiations

5. As a result of the Treaty of Versailles, which country was given Germany's Northern Pacific islands?
 - a. England
 - b. France
 - c. America
 - d. Japan

6. The name of the new government that was established in Germany after World War I was known as the?
 - a. German Federal Republic
 - b. Weimar Republic
 - c. Third Reich
 - d. People's Republic of Germany

7. The political ideology known as "Fascism" first developed in which European country?
 - a. Germany
 - b. France
 - c. Russia
 - d. Italy

8. The titles that both Benito Mussolini and Adolf Hitler became known by in their "cult of the personality" were what?
 - a. Caesar & Kaiser
 - b. Czar & Minister
 - c. Il' Duce & Der Furher
 - d. Chancellor & Dictator

9. Which European country underwent a brutal civil war in the 1930's that allowed major European countries to test their weapons and tactics?
 - a. Spain
 - b. Italy
 - c. France
 - d. Russia

10. In 1931 Japan invaded what area/country that is sometimes considered to be the actually start of World War II?
 - a. Korea
 - b. Formosa
 - c. Manchuria
 - d. Siberia

Multiple-Choice Quiz: Lesson One – The underlying causes of World War II**Correct Answers**

1. **b. Armistice**
2. **d. Veterans Day**
3. **a. Russia**
4. **b. Wilson’s Fourteen Points**
5. **d. Japan**
6. **b. Weimar Republic**
7. **d. Italy**
8. **c. Il’ Duce & Der Furher**
9. **a. Spain**
10. **c. Manchuria**

LESSON PLAN - DAY TWO

Subject:

Phase One (1939 – 1940):

The period of history in Europe and the world at the outbreak of World War II. The tension in Europe has slowly built up to the brink of war over the past six years and now war erupts with the German aggression directed against Poland. Predictably, all the major European powers take sides, although two of the major players, Italy and Russia, do not show their aggression at the start.

Educational Goals:

The Student will learn facts and comprehend the events pertaining to:

- The events that led up to the start of World War II in Europe.
- The German invasion of Eastern and Western Europe
- The German occupation of the English Channel Islands
- The Italian aggression in France, Albania and North Africa
- The Battle over Britain for air superiority in the plan to invade England
- The Russian expansion in Eastern Europe
- The stalemate in the Far East between Russia and Japan

Duration of instruction time required:

- 45 – 50 minutes

Required materials:

- World or American History Textbook
- Map of Europe
- Map of Asia

Supplemental materials (included):

- **Photograph of German Labor Service Personnel**
As German began its rearmament all able bodied young men were required to spend time in a Labor Service unit. This served as a precursor for those who would eventually be called up to serve in the Wehrmacht.
Question for the students: What do you think was the response from the German youth to their “mandatory requirement to serve in the Labor Service units?”
Answer: Most of the young Germans recognized that they had an obligation to support the government and felt duty bound to participate. Many knew that in order to continue in higher education or apprentice programs they had to get their service in the Labor Front completed.

- **National Geographic Magazine, June 1936**
 The first overt demonstration of Hitler's goals for German expansion occurred in March 1936 when the German army reoccupied the Rhineland area that had been previously occupied by the victorious Allied powers from World War I.
Question for the students: What do you think would have been the result if France would have challenged the German reoccupation? Answer: France at the time had the largest and most modern army in Western Europe while Germany was still reorganizing and expanding. Historians seem to think agree that Germany most likely would have been forced to back down.
- **Austrian Magazine "Austria Week", 7 November 1935**
 Just as Germany began to rearm and expand their post WWI army, so did Austria in a fashion that parallels that of Germany.
Question for the students: Do you think Austria was just as anxious to avenge their defeat from World War I and as such was just as militaristic as Germany? Answer: Austria had been reduced much more than Germany after World War I when they lost most of their empire. Hitler was born in Austria. Austria had many concerns, but it is hard to state that they would have been the same as Germany.
- **Austrian Magazine "Austria Week", 29 April 1937**
 When Germany first attempted to annex Austria in 1934, Mussolini demonstrated Italian resolve to provide support to the Austrian government as noted by his later meeting with the Austria Chancellor Schuschnigg in Venice, Italy.
Question for the students: Was Austria more worried about Italy than Germany at their borders? Answer: Italy at the end of World War I had wanted to gain a great deal of the Austro-Hungarian territory, however Italy by the 1930's did not want Nazi Germany to get land from Austria either.
- **Photograph of German Police Battalion marches into Imst Austria, 1938**
 (National Archives NARA file#: 242-HLB-2658-16)
 All along the Austrian-German border, German military and para-military organizations began to occupy the country with the unification of 1938.
Question for the students: Judging from the crowd in the photograph, do you think that the Austrians were pleased with the German annexation of Austria? Answer: In the Austrian plebiscite vote, 90% of the Austrian people voted in favor of the unification.
- **Life Magazine dated November 28, 1938**
 The spark that served to ignite the destruction of Jewish shops and businesses throughout Germany became known as "Kristallnacht".
Question for the students: How does the article describe the event? Does it elicit sympathy and compassion from the world in response to the destruction? Answer: The world began to see the hateful actions of the Nazi government toward the Jews, however it does not appear that much of a response was generated in opposition to the Germans by foreign governments.

- **Life Magazine dated April 24, 1939**
 The average English and French family are contrasted to the militaristic society of the average German family.
Question for the students: Do you think that the article is representative of the attitudes of these people in their countries at this time? Answer: The Munich agreement in September 1938 yielded “Peace in our Time” and for the most part the English and French hoped to avoid any conflict with Germany. However, for many people in Europe they could see that war clouds were on the horizon in mid-1939 when this article was prepared.
- **Der Massenmord in Walde von Katyn, 30 April 1943**
 At the discovery of the ghastly remains of the Polish leadership the Germans went to the great extent of bringing recognized forensic experts from all the occupied European countries to the site of the mass graves. These experts dutifully testified that the deaths were caused by Soviet bullets at the time of the Soviet occupation of Poland in 1940.
Question for the students: Why do you think that the Germans picked such a diverse group of individuals and go to such great lengths to demonstrate they did not commit this act of mass murder? Answer: Responses may vary. The Germans at this point knew that the war was not going well for them in the east. Perhaps this was an attempt to sow seeds of distrust among the allies and point out to the British and Americans that Stalinist Russia was more brutal.
- **Photograph of Captured French and English prisoners of war at Dunkerque, June 1940** (National Archives; NARA file #: 242-EB-7-35)
 Those French and English military personnel who were not fortunate enough to have escaped through the evacuation at Dunkirk were subsequently made prisoners of the Germans. For many, this period of captivity was to last for the entire period of the war.
Question for the students: What is the image that is projected by this photograph? Answer: That both the British and the French are defeated and that Germany will win.
- **PM New York Daily Newspaper, June 18, 1940**
 The world quickly became aware of the lightning conquest of France by Germany.
Question for the students: How do you see this article as propaganda? Answer: it seems to paint a story that Germany is very powerful and is able to defeat any forces that are in their path.

- **Photograph of Mussolini and Hitler in Munich, June 1940**, after the Fall of France (National Archives; NARA file #: 242-EB-7-38)
Mussolini was late in declaring war against France, but was quick to seek “co-conqueror” status with Hitler in order to share in the triumph.
Question for the students: Do you think that Mussolini now wanted to try and gain equal prestige with Hitler? Answer: Italy and Mussolini were very surprised as to the speed and ability of the German forces in their conquests in the east and west of Europe. He felt that if he did not act quickly Italy would not gain any further world status.
- **Photograph of Hitler in Paris after the Fall of France, June 1940** (National Archives; NARA file #: 242-HLB-5073-20)
After the spectacular results of the German invasion of Western Europe Hitler wanted to avenge the German humiliation of the Treaty of Versailles.
Question for the students: What does this picture seem to suggest to the viewer? Answer: One possible response is that Germany is so powerful that in just six short weeks it was able to achieve what four and a half years of trench warfare could not in World War I.
- **German Red Cross Prisoner of War Correspondence Card**
With the start of the war the German military machine engulfed all in its path and subsequently captured millions of prisoners. In the west these prisoners (both civilian and military) were afforded the provisions of the Geneva Conventions which govern their treatment in wartime. When the Germans captured the English Channel islands the occupants were provided with the opportunity for correspondence with their loved ones in England.
Question for the students: How long did it take for a Red Cross card to travel from the Channel Islands to England and what route did the card appear to take? Answer: The card was mailed on 10 January 1942 and assuming it was answered on receipt it was received in early May 1942. The card traveled from the Channel Islands to Germany on to Switzerland and then to England.
- **British Ration Books for Food and Clothing**
Rationing was introduced in England in order to save precious resources that would be needed to build the fighting strength. Everyone was expected to make the sacrifices necessary since there were no assurances that England could be supplied with all the products needed to sustain the war effort.
Question for the students: Why is rationing important? Could you accept rationing today if it were necessary to conserve and support the American fighting strength? Answer: Responses will vary. Students should recognize that England was an island that depended on imports to survive. In today’s world, it would be difficult to forgo many products that are taken for granted.

- **German Food Ration Card**

By early 1940 food and other commodities began to be rationed within Germany, a practice that would continue through the conclusion of the war in 1945 and afterward. This book shows the rations for butter, coffee and tea.

Question for the students: Do you think that the Germans anticipated or expected to have to ration various items? Answer: Responses may vary. During World War I Germany suffered heavily from the necessity of rationing all types of commodities on the home front. Some Germans may have feared rationing again.

- **German Ration Card for Clothing**

By the final year of the war, nearly every type of consumer product and goods were being rationed within Germany. The Allied armies on both the Eastern and Western European theaters had overrun a great number of locations that had previously provided both raw materials and finished products for the German home front. These areas and their resources were no longer available and serious shortages began to exist in Germany.

Question for the students: Can you imagine that you would have to ration clothing? What item of clothing could you do without? What item of clothing would consider so essential that you could not do without it? Answer: most students should reflect that their most important possession would be a winter coat. With a shortage of heating fuel and repeated winters that seemed to be colder, a warm coat was necessary just to survive.

Instruction evaluation (included):

- Ten question multiple choice quiz
- Answer sheet

Topics to be covered:

1. Start of World War II in Europe
 - Germany
 - Reoccupation of the Rhineland in violation of the Versailles treaty
 - Annexation of Austria
 - Conquest of the Czech Sudetenland through the Munich Conference
 - Occupation of the remainder of the Czech areas of Bohemia and Moravia
 - German Invasion of Poland, Denmark, Norway, Holland, Belgium, and France
 - Battle of Britain and the Failure of the German Invasion Plans for England
 - Russia
 - The German-Russian Non-Aggression Pact of August 1939
 - The Russian invasion of Poland
 - The Russian occupation of the Baltic States of Estonia, Latvia and Lithuania
 - Italy

- The Italian invasion of France, Albania and North Africa

2. Continuance of the Asian Conflict by Japan
 - The Japanese invasion and occupation of French Indo-China
 - Preparation by the Japanese for eliminating further western influences and threats from the Japanese dominance of the Pacific region
3. Russia vs. Finland
4. Russia vs. Japan
 - The Battle of Khalin-Gol

Methodology:

Part I.

Option One:

Instructor can provide to each student copies of the related materials as listed above and lead the students in a discussion of the events as they occurred chronologically and utilize the included documentary materials.

Option Two:

Instructor can highlight and summarize in a lecture format the events that encompass each of the above listed topics and utilize the included documentary materials.

Part II.

Instructor can provide to each of the students copies of the various primary source documents (included) and perform a review and critique of each in the following manner:

- a. What was the response of the world to the Kristallnacht (Night of Broken Glass) in November 1938? Review the Life Magazine dated April 24, 1939
- b. What was the overall feeling between the English, French and Germans prior to the start of the war in Europe? Review the Life Magazine dated April 24, 1939
- c. Ask the students what prewar preparations allowed the German military to be so successful in their invasion of both Poland and Western Europe?

The Start of World War II in Europe

Germany

Once Hitler was placed in the powerful position of German Chancellor in January 1933 by President of the Weimar Republic, war hero Paul von Hindenburg, Hitler wasted little time in demolishing the that same Republic. Within one month there was the suspicious fire in the Reichstag parliament building in Berlin that allowed for the suspension of the individual rights. Within another month the “Enabling Act” was passed which allowed for the assumption of dictatorial powers by the government. These actions placed Hitler and his Nazi party solely in charge of the day to day governance of Germany. The Reichstag quickly became a “rubber stamp” organization to Hitler’s goals.

That same month saw the establishment of the first concentration camp at Dachau, outside of Munich. These concentration camps were originally intended to provide “protective custody” and allow for the “reeducation” of those who were unfortunate to have been detained there. At first many of the Nazi political opponents from the Communist, Socialist, and Catholic Center parties were arrested. Shortly thereafter they were joined by opponents from academic life, public media, religious organizations (both Catholic and Protestant) and governmental agencies who had voiced their previous displeasure against the Nazi party. Later additions were to include those who were considered as “undesirables” such as criminals, gypsies and homosexuals. Dachau was to serve as the “model camp” that all the subsequent concentration camps were modeled on.

A police state emerged in Germany that provided a very ordered society with the state at the center. Membership in the Nazi party became the quickest way to advancement in a wide variety of institutions throughout Germany. Public institutions, government bureaucracies and economic life were organized to provide support to the Nazi outlook in Germany. Within one year, Hitler eliminated his political rivals in the Nazi Party with the systematic murder of his old Munich friend Ernst Rohm and over 100 “threats” to the Nazi order of Germany. This was to become known as the “Night of the Long Knives”.

Recovering from the devastating effects of the hyperinflation of the 1920’s and early 1930’s Germany began to eliminate joblessness through a program of vast public works. All it is noted were intended to support a country that would be on a war footing. The order that came to Germany was accepted by the German people as something that was much better than the past chaos of the post World War I years. Hitler’s speaking ability incited the German populace with thoughts of Germany becoming once again powerful and to take her rightful place among the nations of Europe. The cost to the German people was life in a police state where they found that they had to pledge total allegiance to Hitler and his aims for Germany. Mandatory service in a variety of organizations for the youth and young adults of Germany began to prepare them for service in one of the branches of the armed forces. **(See included photograph of German Labor Service Troops)** Violating the provisions of the Versailles Treaty Germany began a rearmament program in all branches of the military. From glider and sailing clubs that taught the fundamentals to the labor service front, all Germans were intended to be involved in their

country. Internal clashes with religious groups and denominations as well as those who disagreed with the course of the country found themselves in “protective custody” at a concentration camp. The Nazi party began to emerge as a semi-religious organization that was intended to supplant Christianity in the hearts and minds of the German people.

The first real challenge to Europe by the “New Germany” came on March 7, 1936. It was on this date that battalions of Germany soldiers marched over Rhine river bridges at Mainz and Cologne and reoccupied the Rhineland that had been restricted since the end of World War I. The German people were filled with a nationalistic spirit that Hitler was quick to capitalize on. At that time Germany was not of sufficient military strength to have withstood a challenge from the dominant power of France. Hitler was concerned that this gamble could fail. He was pleased when France did nothing to stop the remilitarization of Germany’s western border. **(See included National Geographic Magazine, June 1936)**. Flushed with success, Hitler’s next goal was to expand German influence within Europe.

In mid-1936 Germany sent military equipment, primarily aircraft and their crews, to Spain to assist Franco and his Nationalists battle the Republicans in the Spanish Civil War. This three year operation provided the German military with the opportunity to test out their evolving equipment, tactics, and personnel in a combat environment. This aggressiveness of German involvement outside of the country saw Hitler’s desire to create a “Greater Germany” that would include his birthplace, Austria. After a failed attempt by the Nazi’s to seize power in Austria, **(See included Austrian Magazines 1935 & 1937)** Hitler was able to bully the Austrian Chancellor Kurt Schuschnigg into allowing for the annexation of Austria to Germany in March 1938. **(See included photograph of German Police Marching into Austria)** This became known as the “Anschluss” and served as a harbinger of Hitler’s goals for the rest of Germany. As Hitler gained more for Germany through his diplomatic successes, his control over the German armed forces (Wehrmacht) increased. Initially, the German military aristocratic class looked on Hitler with disdain and referred to him as “that Bohemian Corporal”. Recognizing the distrust of the German military and acknowledging the fact that he needed their support he began a campaign to gain their favor. It started in June 1934 when Hitler eliminated the growing rivalry and power of his own Nazi storm troopers who the German generals saw as threat. By 1938 Hitler had restructured the German military hierarchy with individuals he felt would be loyal to him. All the personal of the armed forces had earlier taken oaths that their loyalty would not be pledged to the German government as in the past, but to Hitler personally. This concept can be traced back to the time of Julius Caesar when his armies pledged their loyalty to him and not the Roman state. This concept would plague some German officers who had a strong sense of loyalty, but yet began to plot to remove Hitler from power prior to the start of World War II. Their numbers were few and they were never successful. Hitler now had total dominance of all aspects of the German government and society.

After Hitler’s success in Austria he next turned his attention to his neighbors in the east. To Hitler it was to be an issue of gaining more “lebensraum” (living space) for the German people. For centuries past there had been ethnic Germans living in the Sudetenland bordering Germany, which was a part of the newly established country of

Czechoslovakia. Hitler's design to incorporate these ethnic Germans into his growing greater Germany led to what became known as the Munich Crisis. In September 1938, Hitler and Mussolini met in Munich with Neville Chamberlain, Prime Minister of England, and Eduard Daladier, Premier of France who agreed to allow Germany to add six million ethnic Germans to his Reich. Strangely, Czechoslovakia was not present at the Munich Agreement which saw the extent that the major European powers would go to appease Hitler and thus forestall threats of war.

Within Europe many ethnic groups and in particular the Jews were being singled out for hostile treatment that included loss of property, denial of employment and expulsion from their homes. This ended up creating a migration of people within Europe and away from Europe. In that process a young Jew (Herschel Grynszpan) who was living in Paris became distraught over the prospects of his father who was still residing in Germany. Grynszpan obtained a pistol and visited the German Embassy in Paris with the goal of killing the German Ambassador von Welzeck. Fate found the would be assassin in the presence of the Third Secretary of the embassy, Ernst von Rath who he then shot. Within two days von Rath was dead and Hitler unleashed a torrent of destruction on the Jews still living in Germany. **(See included Life Magazine, November 28, 1938)** This became known as the "Night of Broken Glass" (Kristallnacht) which was to foretell the brutality that would await the Jews of Europe in a few short years.

In the early spring of 1939, Hitler again pressed his determination to gain more living space for his Greater Germany. Through the excuse of internal troubles within the Czechoslovakian government Hitler was able to declare the country to be a "protectorate" of Germany and within six days the German military machine occupied the remainder of the country to include the eastern provinces of Bohemia and Moravia. With the addition of this country to the growing German state, the rest of Europe became alarmed and wondered where the ambitious Hitler would halt. **(See included Life Magazine dated April 24, 1939)** Realizing that Poland and the unification of Danzig and East Prussia to Germany appeared to be next, both England and France issued guarantees that if anything were to happen to Poland's independence, Europe would be at War. Nevertheless Hitler continued his expansionist goals and began planning for the invasion of Poland. Realizing that Russia had become a world power that could pose a threat to him, Germany entered into negotiations with Soviet Russia to the east. The result was the Non-Aggression Pact of August 23, 1939. In essence it was to state that neither would attack the other and would remain neutral in the event of a third party attack. The next eight days would lead to hectic diplomatic activity between nearly every world power to include the United States, all in efforts to persuade Germany to back off from the brink of war in Europe. Unfortunately for the world nothing worked in this flurry of activity and leaders recognized the inevitability of what would be coming. Poland began to mobilize their military forces while Germany massed over one million men along the Polish border. Russia was strangely silent in the world voices that were calling for moderation and restraint.

In the early morning hours of September 1, 1939 Germany unleashed what was to become the legendary "Blitzkrieg" (Lightning War) that overwhelmed all of Europe. In the previous six years since Hitler's assumption of power, Germany had rapidly rearmed

and revitalized their military doctrine, strategy and tactics. The weaponry that was developed incorporated the lessons learned from Germany's defeat in World War I. The German mechanization of their forces in World War I was never fully developed. This was the opposite of the Allied forces who introduced the tank in 1916 and mechanized much more effectively. Germany further incorporated the military concepts that had been developed by other nations during the Weimar Republic years. Of note was the fact that the Soviet Union was the first to pioneer the use of airborne forces. The Blitzkrieg that invaded Poland included the revolutionary idea of air-ground coordination in attacks against a forward enemy. The Ju-87 Stuka dive bomber with its sirens wailing would hammer an entrenched force which would then be overrun by the ground forces. Although Germany masterfully used this modernization/mechanization it could not hide the fact that the German military machine in the field was still dependent of horse drawn transportation for the bulk of its operations. Within two days of the invasion of Poland, England and France formally declared war against Germany and the die was cast that would plunge into the most destructive war in recorded history.

The valiant Poles fielded a military force in excess of 900,000 who put up a spirited defense of their country that exacted nearly 50,000 dead, wounded, or missing from the German Wehrmacht. Within days the conflict centered on the struggle to capture the Polish capital of Warsaw. This major city held out for almost two weeks against an onslaught that reduced portions of the city to rubble. Meanwhile, waiting to observe the success of the German invasion, the Soviet Russia decided to enter the conflict. On September 17, 1939 Russia invaded Eastern Poland meeting with nominal resistance. By the 5th of October it was all over and Poland was quickly divided between the two aggressors. The Soviet Union was pleased to regain some of the lands that they had lost under the terms of the Versailles Treaty of 1919 and at the same time gain more of a "buffer zone" from Nazi Germany. The highly efficient German military machine additionally left a strong impression on the Russian military hierarchy that began to experience a bit of uneasiness regarding their new geographic neighbor. The Polish losses from the month long campaign resulted in nearly 300,000 who had been killed or wounded. The remainder of the Polish military became prisoners, although some did manage to escape to fight again.

Within six months one of the often overlooked tragedies of World War II occurred to the unfortunate Polish military officer corps. That event became known as the Katyn Forest Massacre. Many of the Polish leadership had been imprisoned by both the Germans and the Russians. It now has become clear with the passage of time that the Russians intended to retain their Polish conquest and eliminate any threat to that goal. Subsequently many of the senior Polish leaders from the military and civil sector were taken to the Katyn Forest in Eastern Poland and during the period of March-April 1940 were murdered with a bullet to the back of the head. The numbers who were thus executed in that fashion are estimated through varying accounts to between 5,000 – 15,000 men. Because of the international situation this event did not become widely known. In 1943 the Germans and the Russians were battling each other in the East and several German military units came across these mass graves. Realizing that this was not their own "handiwork" (the SS Special Action Groups or "einsatzgruppen") Germany quickly proclaimed through propaganda efforts the poles had died at the hands of the

Russians (**See included document pages from “Der Massenmord”**). What is so unusual is the extent the Germans went to show that this was committed by the Russians. The revelation of the event ended up creating some animosity among the allies and Russia. While Stalin denied the event, the Allies in order to maintain their coalition against Germany ignored the protests of the Polish government in exile in England.

After the Polish campaign Germany began to turn its attention to the West. In the next six months the war in Europe entered the period that became known as the “Sitzkrieg” or “Phony War”. Nothing really happened on the European land mass between the major combatants of the war. Germany used this time to replenish their personnel losses and supplies while repositioning their Wehrmacht to the western borders of Germany. England used the opportunity to send the British Expeditionary Forces to the lands in France and Belgium that they had occupied nearly 25 years earlier. In France, the government felt a small degree of security behind their legendary Maginot Line that had been erected in the 1930’s. Now England and France adopted a “wait and see” attitude as they prepared for the next stage of the German juggernaut.

The naval war at sea took a slightly different tack as the German submarine service picked up where it had left off at the end of World War I. Using stealth and daring and German submarine or “U-Boat”) was able to penetrate the port of the British Home Fleet at Scapa Flow in the Orkney Islands. The U-47 sunk the British battleship H.M.S. Royal Oak thus invigorating the idea that the U-Boats could successfully engage the most powerful navy in the world. At the start of World War II England still possessed the largest navy in the world. In the rearmament years Germany did not develop a naval force to level of the land or air forces. The result of this was that Germany still lacked the ability to engage the Royal Navy in an old fashion battle of ships. The German strategy followed by Grand-Admiral Erich Raeder was to focus on disrupting the supply ships of England through surface raiders and U-Boats. After a series of naval engagements in the Atlantic and Latin America the German surface navy was forced to return to port for the time being. This allowed the German U-Boat fleet under Admiral Karl Doenitz to begin their campaign against Allied shipping that was to prove very effective and led nearly to the starving out of England by late 1941. It was only with the American participation starting in 1942 that the German U-Boat menace was finally overcome.

The spring of 1940 saw the German Wehrmacht embark on a campaign to isolate England from the rest of Continental Europe. The goal of Hitler was to cut off all opportunities for contact with any power who could serve as an ally. The first phase of the German plan began on April 9, 1940 as German forces moved into Norway and Denmark. Denmark fell without a shot being fired as the invaders simply moved from their common border along the Northern German states. The Norwegian operation involved as seaborne landing all along the western coast which led to the rapid occupation of key cities. Although resistance would continue on until June, for the most part the Germans were there to stay. The British did contest the German operations in Norway with Royal Navy units sinking German transports and warships at Trondheim, Bergen and Narvik. The Norwegian government fled to London and established a government in exile, much as the Polish had done in 1939. By 1942 the German

dominated government in Norway was using native inhabitants to carry out their orders. Most infamous of these people was a man by the name of Vidkun Quisling who was appointed as the “Minister-President” of the country. His conduct in support of the Germans was so egregious that at the end of the war he was tried for War Crimes in a special Norwegian court and subsequently executed. Today the term “Quisling” is used universally to describe someone who is a traitor to their country.

With the northern continental perimeter secured Hitler turned his attention to the low countries of the Netherlands, Luxembourg, and Belgium. On the 10th of May, 1940 the German military began its assault on these countries. Again utilizing the successful Blitzkrieg tactics the Germans were able to quickly overrun the ineffective defenses in each country. The German airborne forces made quick use of surprise to capture the large Belgian fortifications that had held up the German armies in the First World War. The Luftwaffe continually pounded the Dutch port of Rotterdam into submission as the Dutch government fled into exile in London. The German assault on Belgium forced both the British and Belgian armies back to the coast of the English Channel near Ostend and Dunkirque. The Wehrmacht penetrated into France through the Ardennes following nearly the same invasion route of 1914. Executing a turning movement the forces of Hitler moved towards the coastal city of Boulogne which effectively sealed in a pocket a large number of British, French and Belgian soldiers. This led to what was to become known as the “Miracle of Dunkirque (Dunkirk). This was given the codename of Operation Dynamo and was considered absolutely heroic by the British people. If anything this was the one bright spot for the allies in the German invasion of Western Europe. Over the course of ten days in late May and early June, nearly any type of seaworthy vessel sailed from England to the French coast and returned as many men they could carry to England. In the end nearly 220,000 British and 110,000 French soldiers were brought to England. The majority was only able to carry their personal weapons, but they would form a force that could be used against the planned German invasion of England. Those left behind were captured by the Germans and would spend the next five years in captivity. **(See included photograph of soldiers at Dunkerque)**. However, one notable Frenchman who did escape the Germans was General Charles DeGaulle. He fled the advancing German armies after leading a tank brigade against the Germans in May 1940. Landing in England, DeGaulle established the “Free-French” government in exile in London. As time went on there was to be some conflict between DeGaulle and his British and American as well as the Nazi controlled government still residing in France. On the 18th of June, **(See included PM Newspaper, June 18, 1940)** Hitler met with Mussolini in Munich **(See included photograph of Hitler and Mussolini in Munich)** to decide what was characterize “as the fate of Europe.

By the 22nd of June the French had signed an armistice in the glade of Compiegne, the site of the German armistice of 11 November 1918 ending World War I. Hitler had Paris **(See included photograph of Hitler at the Eifel Tower in Paris)** and it was said that one of his first tourist visits was to the tomb of Napoleon who he was said to have admired. The terms of the armistice established a divided France. In the north, the Germans occupied all of the coastal areas that bordered the English Channel, effectively sealing off the continent from England. This included Paris and many industrial French cities of significance. The Germans further occupied the English Channel Islands which

were 14 miles off the coast of Normandy and Brittany. These were the only part of England that was occupied by the Germans during the war. Hitler saw their occupation as an opportunity for propaganda against the English (**See included German Red Cross Prisoner of War Correspondence Card**). He further spent a great deal of manpower and materials fortifying the four main islands. In reality the allies ignored these islands as they saw no strategic value in them. After the Normandy invasions of 1944 the Channel Islands were again ignored and were cut off from the French mainland. The German forces on the islands finally surrendered the day after the war ended in Europe. The unoccupied part of France included the southern areas that bordered Spain and the Mediterranean Sea. The capital of this part of France was Vichy, a resort spa town. The new leader of France was the elderly Marshal Petain, the hero of World War I. For the next two years the French government would deal with the countries of the world from their seat at Vichy. This part of France would remain unoccupied by the German Wehrmacht until the Allied invasion of North Africa in November 1942.

Now the dominant force in Europe Hitler turned his attention to the last European power who resisted his conquest. England had always been shielded from invading European forces by the English Channel. The last successful invasion of England had been in 1066 by William the Conqueror, Duke of Normandy. Napoleons invasions plans of England had been ended in 1805 with the English victory of Lord Nelson at Trafalger. Hitler saw this as something that was necessary since England had rebuffed German attempts to negotiate a settlement to end the fighting. While some members of the English government were willing to reach an agreement with the Germans, the new and resolute Prime Minister refused. On the day that the Germans had invaded the Low Countries, May 10th, the British Prime Minister Neville Chamberlain was replaced by the First Lord of the Admiralty, Winston Churchill. Churchill was to become the personification of the English resistance to the demands of Hitler. For the next five years Churchill would be ruthless in his attempts to do whatever it took to defeat the German military. Ironically, within six weeks after the end of the war in Europe in 1945, Churchill was voted out of office. His contribution to England's history was as their wartime leader which overshadowed all his other accomplishments.

Hitler's plan for the invasion of England was given the code name "Operation Sealion". Recognizing the superiority of England's Royal Navy, Germany knew that they would have to obtain air superiority over the English Channel and southern England in order to protect their invasion forces. While the process to assemble and invasion fleet began, the Luftwaffe under the direction of their chief Herman Goering began an aggressive campaign to destroy any British air land and sea resistance. This struggle became known as the "Battle of Britain" and would last from the summer into the fall of 1940. Initially the Luftwaffe focused their aerial attacks on the airfields of the Royal Air Force (R.A.F.). The German Navy established a blockade around England. The plan was to begin to starve the English into surrender. Rationing was introduced as many products began to be in short supply. (**See included English Ration Books**) It should be noted the consequences of the war on England kept the British Rationing program in effect until 1954 when it was finally eliminated. As time went on the Germans felt that they were not making the progress needed so they shifted their attacks to the major cities of England. This respite gave the RAF the opportunity to rebuild and rearm. As the RAF

was able to reorganize, their defensive measures became more effective to halting the German bombing attacks. This British use of Radar installations along the coast allowed them to accurately direct the fighters to intercept the German waves of bombers. British pilots were able to remain in combat continuously. When they were shot down by the Germans over England many were able to parachute to safety, return to their airfield and take up another aircraft. The British mechanics were able to recover their downed aircraft and cannibalize parts to keep the planes in the air. On the other hand, German aircraft and crews that were shot down were lost for the duration of the war. By September 1940 Hitler came to the realization that the losses Germany was sustaining over England in terms of manpower and material could not continue. Operation Sealion was called off; however Hitler directed the continued bombing of England. This was to become what would be known as the “Blitz”. German attention now turned to the east and their “ally” Russia.

Germany now entered the period that would begin to see the reality of war on the homefront. As Germany bombed England throughout 1940 and into 1941, England made it a point to do the same to Germany. The losses sustained by the RAF’s Bomber Command were horrific, but yet Churchill was determined to take the war to Hitler. Germany entered a period where rationing was introduced in order to provide sufficient materials for the armed forces. The English blockade of the European continent was also taking effect on the German war machine. **(See included German Ration Cards)**

Russia

After the Russians had concluded the Non-Aggression Pact of August 1939 with Germany the opportunity for expansion of territorial boundaries became more evident. In the decades of the 1920’s and 1930’s, Germany and Russia and their respective ideologies had continually come in conflict with each other. From the chaos of post World War I to the Spanish Civil War, Communism and Fascism were at odds with each other. Hitler made no secret of his distrust of Communism and the German people still had in their memories the chaos of the “Red Scare” of 1919 and 1920. However, both Hitler and Stalin as leaders would use whatever steps and actions necessary to strengthen their countries on the world stage. It was under this pretense that they agreed to respect each others borders.

After the Russian invasion of Poland in September 1939, Stalin was able to create a buffer between the ever powerful German military. To this end he now focused his attention on returning the Baltic States of Estonia, Latvia and Lithuania to the umbrella of the Soviet Union. Through a series of agreements in September and October 1939, Russia was able to acquire various land, naval and air bases along the Baltic coast in each of these countries. This would further serve to give Russia a greater buffer against the German controlled Western Europe.

Italy

After observing the Hitler’s successes of 1938 in building a Greater Germany, Mussolini was determined to make Italy a master of regional conquests in the Mediterranean area as

Germany had been in Central Europe. In April 1939, Italy launched their invasion of Adriatic neighbor Albania. Fortunately for Italy, Albania put up very little resistance. From this conquest, Italy began to hunger for more empire. The options for Mussolini pointed to the south and Greece. It is interesting to note that the actual combat performance of the Italian forces was mediocre at best. Yet feeding his ego he ensured that Italy projected to the world a powerful military machine that would rival the German juggernaut in the north. In May of 1939 it was Mussolini who coined the term “Pact of Steel” to describe a formal alliance that was signed between Italy and Germany. The only problem was that only Germany was really capable of living up to that description.

At the start of the German invasion of France in May 1940, Italy was still not sure about the wisdom of joining Germany in a war against the major European powers. Equally impressed as the Russians were, Italy saw the German military machine as something that was both efficient and victorious. Mussolini seemed as if he did not want to continually follow in the Hitler and all of his accomplishments and conquests. After a meeting with Hitler during the winter of 1939-1940 Mussolini felt that he had to do something or else he would always be in the shadow of Hitler. After watching the German Wehrmacht victorious in the west, Italy declared war on England and France on June 10, 1940. While the bulk of the French army was dealing with the Germans in the North, Mussolini invaded France through the Alpine borders. Even though Italy faced little real resistance in their invasion, they were in fact halted by the French after a few days. Italy had intended that now they would be able to claim some of the spoils from the war, however Hitler and French limited their conquests to just a few miles along the Franco-Italian border. Mussolini quickly realized that Italy’s participation in the war would always be secondary to the German performances and that Germany could easily win without them.

While the experiences with France in June 1940 did have some impact on the ego of the vainglorious Mussolini, Italy still continued to adjust their military objectives to try and gain some territorial conquests within the Mediterranean basin. In fact Italy did subsequently invade the Southern Balkans in October 1940 from their positions in Albania. Their goal was to take over portions of Greece and drive the British out. In reality, the Italians were forced back by a series of Greek counterattacks which brought the Greek forces past the original Italian start line in Albania. The Italians now feared they were about to be thrown back into the sea. It was also at this time that Mussolini was preparing to push to the Suez Canal from Libya in the west and from Italian Somaliland and newly conquered Ethiopia in the south. Ambitious as these plans were, they were not well coordinated or orchestrated. In the end in late 1940, the British Western Desert Force under General’s Wavell and O’Connor were able to utterly defeat the superior numbers of the Italian forces and capture nearly 100,000 prisoners. In each of these occasions, it was the powerful German military that had to come and rescue Italy and provide the margin of victory. These were major set backs for Mussolini who would again be frequently calling for help from his German partners.

Continuance of the Asian Conflict by Japan

French Indo-China

With the onset of war in Europe in the spring of 1940 between Germany and the colonial power of France, the Japanese saw the opportunity to expand their imperialist hopes in the Far East. Realizing that the French would be preoccupied in their actions with Germany, the Japanese focused their attention on the French held colony of Indo-China. With the newly established Vichy regime in place, Japan demanded concessions and the “right” to use the Indo-China port facilities. Having no other choice, France allowed the Japanese presence. Shortly three months later, the Japanese began to occupy the Northern portion of Indo-China that would enable the Japanese to provide further opportunities to engage the Nationalist Chinese. On this action the United States took action to place an embargo on the export of scrap iron and steel to any country outside of the Western Hemisphere with the one exception being England. The Japanese within a day later signed the “Tripartite Pact” with Italy and Germany creating what would become known as the “Berlin, Rome and Tokyo Axis”.

As World War II wound on into 1941 Japan was able to arrange for an end to conflicts that involved Indo-China with neighboring Thailand. Using diplomacy, Japan was able to obtain more natural resources from Thailand and made permanent their presence in the French colony. It was at this time that Russia and Japan concluded a neutrality pact that was the result of the Japanese defeat by the Russians a year earlier at Khalin-Gol. The expansion of the Japanese presence and the projection of their interests began to cause even more alarm in the United States. By the summer of 1941 the United States took the steps to “freeze” the Japanese government assets in the U.S. The ripple effect of this action caused England to follow suit in the freezing of Japanese assets.

Fear of Further Japanese Expansion

The aggressiveness of the Japanese in the Far East caused great concern among the American leadership. Warnings were issued by the U.S. to Japan that included the stipulation that American would take any and all steps necessary to protect their interests in the Pacific. By October 1941 Japan’s course for war with the United States seemed certain as a very militaristic governing body came to power. This new leader, General Hideki Tojo, was supported by the chief’s of both the Army and the Navy. In November 1941 the Japanese ruling cabinet prepared plans that called for the simultaneous attacks against British interests in Malaya, the American interests in the Philippines, the Dutch interests in the East Indies and the American base at Pearl Harbor, Hawaii. With this action, the future course of the war would be set which would now include the United States of America.

Russia vs. Finland

By November 1939, emboldened with their successes in Poland and the Baltic States, Russia had made the same demands on Finland as they had of the other Baltic nations. However, Finland rejected the Russian demands for “basing rights” and quickly mobilized their small armed forces along the Finnish-Soviet border. Realizing that the Finns would not back down to the Russian demands, Russia launched air strikes against major Finnish cities. Shortly thereafter Russia launched their armies against Finland in several key areas with the goal of breaching their defenses and quickly capturing the

capital of Helsinki. The ineffective League of Nations subsequently took steps to expel Russia in December for the aggressive acts against Finland. It is interesting to note that in nearly every act of aggression from Germany, Japan or Italy the League of Nations took some form of administrative action, but was never able to sustain interest from members to further sustain outrage against the aggressor.

From the onset the invasion on Finland proved to be a disaster for the Russians. The Finnish soldiers fighting on their own territory and with a strong determination not to fall under the hold of Communism routed the Soviet forces and inflicted disproportionate casualties to the invaders. Initially, the Russian soldiers were ill equipped for the type of winter warfare they fought, poorly led by incompetent generals and lacked even the most rudimentary clothing for the harsh conditions. The Finns were able to literally wipe out two complete Soviet divisions with a loss ratio of nearly 270 Russians killed for every Finn lost.

Stung by the tenacity of the Finns, the Russians realized that they would have to regroup which they quickly did. During this period it becomes interesting to note that both England and France were in the preparation phase of sending some form of support to the beleaguered Finns, but were denied permission for transit passage by both Norway and Sweden and thus their support became a moot point. More interestingly is the fact there were over 11,000 volunteers, to include hundreds of Finnish-Americans, who actually flocked to Finland to help in the conflict against Russia. However their efforts were too little and few to stem the coming onslaught of the Soviet Union that was to begin in several months.

By February 1940, the Russians had completely changed in their ideas and methodology for the invasion of Finland. More equipment, better leadership and training and most importantly overwhelming combat power in the form of infantry, armored and aviation units that would literally smother the numerically inferior Finns. Within several weeks of heroic and devastating defensive struggles, the Finnish lines were breached and by a series of Russian tactical maneuvers over the next several weeks the Finns realized their cause was lost. By mid-March 1940 Finland had agreed to the Russian demands and capitulated. Russia had the territory that it had wanted but at a substantial cost. Although Finland suffered nearly one in four casualties among their armed forces, Russia suffered in numbers that even today are not fully known. Some estimates place the total number of Russian casualties in terms of killed and wounded in excess of 500,000.

The Russo-Finish war of 1939-1940 demonstrated two object lessons for the world at large and the Germans in particular. That Russia would use whatever the number of personnel necessary to seize their objectives and that cost in human terms did not really matter. The second lesson, and one that did initially create a false impression, was that the Soviet Union was militarily weak in terms of leadership and equipment. While realizing that this thought at the time was incorrect, it did lead to some interesting planning and strategy development by Nazi Germany. When the Germans saw how a small body of well trained and motivated soldiers such as the Finns could defeat the massive Russian military a false conception was created that would serve to fuel the German planning for their own subsequent invasion of Russia. This false assumption on

the part of Germany would in the end serve to be the genesis of the German defeat in World War II.

Russia vs. Japan

Khalin-Gol

The Battle of Khalin-Gol (also known as Nomonhan Bridge) is certainly one that is not widely discussed or studied in the history of World War II with the scrutiny of the Normandy campaign, the Battle of the Bulge or the Pacific Island campaigns. However, militarily speaking the results of the battle altered the standings for the balance of power and political situation between the World War II experiences of both Russia and Japan in the Far East.

The Battle of Khalin-Gol was the result of the growing Japanese expansion in Manchurian territory and the Soviet Far Eastern provinces. The continued conflict between the Chinese and the Japanese caused some concern in Moscow who was concerned with the potential of Japanese incursions into the areas that had strong Soviet interests. In the summer of 1938 both Russia and Japan clashed near Vladivostok along the very ill defined border between Russian Siberia, Korea, and Manchuria. The outcome was indecisive with Russia retaining some key territory. In the spring of 1939, again the Japanese renewed their hostilities, this time on the other side of Manchuria, near the Mongolian border. Initially the Japanese were successful in pushing the Russians out from the area. However after the Russians regrouped and were given new leadership in the form of General Georgi Zhukov along with numerically superior infantry, armor and artillery forces. Following the Soviet practice of mass, the Japanese were outnumbered nearly three to one and were pushed back with substantial losses. Some sources list the casualties between the two forces as about equal, while others say the Japanese had more. While Zhukov certainly added with his presence to the conflict, the Russian superiority in numbers certainly contributed to the victory.

As a result of the battle, the Japanese came to an armistice with the Russians to halt the fighting, which was subsequently confirmed with a treaty in June 1940. Stalin still felt some concern about the close proximity of the Japanese to Russia's eastern border, but the Japanese experience at this time made their decision to focus eastward much easier to make. As a result of the Russo-Japanese treaty neither side aggressively assaulted the other until the closing days of World War II in 1945. Russia was now able to focus its attention on the advances of Hitler in the west while Japan could focus their attentions to the goal of dominating the entire Pacific Ocean area to the south and east. The successes of Zhukov against the Japanese helped to propel his standing with Stalin. It was Zhukov who was later brought from the east to halt the German tide outside Moscow in the fall of 1941.

Name: _____ Date: _____

Multiple-Choice Quiz: Lesson Two – The start of World War II in Europe
(circle the correct answer)

1. What was the Act that allowed for the suspension of individual liberties in Germany and allowed Hitler to claim dictatorial power?
 - a. Legislative Act
 - b. Enabling Act
 - c. Reichstag Act
 - d. Presidential Act

2. The Non-Aggression Pact of August 23, 1939 was signed between which two European powers?
 - a. Germany-Russia
 - b. Germany-Italy
 - c. Russia-France
 - d. France-Italy

3. Which European country was ultimately held responsible for the murder of the Polish military and civilian leadership after the outbreak of World War II?
 - a. Germany
 - b. France
 - c. Italy
 - d. Russia

4. After France signed their Armistice with German in June 1940 where did the new French government establish their capital?
 - a. Paris
 - b. Lyon
 - c. Nantes
 - d. Vichy

5. After Italy had declared war on June 10, 1940 which country did Italy attack in mid-June 1940 that was Italy's first real participation in World War II?
 - a. England
 - b. France
 - c. Germany
 - d. Spain

6. Which county in the Balkans did Italy first invade in 1939 in an attempt to gain prestige and territory.
 - a. Albania
 - b. Greece
 - c. Yugoslavia
 - d. Hungary

7. Which Scandinavian country would not cave in to the 1939 Russian demands for basing rights and the stationing of troops on their soil?
 - a. Norway
 - b. Denmark
 - c. Finland
 - d. Sweden

8. While France was fighting the German invasion of May 1940 what French Far East colony did Japan invade and subsequently occupy?
 - a. Thailand
 - b. Burma
 - c. Laos
 - d. Indo-China

9. What was the code name for the German invasion of England and what did Germany have to have in order to accomplish the invasion?
 - a. Operation SeaLion – Air Superiority
 - b. Operation SeaLion – Naval Superiority
 - c. Operation LandDragon – Air Superiority
 - d. Operation AirEagle – Naval Superiority

10. Who was the Russian general that was able to defeat the Japanese forces at Khalin-Gol and later gain fame as one of the most successful Russian Generals of World War II?
 - a. Khrushchev
 - b. Zhukov
 - c. Stalin
 - d. Molotov

Multiple-Choice Quiz: Lesson Two – The Start of World War II in Europe**Correct Answers**

1. **b. Enabling Act**
2. **a. Germany-Russia**
3. **d. Russia**
4. **d. Vichy**
5. **b. France**
6. **a. Albania**
7. **c. Finland**
8. **d. Indo-China**
9. **a. Operation SeaLion – Air Superiority**
10. **b. Zhukov**

LESSON PLAN - DAY THREE

Subject:

Phase Two (1941 – 1942):

The period of history in Europe and the world as the conflict ignited nearly every location and brought nearly every nation into the conflict.

Educational Goals:

The Student will learn facts and comprehend the events pertaining to:

- The German Invasion of Russia
- The events that brought the United States into World War II
 - McCormack – Dickstein Committee
 - Charles Lindbergh – Isolationists
- The American response to the Pearl Harbor Attack
- The three major turning points of 1942
 - The Battle of Midway
 - The Battle of Stalingrad
 - The Battle of El Alamein
- The Unification of the Allies against Germany in Europe and North Africa
- Commando and “undercover” operations directed against the Germans in Europe
- Keeping Russia supplied with war material and equipment throughout the war

Duration of instruction time required:

- 45 – 50 minutes

Required materials:

- World or American History Textbook
- Map of Europe
- Map of Asia

Supplemental materials (included):

- **Draft of Franklin D. Roosevelt’s address to Congress, “Day of Infamy” speech.** (National Archives www.nara.gov)
Roosevelt’s Day of Infamy speech was delivered to Congress on the 8th of December and in it he declared war against Japan for their surprise attack on the American forces based in the Hawaiian Island chain. Copies of the address and a sound recording of the address are available on-line.

- Question for the students: What would have been your feelings if you were tuned to the radio (remember no T.V. or internet!) and you listened to the address?
Answer: Student responses will vary. For some who can remember they might recall their thoughts on September 11, 2001 or when the United States invaded Iraq in 2003.
- **Photograph of President Franklin D. Roosevelt signing the Declaration of War against Japan, December 8, 1941.** (National Archives NARA file#: 79-AR-82).
 Roosevelt took immediate action against the Japanese after the Pearl Harbor Attack.
Question for the Students: What does the look on the face of President Roosevelt tell you about his thoughts as he is signing the Declaration of War? Answer: One thought could be that he realized the gravity of his actions and most likely the sacrifices that would be demanded from the American people by this action.
 - **American Civilian Internee Correspondence Card**
 Many foreign national civilians from the belligerent powers found themselves in the wrong places on the involvement of their country in the war. These individuals were allowed to maintain correspondence (although censored) with their loved ones.
Question for the Students: If you found that you had been interned by the Germans/Japanese for the duration for the war would you have tried to escape or do you think that you would be better off staying in an Internee Camp since, after all, you were not a soldier or sailor fighting? Answer: This question should cause some critical thinking in the responses because civilians were afforded a different category under the Geneva Conventions that dictated the treatment of civilians.
 - **Map of the Pacific Theater of 1942** (Army Center of Military History)
 Once the United States became involved in World War II a decision was made to prioritize the distribution of resources between the European and Pacific Theaters of War. In the Pacific, the main areas that would be the focus of the fighting to defeat the Japanese would be the Southwest Pacific and Central Pacific areas. The Southwest area was commanded by General Douglas MacArthur and was established to halt any Japanese advance to Australia. The Central Pacific, as well as the North and South Pacific theaters, would be commanded by Admiral Chester Nimitz.
Question for the Students: Compare both the European and Pacific Theaters of War. Which area involved the greater distances? Answer: The Pacific was a much larger area of operation for the Allied forces against the Japanese and the distances were much farther by comparison to Europe.
 - **United States Selective Service Registration Card**
 Beginning with the Selective Training and Service Act of 1940 all young men who were found to be physically fit and within certain age categories were required to register with their local “draft board”.
Question for the Students: The U.S. has not had a draft since 1973. However on reaching your 18th birthday males must register. How would you feel if you were subject to being called to active duty during World War II? Answer: Student response will be different depending on their personal feelings about the present political situation in Iraq. However, in a war that most recognized as necessary,

- many students should voice support for the American effort. There were cases of some men who actually committed suicide because they were classified as 4-F (unfit for service) which was looked on as a stigma!
- **Notice of Selection for Induction in the United States Armed Forces**
This is the letter that was sent to young men as the first step in the process of their being drafted for service in the American armed forces. Some men on receipt of this letter would then go out and join the service of their choice and hopefully get the job/position they desired. When drafted, an individual was placed in the service and position as dictated by the needs of the armed forces, which at times could be quite unpopular.
Question for the Students: Would you accept your selection notice or would you decide to go out and join the service of your choice? Answer: Responses will vary based on past experiences and interests in the military.
 - **Order to Report for Induction in the United States Armed Forces**
This is the letter that was sent to young men indicating what service they were being assigned to and when and where they must report. There were cases of some individuals who did not get or did not respond to the letters. They were then subject to arrest by both civilian and military authorities.
Question for the Students: What would be your feelings if you were placed in a service that you did not want? Answer: Response will be dictated by personal interests.
 - **Photograph of Victory Cargo Ships at a West Coast Shipyard in 1944**
(National Archives NARA file # 208-YE-2B7)
Early in the war it was realized that there was a great need for transport ships to move cargos of all types all over the world. When the German U-Boats began to sink cargo and supply ships in record numbers something would have to be done in order to keep supplies flowing to the Allied forces and keep England and Russia in the war. The only answer was to find ways to mass produce ships.
Question for the Students: How quickly do you think that the American shipyards were able to build a single Liberty or Victory ship? Answer: By 1943 American ships yards were in full swing with an average of 140 ships now being built each month. The record established was a 450' Liberty ship that was actually built in 80 hours and 30 minutes from start to finish. _
 - **Photograph of Women Welders at the Ingalls Shipyard in Pascagoula, MS in 1943** (National Archives NARA file # 86-WWT-85-35)
Women entered the workforce in dramatic numbers and would find employment in nearly every category of labor. Working as a welder was one of the better paying jobs that would be open to women. While it did require some element of physical strength and stamina, the women quickly adapted and more often than not proved to be more reliable than men in areas of detail as well as being punctual for their work.
Question for the Students: How do you think women were treated when they entered the traditional male work place such as being a welder? Answer: At first they were looked down on by male management and the expectations that were set for them were not that high. However very quickly it became apparent that the overall quality of the women's work was equal to that of the men. Over time they

were accepted by management, but not always paid the same prevailing wage as that of their male counterparts.

- **Office of Price Administration Gasoline Purchase Permit and Mileage Ration Coupons**

As America was expanding and modernizing in the 1930's the automobile became an opportunity for people to expand their lives with greater mobility. The restrictions imposed on automobile driving, gasoline, tires, oil, etc., seemed to impact all people. Emergency service people such as police, firemen, doctors, etc., were given exceptions to many of the automobile restrictions.

Question for the Students: What do you think would be the impact of having to curtail automobile usage during World War II? Answer: For many people who lived in the urban areas life without the automobile was not too bad since they could still use mass transit. However, people who lived in the country and in small towns would be impacted in a different way.

- **Office of Price Administration War Ration Book One; Office of Price Administration War Ration Book No. 3; Office of Price Administration War Ration Book Four.**

The concept of rationing went into effect on America's entry into World War II. A wide variety of consumables from foodstuffs to clothing was rationed and controlled by the government under the Office of Price Administration (OPA).

Question for the Students: Notice on the Ration Books that it lists as a crime to improperly use the rations books or engage in Black Market activity. Do you think that everyone in America was honest in using the rationing system?

Answer: Rationing was accepted by most Americans as something that was a "necessary evil" and the majority understood that it had a very real purpose. However, there were those people who were unscrupulous and who did engage in large Black Market and profiteering activities. Some of these individual were arrested and given lengthy prison sentences.

- **United States Savings Bond Postal Savings Plan Booklet**

A variety of methods were employed to encourage people to save money and purchase the various types of War/Defense Savings Bonds. In this case individuals could go to any local post office and purchase the various denominations of saving stamps and when the book was complete they could redeem it for a regular Savings Bond. In schools students were encouraged to buy a 10 cent stamp each week in their classroom.

Question for the Students: Would you consider participating in this way to support the war effort? Answer: The majority of young people would very dutifully purchase the savings stamps to the exclusion of eating lunch. For some younger students it was a social status that all wanted to say they were participating in the war effort until they were old enough to join the military.

- **American Express Insignia of the Army, Navy & Marine Corps Card and American Express Training Camps and Insignia Card**

Many businesses and corporations were trying to do their part to support the war effort. This included helping to inform the public about the military and the importance of being patriotic.

Question for the Students: Do you think that you would have made an extra effort to learn about the military services and the various installations that were located

throughout the United States? Answer: Many young people had older brothers or even sisters who had joined the American armed forces. These types of cards were popular to help young people to learn about the military and could even be considered as being a type of propaganda.

Instruction evaluation (included):

- Ten question multiple choice quiz
- Answer sheet

Topics to be covered:

1. Expansion of the Conflict in Asia
 - The United States Enters World War II
 - Prioritization of Allied Strategy
 - Europe First Policy
 - The Japanese Threat
 - Pearl Harbor
 - Philippines
 - Japanese Expansion at its Height
2. America Strikes Back
 - Thirty Seconds Over Tokyo
 - Turning the Japanese Tide at Midway
3. The European Battleground
 - Operation Barbarossa
 - German Defeat in the East
 - Stalingrad
 - First Allied Victory – North Africa
 - El Alamein
 - Operation Torch
4. Mobilization of the American Arsenal of Democracy
 - America Responds
 - Cash and Carry Program
 - Lend – Lease Program
 - Staffing the Armed Forces
 - Mobilization
 - Building the War Machine
 - Industrialization
 - Home Front America
 - Charles Lindbergh
 - Alien Internment in America

- Supporting the War Effort
 - Rationing
 - Participation

- 5. Keeping the Enemy off Guard
 - The Commando's
 - Norway
 - France
 - Behind the Lines
 - Special Operations Executive (SOE)
 - Downed Allied Aircrew Escapes
 - Espionage and Switzerland
 - Office of Strategic Services (OSS) – Allen Dulles
 - Anti-Nazi resistance in Germany

Methodology:**Part I.****Option One:**

Instructor can provide copies of portions of the text to each student as well as copies of the related materials listed above and lead the students in a discussion of the events as they occurred chronologically and utilize the included documentary materials. Of note should be commentary relating to the adequacy of the preparation of the United States for eventual participation in the war.

Question for the students: Given the advance of Japan in China and the Pacific, should the United States have anticipated a war with Japan? Does this have any relevance with regard to the United States participation in the Iraq War since 2003?

Option Two:

Instructor can highlight and summarize in a lecture format the events that encompass each of the above listed topics and utilize the included documentary materials.

Part II.

Instructor can further provide to each of the students for homework purposes copies of the various primary source documents (included) and perform a review and critique of each in the following manner:

- a. Did the United States respond in a timely manner to the potential threat of Japanese aggression? Should the United States have enacted a National Defense Act prior to 1940?
- b. What was the overall feeling of the American public once war had been declared?
- c. Ask the students what prewar preparations allowed the Japanese military to be so successful in their invasion of the Pacific Rim and their attack on Pearl Harbor?

Expansion of the Conflict in Asia

The United States Enters World War II

Japan's actions on the 7th of December 1941 were for the American people a "day that will live in Infamy". **(See included Roosevelt's "Day of Infamy" Speech and Photograph)** On that day World War II finally became a global war. Within four days of Pearl Harbor, both Germany and Italy declared war on the United States. The United States was now faced with a situation that involved being at war in two completely opposite theaters. This situation would now be one that would cause severe stains on the American public, but one that would finally provide some hope for Great Britain.

Those Americans who found themselves overseas in occupied German, Italian or Japanese controlled lands were subject to immediate apprehension as enemy aliens and would be interned through the duration of the war. Some of the American diplomatic staff and their families were exchanged with the belligerent power. But many Americans who were engaged in business ventures, newspaper and journalistic activities or humanitarian endeavors would not be leaving. This posed a unique situation in which many of these people had to resign themselves to their fates. **(See included Civilian Internee Postcard)** On some rare occasions, some of these people were later exchanged for either German, Italian or Japanese people who were in similar circumstances in the United States. This exchange usually was conducted through either neutral Spain or Switzerland.

Prioritization of Allied Strategy

For one a year England had stood as a bulwark against the Germans and the Japanese. In the European theater, the English under the leadership of Winston Churchill had resisted the German onslaught. By late 1941 England was looking a serious shortages of food, coal and life essentials that by some accounts could only last for another six weeks. The German u-boat menace had severely reduced the importation of basic necessities. With the United States entry into the war, England finally saw a full ally in this global struggle. Earlier the United States had assisted the British government through the "Cash and Carry" and "Lend – Lease" programs.

Europe First Policy

In late December of 1941 the Arcadia Conference was held in Washington, DC. For over three weeks the British and American leaders discussed the strategy that would be followed until the conclusion of this Second World War. Between Roosevelt and Churchill, based on the recommendations of their senior military leaders a "Europe first" strategy was developed. England had been on the verge of collapse and the goal was now to keep England in the war and focus on defeating Germany and Italy first and then focus on defeating Japan later. The priority for resources would now be established to build up England as an island fortress for an eventual invasion of continental Europe. The pacific conflict against Japan was recognized as being a more diverse war in which naval forces

would be strengthened to keep the Japanese at bay, while at the same time slowly strengthening ground forces for smaller scale operations. The build up of forces in England would become known as “Operation Bolero” and would lead to jokes about England getting ready to sink under the weight of the American men and material prior to the invasion of Europe.

With this arrangement a new and unified organization was created that became known as “Combined Chiefs of Staff”. This was an arrangement in which the American Joint Chiefs of Staff and the British Chiefs of Staff were melded together to discuss global strategy and make decisions that would shape the direction of the war effort. They would meet throughout the war along with both Roosevelt and Churchill and later with Joseph Stalin and his military staff. Several notable personalities, such as the US Army Chief of Staff General George C. Marshall and the Chairman of the British Chiefs of Staff, General Alan Brooke clearly emerged as dominating historical figures during these meetings and their role in organizing an eventual Allied victory.

The Japanese Threat

As America was stunned and caught unprepared for their entry into the World War, the Japanese had responded to what they saw as a threat from the United States. Besides the English colonies in Asia and the Royal Navy presence, the Japanese realized that in order to gain the complete control of the Pacific rim of the world they would have to render the United States impotent. America at this time was still a peacetime nation, but had begun to grow with the National Defense act of 1940. This brought additional personnel into the US military and through the instance of General George Marshall in Congressional testimony a greater defense budget. This budget would translate into more armaments. In decades earlier the US Navy had focused their military presence on the west coast in ports like San Diego. But over time, the US Navy expanded their force projection and built up large facilities in the Pacific, such as the Pacific fleet headquarters at Pearl Harbor, Hawaii. Under the prevailing naval doctrine, these forces could be quickly dispatched to any area in the Pacific that would suit the needs of American diplomacy. As such this would then set the stage for the eventual clash between the United States and the expanding Japanese Empire that culminated on December 7, 1941 at Pearl Harbor.

After World War II ended, controversy has continued through the modern period revolving around the notion that the United States aware of the Japanese intent to attack Pearl Harbor and the fleet at anchorage. In some regard this is a true statement, but after careful examination it becomes apparent that being aware is not the same as being prepared and ready to defend an anticipated attack. From mid-1940 American cryptographers had broken the Japanese diplomatic code and began to read the traffic between the Japanese foreign office and their embassy in Washington. This would later become the code that was named “Magic”. This enabled the United States to fully recognize that Japan was not really focused on peace and did give some early warning the Japanese were planning something on the military front against the United States. The Japanese military did not always share their plans with their own diplomats, which may explain why their embassy in Washington was not given the complete details of the impending attack at Pearl Harbor. The American Secretary of State Cordell Hull was not

getting anywhere with the Japanese. By November 1941, the US Army code breakers learned that a large Japanese naval fleet was steaming somewhere in the Asian Pacific. American forces in the Pacific were warned that something was ongoing with the Japanese, but they were not given any details. And thus they were caught unaware at Pearl Harbor in early December 1941. One of the few positive actions that emerged from the surprise attack was that the US aircraft carriers were not in port on the 7th of December. Unknown to the Japanese, they had left Hawaii and were either out at sea or undergoing repairs on the west coast. Additionally, the attack on Pearl Harbor only resulted in the complete destruction of just two battleships, the USS Arizona and the USS Oklahoma, while the remaining damaged ships would eventually be repaired. The assault on Pearl Harbor cost the United States the loss of nearly 3,000 soldiers, sailors, marines and civilians, but this would be considered minor in the scope of things to come.

Pearl Harbor

The architect of the Pearl Harbor attack was Japanese Admiral Isoroku Yamamoto who was the Commander in Chief of the Japanese Fleet. While recognizing that war would be inevitable with the United States based on the string of events that was occurring in the Pacific, Yamamoto felt that a war with the United States must be decisive and immediate. Without this being accomplished, he felt that Japan would be doomed in any war with the United States. Admiral Yamamoto had good reason to fear the potential of the United States. Earlier he had been the Japanese Navel Attaché in Washington and had also been a student at Harvard University. In this regard he recognized that the United States could be called the “Sleeping Giant” both industrially and militarily.

The Japanese juggernaut quickly picked up speed after Pearl Harbor. With simultaneous action, the remaining British and American possessions, installations and facilities in Asia were brought under assault by the 8th of December 1941. The first to be struck was the British held Crown Colony Hong Kong which fell on the 25th of December. In organized assaults the Japanese hit the American garrison on Wake Island in what has become described as the “Pacific Alamo” that held out until the 23rd of December. In the southwestern quadrant of the Pacific Ocean, the Japanese stormed Malaya pushing the British forces back to Singapore which would eventually fall on 15 February 1942. On the 8th of December 1941 the Japanese efficiently occupied Thailand and focused on Burma. This operation was intended to cut the British supply lines from India to the Pacific. By May of 1942 despite American and British efforts, the Japanese were able to defeat the Chinese forces being advised by the Allies and gain complete control of south Asian peninsula. Further advances saw the Japanese begin a drawn out campaign in the Philippines against the United States that would last from the 8th of December 1941 to the final cessation of fighting on the 18th of May 1942. In this last action nearly 12,000 American men and women would enter into Japanese captivity that by the end of the war would be reduced by one third through starvation and brutal treatment and conditions.

The Philippines

The defense of the American interests in the Philippines was led by Army General Douglas MacArthur would become more well known through his military exploits and

his personal idiosyncrasies. It is ironic to note that prior to World War II one of MacArthur's young military aides in the Pacific was an army Lieutenant Colonel who would by the end of the war hold a rank that would be equal to that of MacArthur. That young officer was of course Dwight Eisenhower. To his credit, MacArthur was able to resist the Japanese invasion and cede positions that were indefensible in order to buy time to reorganize his defenses. There are critics that MacArthur did not do enough to prepare his forces to resist the Japanese invasion, but in reality the Philippines was at the end of the American military chain and did not receive anywhere near what it would need to successfully halt the aggression. In March of 1942 MacArthur was ordered to proceed to Australia in order to assume command of all Allied forces in the South Pacific. By May even the island fortress of Corregidor in the mouth of Manila bay had fallen. At the end of the fighting in the Philippines the Japanese had gained complete control of the majority of the island archipelago. This control would never be complete as there were small bands of both American and Filipino's who refused to surrender and who would carry on a guerilla campaign against the Japanese that would last until the end of the war in 1945. It should be noted that among the American forces that were captured by the Japanese were a group of US Army and Navy women who had served as nurses throughout the fighting. These women would also endure, braving the hardships and difficulties that would faced them over the next three and a half years of captivity. Of the 77 Army and Navy nurses who would enter captivity, all would survive the war in various conditions. These heroic women would spend their captivity providing care and comfort to the Allied military in Japanese captivity. In the years after the war, there was more than one American would state that it had been the efforts of these nurses who had kept them alive physically and morally throughout the war.

At the end of the war more details emerged surrounding one particular event that occurred during the early Japanese occupation of the Philippines. This event came to be known as the "Bataan Death March". It would later be a term which was synonymous with unparalleled brutality and suffering. The Allied forces that survived the fighting and surrender of May 1942 were forced to march nearly 65 miles to their imprisonment at what would become known as "Camp O'Donnell". Of the 70,000 who began the march nearly 7,000 would die by the end. Many of these were murdered by their captors who, for the most part, looked upon the Allied soldiers as being dishonorable in their surrender. These men would die from beatings, bayoneting, shooting, and starvation.

Japanese Expansion at its Height

In January 1942, the Japanese began a conquest of the island chains of the Bismarck's, the Solomon's and into Papua, New Guinea. This expansion caused great concern to the Allied forces in Australia since the Japanese had now come within a hundred miles of the northern city of Darwin. To the far north the Japanese forces would send a force to capture and occupy the Aleutian Islands of Attu and Kiska. This would be the only American territory that would be actually occupied by the Japanese during the course of World War II. However, as it turned out this would be the greatest extent of the Japanese expansion. By the spring of 1942, the Japanese had reached the maximum extent of their expansion and imperial ambitions.

In the early part of the Anglo-American alliance meetings of the Combined Chiefs of Staff resulted in the Pacific theater of World War II being divided into different areas of operations. This was intended to allow for the most efficient planning to be organized and intended to counteract the Japanese forces with available resources. **(See included Map of the Pacific Theater)** The major areas of operation for the Allied forces would be focused in areas that would become known as the Central Pacific, the South Pacific, and the Southwest Pacific. Adjacent to the Southwest Pacific would be the area that would become known as the China, Burma, India (CBI) Theater. The Southwest Pacific would take on the mission of island “hopping” fighting that would lead from Australia through New Guinea, the Solomon’s, the Dutch East Indies to the Philippines. This would be characterized as being an “Army” operation under the leadership of General Douglas MacArthur. The North, Central and South Pacific would be a predominantly Navy operation and would be under the leadership of Admiral Chester Nimitz. Under Nimitz, the Navy and Marines would see very unforgiving and vengeful fighting at places that would become household names such as Tarawa, Iwo Jima and Okinawa. It would be these two personalities would lead the Allied forces in their push against the Japanese for the next three years.

The China, Burma, India Theater would be a campaign that would involve Allied support to China in an effort to halt further Japanese expansion. In effect this theater was one that would sometime see an eruption of rivalries between the Chinese Nationalist and Communists rather than a struggle against the Japanese. Thrown into this was also inefficient organization as well as corruption among the various Chinese leaders. For some Chinese the Japanese invasion was merely a temporary interruption in the conflict for supremacy of the country that had been ongoing for the past two decades.

In World War I the naval forces of the belligerent countries organized their fleets around the battleship. Thus for the few surface engagements in that war it would be these large ships firing on each other over long distances and in a line of sight. World War II would introduce a new concept that was organized around the airplane. Both the Japanese and American naval forces would face each other through the use of their carrier based aircraft. In many of the battles that were to come there were some occasions where neither of the combat ships ever saw each other. The attacking fleets would be organized around the aircraft carrier rather than the battleship. Battleships would still play a significant role in World War II, but not to the extent they did in World War I. There would still be surface ship engagements but these were more often in support of ground operations such as the landing of troops.

While the main combatants in the Pacific would be the American, British and Japanese, the Russians also had a vested interest in the outcome of the fighting. It would not be until the 8th of August 1945, two days after Hiroshima and one day before Nagasaki, that Russia would declare war on Japan. This was based on a condition that the Russians had insisted on in their early talks with both Roosevelt and Churchill. The Russian emphasis was to focus on defeating the Germans, who posed the greatest threat to their existence, first. Then when the war in Europe was ended Russia would turn their attention to the east against their neutral neighbor Japan. As agreed on at the Yalta Conference in February 1945, Stalin stated Russia would subsequently declare war on Japan 90 days

after the end of the war in Europe. In this case the war in Europe ended on the 8th of May, V.E.-Day. It can be said that this late entry into the war was why the Russian influence over Japan in the post war world was greatly reduced.

America Strikes Back

Thirty Seconds over Tokyo

With the string of Japanese successes throughout the Pacific the morale of the Allied powers was at it nadir. The Axis advances had brought a large amount of the world under the control of Japan, Germany and Italy. It did not appear that any of these countries could be halted. With the need for some type of response to the constant assault of the Axis both Roosevelt and Churchill recognized the need to boost the flagging spirits of their country. In Europe daring raids like the British attack on the German naval base at St. Nazaire, France or the foolish British-Canadian attack on German coastal fortifications at Dieppe, France were at least showing that the Allies had not given up. In early 1942 the American military formulated an operation that would serve as both surprise to the Japanese at home and also demonstrate the coordinated efforts of the American sea and air forces.

The concept was straight forward and simple. Use air power to bomb Japan. However, American planners realized that getting these bombers over Japan would be the greatest challenge. Beginning in early 1942 US Army Air Forces were beginning to develop into a strong fighting organization. Recognizing his ability as both a pilot and a natural leader, Lieutenant Colonel James “Jimmy” Doolittle was briefed on a top secret mission to carry the war to Japan. He quickly was enlisted and set about recruiting a group of 16 five-man crews to fly a twin engine B-25 bomber. The B-25 was selected because it was easy to maneuver and could take off and land on short airfields. The mission was to place these 16 planes on an aircraft carrier and get within 400 – 500 miles of Japan, take off, bomb key military and industrial targets and land at secure airfields in China. The naval ship selected for this mission was the aircraft carrier the USS Hornet. Loading the planes on board under the cover of darkness the Hornet and her escorts departed the west coast for this rendezvous with destiny. On the morning of 18 April 1942 the mission was launched early, nearly double the distance from what had been planned. This was because a Japanese ship had been spotted in the path of the task force. Within three minutes the ship had been sunk, but it was not known if it had sent out a radio transmission back to Japan. Thus within the span of the morning hours the first real attempt to bring the war to the Japanese homeland began. The cities of Tokyo, Yokohama, Nagoya, Kobe and Osaka were the main targets. After dropping their bombs and heading off in the general direction of China fate began to take a hand in the outcome of each aircrew’s flight. In the final accounting 13 of the crews were able to reach China, while three did not. One crew landed in Russia and was interned for the war. Several crews were forced to bail out over Japan and were eventually captured. In total eight men became prisoners of the Japanese and three were subsequently “executed” by the Japanese. After a series of harrowing adventures Doolittle and his surviving men, many in badly injured state were able to make their ways out of China through help of the Chinese people. For his effort on this mission Doolittle was to earn the Medal of Honor.

Strategically the Doolittle mission of little significance. The damage that was caused was minor in the grand scheme of the Japanese war industries. But of most importance was the fact that the raid gave the American public a much needed boost in sagging spirits and in the end it let the Japanese government know that the war was now on their doorstep.

Turning the Japanese Tide at Midway

Now that Japan was at the extent of their expansion, the Allied forces began to concentrate their focus on a plan that would enable them to strike with a clear purpose. The first real encounter between the American naval forces and the Japanese navy occurred in May 1942 at what was known as the Battle of the Coral Sea. Because the Americans had broken the Japanese naval code, they were able to counter the actions of the Japanese naval forces. This first major encounter of surface vessels became notable for demonstrating the new nature that naval warfare had taken at the state of World War II. Both of the combatant forces relied on their air wings to provide the offensive combat. The surface ships of both sides never saw each other during the entire period of the engagement. The engagement began when the patrol aircraft from Rear-Admiral Frank Fletcher's Task Force 17 (TF-17), organized around the aircraft carrier *Yorktown* sighted an approaching Japanese formation of ships. He would be later supported by Rear-Admiral Aubrey Fitch's Task Force 11 (TF-11) which was organized around the USS *Lexington* who had been getting refueled. The approaching Japanese naval forces had as their goal providing support and assistance in the landing of troops to invade Port Moresby in Southeastern New Guinea which would serve as a springboard for the invasion of Northern Australia. On the 6th of May 1942, these two American task forces would locate the Japanese fleet, under the command of Vice-Admiral Takagi, in the waters east of New Guinea, the Coral Sea. The *Yorktown* launched a strike with all air squadrons from the ship. This included both the Dauntless dive bombers and the Devastator torpedo planes. This force located the Japanese carrier *Shoho* which was subsequently sunk with bombs and torpedoes with a loss of only three of their own aircraft. Now alerted to the American presence, the Japanese launched a twilight attack on the American carriers. Unfortunately, after launch the Japanese were unable to locate either the *Lexington* or *Yorktown*. Realizing that darkness was settling in, they jettisoned their bombs and torpedoes and turned for the own ships. It was at that time that they actually flew over the Americans carriers on their return journey. Since the Americans had picked up the returning Japanese aircraft on their radar they sent up their own fighters and were able to shoot down approximately ten of the aircraft. When the Japanese got away they continued to search for their own carrier, but more than half of the planes lost their direction and in the end only seven of the original Japanese striking force of planes made it safely back on deck. The 7th of May saw each fleet send dive bomber and torpedo planes after the other. It would be a question of who would hit first. Within an hour the Americans located the Japanese carrier *Shokaku* and managed to place three 500lbs bombs on the deck of the carrier, igniting fuel reserves and causing the ship to eventually limp away badly damaged. With the approach of the other Japanese group around the aircraft carrier *Zuikaku* the Americans were now without their own air defenses. With the arrival of nearly 50 Japanese attacking aircraft the *Yorktown* and *Lexington* both were hit and damaged. Many of the other accompanying US vessels of both task forces were also hit and damaged. The *Lexington* was more heavily damaged

from the results of two torpedo and two bomb hits. The Yorktown only had a hit from a bomb and some lighter damage. The Japanese withdraw after these attacks to regroup and accomplish repairs to all their damaged ships. Efforts were then made to stabilize the Lexington and perform damage control while the Yorktown was able to continue to operate with its aircraft. Unfortunately for the crew of the Lexington, fires began to spread and went out of control. Seeing no hope for salvage, the order to abandon ship was given, the crew was rescued and the Lexington was sunk by torpedoes from a nearby accompanying destroyer.

This first engagement proved to be significant since it was the first time the Japanese had lost an aircraft carrier and had another seriously damaged. Japanese aircraft losses were much higher than the American air squadron losses when including the planes from the sunken Shoho. After suffering the loss of the carrier and other vessels, the Japanese called off their attempt to invade Port Moresby. The battle was a draw. The Japanese lost more aircraft while the Americans lost more ships. However, while being a draw, strategically it was a success for the Americans since they were able to force the Japanese to abandon their plans for further expansion and threaten to Australia. With the loss of the Lexington, the damage to the Yorktown would have to be repaired quickly. The Yorktown made Pearl Harbor on the 27th of May and was sufficiently repaired by the 30th of May to be declared battle ready. With that, the Yorktown sailed westward now as the key element in Task Force 17 with a rendezvous of the remaining American Pacific Fleet under the command of Admiral Nimitz.

Within 30 days after this first naval combat in the South Pacific at Coral Sea, the Japanese would again attempt to expand the limits of their empire. It would be without the recently damaged combatant ships from the Coral Sea battle and the target would be Midway Island, roughly halfway between Japan and the Hawaiian Island chain. The Japanese intended to capture this island with a force of 6,500 troops and most importantly gain control the airfield on the island. With the advance knowledge of the Japanese plans the American forces were able to prepare for the expected assault. While significantly outnumbered by the Japanese in both aircraft and surface vessels, the American forces proved to be better prepared strategically. In this second great naval air battle of the war, the United States used its advance knowledge of Japanese intentions to full advantage. Over the course of the next three days the carrier aircraft of each side pounded the other, with all battle damage coming from either aircraft or submarines.

The supreme commander of the Japanese Navy, Admiral Yamamoto, planned a simultaneous operation for the invasion of the Aleutian Islands as a diversion. It was his expressed hope that the Americans would fall for this movement and reduce their naval presence in the central Pacific. With the knowledge from the code breakers that the Japanese forces that were sent to the Aleutian Island chain was to be a diversion, Admiral Nimitz prepared for the defense of Midway with two carrier task forces. The first was Task Force 16 (TF-16) under the command of Rear-Admiral Raymond Spruance and consisted of the carriers *Enterprise* and *Hornet* and their supporting ships. This element was sent to a position that was northeast of Midway Island where it would remain undetected by the Japanese for some time. On the 2nd of June TF-17 under the command of Admiral Fletcher along with the repaired Yorktown joined with TF-16 to the northeast

of Midway. The Japanese forces under the overall command of Admiral Nagumo approached Midway in two separate fleet formations. One fleet contained the invasion troop transports, battleships and support forces while the other fleet contained the aircraft carriers Hiryu, Soryu, Akagi and Kaga. On the morning of the 4th of June Nagumo launched half of his air assets from these four carriers. Their mission was to bomb and neutralize the defenders at Midway and were armed with bombs. Admiral Nagumo was unsure if there were any American vessels in the area and he retained half of his carrier based airplanes so he would be able to counteract any naval threat he might face. Once these planes took off they would find themselves engaging the American fighters over Midway who were both out numbered and overmatched. Within an hour the Japanese carrier fleet had been located by Navy Catalina amphibious patrol bombers flying on scouting missions from the island. Midway Island then dispatched most of the Army Air Force B-17 and B-26 bombers as well as the Navy and Marine torpedo planes to attack the carriers. When these aircraft arrived they proved to be ineffective and were nearly all shot down with causing very little damage at all to the Japanese carrier fleet. In the meantime TF-16 and TF-17 were still to the northeast of Midway undetected by the Japanese. With the need declared for a second wave of Japanese attacks at Midway Island, Admiral Nagumo ordered his waiting aircraft to be loaded with bombs. It was at that time he was notified by his own scout planes of the detection of a group of American ships along with a single carrier. At this critical moment, he allowed the remaining torpedo planes to retain their torpedoes that could be used against the Americans ships while the remaining planes would keep their bombs for an attack on Midway. It was at this time that the first wave of attacking planes returned to their carriers. As these planes landed from the first strike, they would need 45 minutes to be rearmed and refueled and it would be very difficult to launch aircraft while all this was on going.

When Admiral Fletcher received word that the Japanese carriers had been located he ordered TF-16 to proceed to the southwest on an interception course with the Japanese carriers. He was to launch all his aircraft and attack the carriers. Admiral Fletcher's TF-17 would follow once they had recovered their scout aircraft. Both the Hornet and Enterprise then launched the first air groups which consisted of dive bombers. When they arrived where they had expected to encounter the Japanese fleet, there were no enemy ships available. One of the American striking forces, from the Hornet under the command of Commander Stanhope Ring, turned to the south towards Midway and searched for the Japanese to no avail. These planes had to eventually land on Midway or return to their carrier. The other air group that arrived with Ring was from the Enterprise was under the command of Lt. Commander Clarence McClusky. He turned to the northeast and would in a short while find himself facing the Japanese carrier force. Meanwhile two Devastator torpedo squadrons from the Enterprise arrived on the station and pressed their attack. In the ensuing one sided battle every one was shot down, some without ever releasing their bombs. The victorious Japanese Zero's that had been providing fighter cover, quickly returned and were rearmed and refueled and back in the air. Moments later two squadrons of Devastators and a fighter cover of ten wildcats from the Yorktown arrived over the Japanese carrier force. Within a short while nearly all of these planes were destroyed. To this point the American aerial attacks on the carriers had been fruitless. Now the Japanese were preparing to land their fighter cover while preparing to launch a strike on the Americans. At that moment when the Japanese carrier

decks were a sea of movement as planes were being recovered and subsequently being prepared for launch. The decks were covered with waiting planes. It was then that McClusky's dive bombers arrived and began their attack against the unprepared and undefended carriers. Moments later squadrons of Dauntless dive bombers from the Yorktown arrived and joined McClusky in the attack on the four Japanese carriers. Immediately the Kaga had four direct hits and was burning badly. McClusky's force hit the Akagi and Soryu with two bomb hits, starting fires that on the Akagi would shortly prove fatal. The Soryu took three bomb hits and immediately caught fire. The Hiryu was now the only undamaged carrier. The Hiryu would launch her planes to follow the returning American strike aircraft and found the Yorktown. The Hiryu's aircraft managed to land three direct hits on the Yorktown causing significant damage. Following the lessons learned at the Coral Sea, the Yorktown was able to perform damage control and recover from these attacks. Shortly after they were again able to continue to launch their aircraft. In the late afternoon, a second wave of dive bombers from the Hornet, Enterprise and Yorktown found the Hiryu. Four direct hits on the flight deck of the Hiryu set off fatal explosions and fires that rendered the ship a disaster. Once the Japanese carriers had been struck, the American aviators continued to attack battleships and cruisers as other worthwhile targets.

While the first wave of attacking American dive bombers was pounding the carriers, the Soryu managed to launch a scout aircraft which had eventually located the three American carriers. By the time of the return of this scout the Soryu was being consumed by fire. Subsequently the scout plane managed to land on the Hiryu. Informed of the location of the American ships, Admiral Yamaguchi directed an attack with the remainder of his aircraft. With a small group of ten torpedo planes and six fighters the Yorktown was found. While managing to avoid some of the Japanese torpedoes, two found the ship and caused explosions. The ship began to list to port and the order to abandon ship was given. The crew from the Yorktown were taken off by accompanying destroyers. But after a few hours the Yorktown was still afloat. The decision was made to try to salvage the Yorktown and bring her back to Pearl Harbor. After the wounds of the 4th of June she was greatly hampered in movement. By the 6th of June 1942 the Yorktown was slowly limping amid the screen of destroyers. A single Japanese submarine, the I-168, was able to penetrate the destroyer screen on the 6th and put four torpedoes into the ship. But somehow the Yorktown stayed afloat. At that time it was again abandoned to the sea. It would take until the morning of the 7th of June before the mighty Yorktown succumbed to the Japanese inflicted damage and slid into the ocean.

The approaching Japanese Midway invasion force that contained the troop transports and their accompanying battleships were immediately halted when the news of the disaster reached them. The diversionary landings at the Aleutian islands would continue, although the Japanese would withdraw their naval forces and leave the army soldiers to their own fate. The Japanese invasion of Midway was called off. In this battle it was through a series of fortunate events that the Americans were able to sink all four of the Japanese carriers, while suffering the loss of just the aircraft carrier Yorktown. In all total the American forces lost only two ships while the Japanese lost the four carriers as well as another ship and there were six others that had damaged. Since this was more of an aerial struggle, each side suffered extraordinary losses of aircraft and crew. The

Japanese lost a total of 322 planes with crew while the Americans lost 147 aircraft. American personnel losses were listed at 307 while it was estimated that the Japanese lost over 2,100 men.

This event was called one of the decisive battles of the history World War II because it effectively ended the expansion of Japan in the Pacific. For the remainder of the war Japan would prove to be on the defensive. The effect that this action had on the Japanese navy was that they were no longer invincible and was now totally deprived of the ability to be on the initiative. The bravery of both sides was particularly noteworthy as entire squadrons of both American and Japanese planes were destroyed as they engaged in the combat.

The Japanese defeat at Midway provided a much needed respite for the American fears of a west coast invasion. Clearly the American public had the feeling that the Hawaiian Islands would be Japan's next goal and that would be followed by an invasion of the mainland. Subsequent research after World War II has indicated while this may have been a very legitimate plan for the Japanese; it would have lacked the much needed resources to make it a reality. Japan was stretched very thin and after Midway it was starting to show. Gone were the continued successes and the unimpeded ground conquests. It would now become a battle that would be determined by which side could produce the greatest amount of military equipment. Japan had years to prepare for the war while the United States did not. However, as Admiral Yamamoto had earlier predicted, Japan had now awakened the "Sleeping Giant".

The European Battleground

Operation Barbarossa

With hindsight historians are able to predict that people did not completely understand the lessons of past conflicts. Did Adolf Hitler study history? Was he aware of the shortcomings that Napoleon had to deal with in his invasion of Russia in 1812? Modern analysis will demonstrate that Hitler had lacked a complete understanding of the character and nature that warfare in Russia would take. Germany had participated in World War I and many of the German leaders of the Second World War understood the problems of the dynamics of Russia. It must be remembered that in World War I Hitler had fought predominantly against the British in Belgium and France.

After failing to bring England to her knees in the summer and fall of 1940, Germany began to focus on the threat of an uneasy ally in the east. Russia had finally subdued tiny Finland and was moving into the Baltic Republics of Latvia, Lithuania and Estonia. Further, in order to feed their growing thirst for petroleum Russia was also eyeing the oil fields to the southwest. Was Germany threatened by this movement? It can be argued that Hitler felt that he should strike Stalin first before Russia could organize and force Germany into a defensive war. In truth Russia under the leadership of Stalin was not as militarily prepared as it could have been and this was recognized by Hitler. After all, had not Germany had an unbroken string of successes since September 1939? With this in mind the German high command began to plan for the invasion of Russia (Code named

“Operation Barbarossa”) for the spring of 1941. For planning purposes, the timetable was well thought out and was expected to lead to a final German victory before the onslaught of the Russian winter. Hence Germany would not prepare for a winter war.

Unfortunately for Germany her weak ally to the south, Italy had become intractably mired in the Balkan Peninsula in the early spring of 1941. Originally, Hitler had hoped that Yugoslavia would join the German coalition of Hungary, Rumania and Bulgaria and thus produce a strong southern flank that would serve to protect Germany as she entered Russia. In the fall of 1940, Italy had launched an ill-advised and ill-suited invasion of Greece from Italian occupied Albania. By the onset of winter the Italian forces had been pushed back into Albania and had suffered a loss of one quarter of their lands. The British began to fortify Greece with troops taken from the victorious North African forces that had pushed Italy out of Egypt. Worried about a potential British threat to his south and the demise of his ally, Hitler launched a lightning “Blitzkrieg” against Yugoslavia with a goal of moving into Greece and driving out the British. Through innovative operations the German succeeded in rolling through Yugoslavia within a week and by the end of April all of the Balkan Peninsula was under Axis control. While these actions did not account for a great loss of German personnel or equipment it did impact the German timetable for Barbarossa.

The day of the summer equinox began with the early morning bombardment of Russian airfields and fortresses that were behind the borders of German occupied Poland. On a front that extended for nearly 1,500 miles over four million soldiers began for many what would be their last glimpse of Western Europe. The war in Russia can be characterized like no other in regards to the brutality of the combat and the harshness of the climate. The operational goal of the German forces was to capture Moscow and with that the campaign would close. After a series of quick victories the German Wehrmacht was on the outskirts of the Russian capital by October. It was here that they would stay and never advance. In the early fighting in the summer of 1941, nearly two million Russians became prisoners of war and an equal number were thought to have been killed. With so many soldiers defeated the German high command felt that Russia could not continue the war. What they failed to recognize was the vastness of Russia and the one apparently inexhaustible commodity they possessed, manpower.

By late October 1941 the German forces had advanced so rapidly that it was necessary to halt for resupply and a reassessment of their initial strategy. To the north Leningrad, the renamed St. Petersburg, would prove a throne in the side of the Germans for nearly three years. While in the south the Black Sea cities of the Crimea would cause the Wehrmacht great dismay. With the situation static for the moment, the age old enemy of invaders struck, the Russian winter. Since the German forces had expected a quick victory they were ill equipped for the onslaught of bitter weather and the ill-equipped soldiers would now feel a greater suffering than from combat. That first year of the war in Russia, the winter weather caused more German casualties than enemy bullets. The German losses in this first year in Russia approached nearly 800,000 men, not counting the equipment, weapons and supplies. Under these circumstances, the Russians launched their first major counteroffensive on the German forces outside of Moscow. While the Germans could not recognize where these Russians had come from, their origin had been the Far

East, since Russia now recognized that it was safe to move their forces away from the now non-existent Japanese threat. By early 1942 the Germans had halted the Russian attack and both sides were content to wait until the spring in order to begin their next series of activities.

With the majority of Russian industrial areas either captured by the Germans or forced to withdrawn and is reconstituted beyond the Ural Mountains, both England and America realized that it would be imperative to provide Russia with equipment and supplies that would help to keep them engaged in the war against Germany. This aid would be in the form of the Lend-Lease program which would initially send help to Russia via the convey routes to Murmansk and Archangel. Later efforts to supply their Russian Ally would go through the “Persian Gulf Command” (modern Iran) and into Southern Russia.

German Defeat in the East

With spring came a renewed German offensive to the east and southeast. This campaign would now become the epic struggle that would characterize the entire Russian theater and that style of war. As the Germans moved Hitler became fixated on the city on the Volga River that bore Stalin’s name. Arriving on the outskirts in August 1942, these opponents began a battle that would last through February 1943. The struggle of this city became symbolic as well as practical. Hitler felt that if he could take this city of a resurgent Russia they would loose the war, while Stalin felt that if he could hold and defeat the Germans, Russia would then have the initiative to push Germany back to the border of Poland. In the end Germany would loose nearly 300,000 men while Russia would finally admit losses that totaled over two million military and civilians casualties.

The German forces would comprise the 6th Army under General (later Field Marshall) Friedrich von Paulus while the Russians would ultimately be lead by Marshall Zhukov. The fighting for Stalingrad took on a whole new meaning as each city block and industrial complex was fought over in results that were measured by meters and feet. The underground sewer network provided for surprise raids and snipers would dual against any unsuspecting soldier caught unprotected. By late October the German offensive had stalled and within the month the Germans would become surrounded by the Russian pincer movement in Operation “Uranus” to create what would become known as the “cauldron” of Stalingrad. The only relief would now be a Luftwaffe air bridge that would prove to be totally inadequate. As the fighting intensified and the supplies and men dwindled the struggle became more desperate. In the end the Russians simply overwhelmed what was left of the German forces. In Germany the bells began to toll as the general public started to recognize the magnitude of this disaster. The German surrender saw 95,000 soldiers enter Russian captivity. Of this number it was not until 1955 when the final Stalingrad prisoners returned to Germany, their number being reduced to approximately 5,000 who had survived the Russian captivity. This was in addition to the German allies of Romania, Italy and Hungary who had lost over 400,000 at Stalingrad. There was even a small contingent of Spaniards known as the “Blue Division” who fought in Russia as volunteers.

Prior to the Battle of Stalingrad, the German military had enjoyed a string of successes that had expanded the horizons of the Greater German Reich. This defeat brought the final reality of war to the German people. They recognized that there was the possibility that they could lose the war. The victory at Stalingrad gave a new energy to the Russian military. Their sacrifice was monumental, but their triumph demonstrated that the Germans were not the invincible supermen that they had originally feared. The German advance had been at its greatest extent at Stalingrad and as at Midway, the tide had turned in Eastern European campaign in Russia. Hitler's bold gamble of the Russian invasion would now prove to be disastrous and at the same time become a bottomless pit that would devour resources as never before. With the exception of the Kursk offensive of July 1943 and the December 1944 counteroffensive in the Ardennes, Germany would now be on the defensive for the remainder of the war. The borders of their empire would begin shrink while life on the German home front would become bitter with the mounting shortages in the basic necessities of life.

First Allied Victory – North Africa

By the summer of 1941 Germany had displaced the Italians as the Allied greatest threat in the Mediterranean area, particularly in North Africa. In May 1941, portions of the Italian army had capitulated with the surrender of 110,000 men to the British Western Desert Force. While this victory was significant a new German threat erupted to the west of the British in the form of General (later Field Marshall) Erwin Rommel and his understrength force of two divisions and a handful of associated units. They would become known as the "Afrika Korps". Rommel would demonstrate a daring and élan that had not been seen in many years. By use of improvisation and cunning he would develop a begrudging admiration from even Winston Churchill for all of his exploits. The Allies would give him the nickname of the "Desert Fox". The war in North Africa would be one of mechanized movement with tank warfare at the forefront of the combat.

Within a year Rommel's forces were within 100 miles of Cairo finally being halted at a town named El Alamein. The British had taken significant losses and all of their earlier gains against the Italians had been negated, even to the point of the capture of a senior British general and his staff. With the exception of the British garrison at Tobruk, the Germans seemed unstoppable. With these problems facing the Allied coalition the Western Task Force had earlier been redesigned as the 8th Army and was now placed under the command of the eccentric General (later Field Marshall) Bernard Montgomery. Content to bide his time Montgomery began to build up his forces to such a level they would have a nearly four to one edge over Rommel in men and equipment. The German's began to suffer from a tightening blockade that had significantly begun to reduce their supply levels and limit their ability to sustain any future operations. From this point onward, Germany would find themselves on the defensive in North Africa.

The final Battle of El Alamein began in late October 1942 and lasted into early November. The British began with a massive artillery bombardment of German positions followed by an onslaught of armored forces. Within days a breakthrough of the German lines was accomplished and shortly thereafter Montgomery was able to exploit the gap. With losses mounting on each side in equal proportions, the Germans found that they

could not sustain their operations and that their fuel supplies were nearly gone. The British on the other hand were able to keep going. Despite Hitler's order to the contrary, Rommel disengaged his forces and began a strategic retreat, closely pursued by the 8th Army. Within days, an Anglo-American task force under the command of General Dwight Eisenhower had landed in Morocco at Algiers, Oran, and Casablanca under the codename of "Operation Torch". The Germans were now faced with an adversary to their east and west that would now be pushing them out of North Africa.

The significance of the Battle of El Alamein as with Stalingrad and Midway was that it began a steady reduction of the expansive boundaries of the Axis Empire. The Allied morale grew while the Axis morale correspondingly declined. In Egypt the Suez Canal was saved from German capture and the British lifeline to India and the Asian sub-continent was intact. A secondary threat to the oil rich Arabian Peninsula was also averted. This fighting would rage on in North Africa until the spring of 1943, but the message became clear. Germany was overextended in both Russia and Africa and now the Allies would begin pushing back to the borders of Germany.

Mobilization of the American Arsenal of Democracy

America Responds

Prior to the onset of World War II, the United States had been selling various types of armaments and equipment to China, France and others as a course of business. Because of the American Neutrality Act these sales were suspended. Beginning in November 1939, the American arms embargo was lifted in order to allow the British and the French to purchase weapons and equipment from the United States. Sales to England and France were resumed with the stipulation that all materials would be paid for in advance and would be transported on the vessels of these respective nations. This became known as the "Cash and Carry" program. One particularly good aspect of America adopting this program is that it allowed American Industry to develop the necessary means from creating industrial plant and production design. This created the infrastructure that would be called on when America entered the war and would need vast amounts of resources.

In September 1940 the American navy turned over to the British and Canadians 50 World War I era destroyers in what became known as the Lend-Lease program. The British were in desperate need for ships that could be used to escort convoys carrying war materiel to England as well as provide patrol around the perimeters of the British Isles. These vessels were provided to England in return for the rights to establish American naval bases on British territory in places in the Atlantic Ocean such as the Bahamas, Bermuda and Antigua for 99 years. These bases were considered vital for the protection of the United States interests in the Atlantic. In subsequent Congressional legislation the Lend-Lease program was expanded to provide aid to nations who would provide facilities that could be used to protect American interests. This type aid was called necessary and it was provided to nations who it was thought that the security of the United States might depend on in the future. Thus prior to the actual entry of the United States as an active participant in World War II, the United States was already providing aid to its future allies.

Staffing the Armed Forces

With the war clouds drifting to the United States it became apparent to many that inevitably America would eventually become a part of this global conflict. One of the military proponents for preparedness was Army Chief of Staff, General George C. Marshall. Through his dogged determination he was able to convince both Roosevelt and Congress of the need to improve the readiness of the armed forces. This measure that was subsequently passed by one vote became known as the National Defense Act of 1940. As reported in a Life magazine poll in 1940, nearly 70% of Americans were in favor of the National Defense Act which they felt was necessary in order to prepare America should they be drawn into the war.

The National Defense Act was the measure that began the United States preparation for eventual entry into World War II. During the period of the interwar years the size of the American military establishment had shrunk to less than 200,000 in the Army and Navy which at the time ranked the US 17th in world behind Romania. Prior to 1940, the United States had functioned without a system of military conscription. This system was used in World War I, but had been abandoned in favor of a volunteer force by the 1920's. The Selective Training and Service Act of 1940 became the first one implemented while America was still at peace. **(See included Selective Service registration card)** Over the period of the next year and a half nearly 1.5 million men would become through the draft or volunteerism **(See included Notice of Selection / Order to Report for Induction Notices, Baton Rouge, Louisiana)** a part of the U. S. Army. More importantly, the base had been laid for the efficient mobilization of the mass of personnel that would be soon to come. By the end of the war the Army and Air Forces would increase to nearly 11 million, while the Navy would expand to four million and the Marines to 500,000. The Chief architects of this and who would run America's war effort were General George Marshall, Admiral Ernest King, and Admiral William Leahy.

Building the War Machine

The industrial development for America took on an entirely new approach to the idea of mass production of war materials. The Great Depression had caused a significant impact on the structure of American industry that caused many businesses and organizations to fail. With Roosevelt's election in 1932 the government began a massive campaign to put America to work, through innovative public works programs that began to modernize the country. Over time private industry began to also develop and toward the end of the 1930's America was again becoming a prosperous society.

The conversion of American industry to a war time footing rapidly took place. Some industries had already become suppliers of material to England and France before the American entry to the war. The huge new Ford plant at Willow Run was created in 1941 for the mass production of aircraft. When it finally hit its manufacturing peak it was turning out a B-24 Liberator at the rate of one per hour with the final production total eclipsing 8,000. The great industrialist Henry Kaiser became a master in the production of ships. What was so revolutionary in his techniques that sped up production and had

the majority of the ship components prefabricated off site, away from the dockyards. Everything would then be brought to the shipyards on railcar and assembled as pieces in a puzzle after the hull of the ship was laid. This reduced the time needed for the shipbuilding process since everything was now following a standardized design and construction process. These new vessels were christened as “Liberty Ships” for the expressed purpose of the movement of the supplies to the fighting fronts. Later in the war a new line of “Victory Ships” was introduced. The Victory ship was a faster version at 15 knots per hour than the Liberty ship which only traveled at 11 knots per hour. **See included photograph of the Victory Ships** The intent in the construction was to produce more merchant vessels than could be destroyed in transatlantic and transpacific crossings. This finally occurred towards the end of 1942 when more cargo ships were built than were actually sunk by German U-Boats. The first Liberty ship that was produced was the S.S. Patrick Henry which was completed in 245 days and delivered to the US government on the 30th of December 1941. The last Liberty ship produced was the S.S. Albert M. Boe on the 30th of October 1945. The record for the shortest Liberty ship construction time went to the S.S. Robert E. Peary which was completed in seven days and 12 hours, including the time necessary for the ship to be “fitted out”! By the end of the war this shipbuilding industry had managed to produce 2,710 Liberty ships in 18 different shipyards scattered across the country. Of these nearly 200 were lost to enemy action. There would be 540 Victory ships produced in the US with the loss of only three to hostile action. Because of industrial needs such as this the traditional workweek had expanded from 40 hours to 48 hours in order to get more productivity. Nearly every industry would change in some form from commercial production to military production. This of course would result in a looming shortage of goods and products that would be available to the American consumer.

As the men entered the military forces women began to replace them. By the end of the war there would be nearly six million women working in the war related industries. The most popular icon that would emerge at this time was “Rosie the Riveter” who even was made into a movie in 1944. **See included photograph of Women Shipyard Welders** Over 200,000 women also entered the military to free the men for the combat assignments. These women, in addition to the traditional medical roles, were now found in clerical, technical and mechanical occupations. New organizations and opportunities would emerge for women both in and out of the government and military service. Notable among this was the Women’s Airforce Service Pilots (WASP’s) who had as their mission to ferry newly completed aircraft of all types to locations throughout the United States and even overseas. Tragically over 40 of the 1,200 pilots were to die in various aircraft accidents over the period of their service.

After the approval of the National Defense Act of 1940, the United States Navy embarked on a crash program to educate shipbuilders on the need to accelerate the construction of warships. It was quite apparent that the US Navy would need to increase the number, size and scope of the warships necessary to win a two front war. As American mobilized the industrial base, great efforts were made to work with the major warship designers to create more effective ships and building techniques. By the end of the war warship construction time had been reduced in all major areas. A pre-war battleship had been built in 40 months, now it was finished in 32 months. Much needed

destroyers had been built in 14 months and were now completed in just five months. This effort would make the American navy at the end of World War II the largest and most powerful navy afloat in the world, even eclipsing that of the British Royal Navy.

Home Front America

The memory of many Americans in early 1940 stretched back to participation in World War I. To these people being involved in another war in Europe was not their concern. They had felt that the Second World War was a European issue and that the First World War had cost America too much. These people were known as the “Isolationists”. Their position was strengthened by a number of foreign groups that had been active in the United States for a number of years and were determined to keep the United States neutral. These groups were often called the “shirts of many colors” which referred to the visible uniforms that they wore. The McCormack-Dickstein Committee on un-American activities in 1935 identified them as shirts in the shades of Black, Brown, Khaki, White, Blue, and Silver which represented the Nazi, Communist, and Fascists organizations that had sprung up in the 1930’s in America. Each of these groups had strong identities among the various immigrant communities in the larger cities and would stage rallies to push for American neutrality with regards to the events of Europe.

One of the more public figures of the period was “Colonel” Charles Lindbergh who had gained fame in his 1927 solo flight across the Atlantic. In the 1930’s Lindbergh would travel to and reside in Europe. At the invitation of the German government he was on many occasions shown the latest Luftwaffe aircraft and even allowed to test fly the planes. Lindbergh would later trumpet to America that Germany was growing in airpower and it that was a threat to the United States aviation industries. In this regard he did provide valuable air intelligence to the War Department on German capabilities. By the summer of 1940 Charles Lindbergh was an active proponent of keeping America neutral and out of Europe. In his address at a Chicago “keep out of the war” rally Lindbergh would be criticized for being an advocate of Nazi appeasement. Lindbergh’s advocacy of isolationism would earn him the enmity of Roosevelt and many Americans.

Alien Internment in America

When America’s involvement in the war began in December 1941, a widespread panic erupted with concerns about spies, saboteurs and disloyal Americans throughout the United States. So great was this fear of internal collaboration with America’s enemies that steps were taken that in the mind of the government officials of the time were both necessary and practical. The greatest of these programs was the internment and relocation of the people who would come to be known as enemy aliens. The greatest threat identified was the potential Japanese invasion of the west coast. Thus began the relocation of approximately 120,000 Americans of Japanese descent to camps in the central heartland of America. Sadly, many of these people were native born Americans who felt themselves more American than Japanese. Some of these young men would later serve in the American military forces in various capacities, particularly the 442nd Regimental Combat Team that would serve in Italy and become one of the most decorated units of the war. Often overlooked was the fact that nearly 15,000 German and

Italians who were living in the United States were also arrested and interned for various periods of time. Many of these people had been living in the United States for decades and were suddenly the targets of relocation to camps in the American south and southwest. As with the Japanese, the majority of these two ethnic groups were located on the east coast where the threat was considered to exist from invasion. Also, like the Japanese internees who were either born in Japan or the United States, many of these people had been born in Germany and Italy or the United States.

Supporting the War Effort

As the American industrial production increased a new concept entered the daily life of American's. Before the war America had been seen as a land of plenty, but with industries now focusing of war related materials the goods and products that people had come to expect were longer available in significant quantities. This resulted in the idea of rationing. The products and goods that were to be rationed were those that would be needed by the Armed Forces and the Allies. This included various food products such as meat, sugar, chocolate, and coffee. As America had become more industrialized in the 1930's people began to purchase automobiles for a new found sense of freedom. Now with rationing it became very hard to own one. People had to have a reason to drive and were faced with the rationing of gasoline, rubber tires and spare parts. **(See included Gasoline Purchase Permit and Ration Coupons)** A special organization was created that was known as the Office of Price Administration (OPA) that would organize and run the rationing program. All Americans now had to have ration books, and even children as young as six months old would have their own books. There were a series of four War Ration Books that were created that would enable people to purchase the necessary consumable commodities. **(See included Ration Books)** Each ration book contained varying numbers of ration stamps that had to be turned over to the supplier when the products were purchased. Misuse or indulging in "black market" activities with rationed goods were considered to be criminal offenses. Sadly this problem would always exist.

In addition to rationing the idea of recycling became a way for the youth of American to participate in the war effort. Most communities and cities would organize recycling centers for paper products, metal cans, old tires and other products that could be converted into useful products. On a near daily basis children would scour neighborhoods for anything they could turn in, often taking things from their homes that were not always ready for the recycling bin. In the educational systems school would encourage students to be active in recycling drives and in the purchase of war bonds. The U.S. Government introduced the Defense Savings Bonds that could be purchased at a lower rate and held to maturity for the face value of the bond. By the end of the war a staggering \$135 Billion worth of bonds had been purchased by Americans. This money would be used to finance the war effort. In schools children were encouraged to buy savings stamps in small denominations each week that would be pasted into a book that could eventually redeemed for a savings bond. **(See included US Savings Bond Postal Savings Plan Booklet)** people all over America, even those who had looked on as isolationists were now fully behind the war effort. Many business organizations recognized the need to help people understand the rapid mobilization of American manpower in the military and new bases erupted all throughout the United States.

Companies like American Express would publish small leaflets that would list the various military units as well as a listing of the associated ranks for each of the military services. These brochures would often be provided to local stores who would sell the American Express money orders to the servicemen stationed at these installations. **(See included American Express Brochures on Military Units, Insignia's and Training Camps)**

With the fervent rise of American patriotism there were still some exceptions to participation in the war effort. These people became known as Conscientious Objectors (C.O.). Some were like the World War I Medal of Honor winner Sgt. Alvin York who held strong religious views. Of the 42,000 who were thus classified as C.O.'s, some 25,000 ended up serving in non-combatant roles as Medics, Chaplains Aides or other skills that would not require the bearing of arms. One of these would serve as a Navy Corpsman and win the Medal of Honor on Iwo Jima, while many others equally served heroically. Another group of C.O.'s served in alternative nonmilitary service in Civilian Public Service Camps. Finally there were approximately 6,000 who would refuse any type of service, mostly on religious grounds, and would be incarcerated in the Federal Prison system.

Keeping the Enemy off Guard

The Commando's

The Boer War of 1899-1902 gave rise to the term that Winston Churchill would coin to refer to various methods of unconventional warfare. Seeing how well the groups of Boers, known as "Commandos", could move quickly and strike without warning he determined that the Allies would have forces that could respond in a like fashion. These units began to develop quickly once the war began in Europe. Churchill would see them as a means to take the war back to the enemy, even when it was all they could do. These types of operations were seen as a chance to tell the public that the government was still attempting to do something. More often they were intended to be morale builders that were intended to keep the Germans and Italian off guard.

Getting the commando operations was difficult at first with several raids on the German occupied Channel Islands that produced nothing but a comedy of errors and lessons learned. By March 1941, the British launched a wildly successful raid on the German occupation forces at the Lofotens Islands in Norway. In a quick and well timed operation they were able to destroy nearly a million gallons of fuel oil, destroy fish oil factories that were used to create explosives and capture over 200 German prisoners all with out a loss. This action helped to buoy the British military planners with thoughts of a larger scale assault on German occupied Norway. In December 1941, the British raid on Vagsoy, Norway again produced similar results of destroyed industries and captured German soldiers, although this time the British paid with nearly 100 casualties.

With the Germans now recognizing the threat of possible British assaults on their portions of occupied Europe they began to strengthen their defenses and prepare for what they knew would be the eventual Allied assault on Fortress Europe. To evaluate the

lessons that would need to be learned in a cross channel invasion operations were organized to test German defenses, their responses, and gain experience. One of these operations would be considered a success while the other would be looked at as a very expensive failure in the terms of men and morale.

The German occupied port of Saint Nazaire on the west coast of France had been integrated into the resources of the German navy shortly after the invasion of France. It was here that the dreaded German U-boats would call home after their Atlantic war patrols. These facilities would later prove impervious to Allied air attacks. Additionally, the port facilities contained one of the worlds largest dry-docks that would be used to support the German navy. In March 1942, the British rammed an aging World War I Lend-Lease destroyer, HMS Campbeltown, into the locks of the dry-dock with a subsequent explosion that put the facility out of use for the duration of the war. In addition to the damage and destruction of a significant amount of the port facilities the commando's were not really able to inflict any damage to the U-Boat areas. At the end of the raid, the commando's had lost two-third of their force that had been either killed or captured while the majority of their vessels had been destroyed. The raid was considered a success as it served to keep the Germans on guard for further assaults.

Only a very short distance from England across the Channel sat the small French coastal town of Dieppe. At the start of 1942, the Russians were placing pressure on the British to demonstrate a "good faith" gesture to open a second front against the Germans. Senior British leadership to include Churchill were not sure this was the appropriate time to initiate an invasion on France. While America and Roosevelt were also encouraging an attack on France, they were more reserved in their plans. To counter these claims a reconnaissance in force was conducted against Dieppe in August 1942. The raid proved to be a disaster as seemed that the Germans were waiting for the invaders to storm ashore. Of the 6,000 men participating in the attack, over 4,000 were either killed or captured. Criticism was directed against Churchill and his planners for their poorly coordinated effort. These claims were countered with the comments that the raid had demonstrated the need for a great deal of planning, equipment and strategic goals before the actual invasion of the continent could take place. The disaster also did serve to provide some very valuable lessons learned that would be put to good use at Normandy in two years time.

Behind the Lines

With the invasion of Western Europe by Germany in 1940 and Russia in 1941, the general population of these countries were determined to resist this unjust tyranny of the occupation by Germany. This attitude was to spawn an entire network in all the occupied countries that would come to be known as the "Resistance" or the "Underground". Unfortunately, each nation would also have a small number of people who would be known as "collaborators" or those who would work with or help the Germans in order to gain various favors. In Russia the populace would even go so far as to actually organize an underground army that became known as the "Partisans" who would harass and destroy roads, bridges and installations. These operations against the German military

would cause so much disruption that they would find themselves devoting large numbers of resources to deal with the problem.

In Western Europe escape networks were organized that would spirit downed Allied aircrew through neutral Spain and back to England. These organizations would also focus on serving to gather intelligence for the Allies on the activities of the Germans. This would later be used to great effect when planning for the Allied landings at Normandy in June 1944. Since France was the closest occupied country to England it became the central focus of the allied attempts to disrupt the German forces. Two noteworthy organizations were formed at the onset of the war. In England it was the Special Operation Executive (S.O.E.) and in the United States it was the Organization of Special Services (O.S.S.). Each was charged with doing what ever was necessary to gather knowledge about the situations in the countries under Axis occupation. Both of these organizations would conduct a clandestine struggle against the Germans until the end of the war.

Prior to the D-Day landings at Normandy in June 1944, the French resistance would provide a large amount of intelligence regarding the German military installations and troop strengths that would prove invaluable. Once the Allied landings began the French underground disrupted the resupply and reinforcement of the German troops by destroying railway bridges and road and waterway networks. Prior to the invasion, the SOE and OSS had infiltrated agents into France with instructions to organize an organization that would be used to tie down German forces when the actual invasion came. Numerous stories exist of brave men and women who fought in this fashion, many at the expense of their lives.

Espionage and Switzerland

With the onset of World War II the Swiss government made it abundantly clear that Switzerland would not be involved in the war and would if necessary defend itself against Nazi aggression. Even though German did in fact prepare invasion plans for Switzerland in 1940, they were never carried out because of the actual costs in manpower and resources that would be required. Instead Switzerland became a haven for the espionage networks of all the belligerents of the war. Each nation would have either a diplomatic or commercial front that would mask their true intentions in the world of espionage. In addition to neutral Sweden, Switzerland would serve as a conduit for various Anti-Nazi groups to communicate with the Allies in their efforts to get support. More than one attempt by these groups on the life of Adolf Hitler came from explosives and materials that had been provided by the Allied intelligence services.

One of the most notable individuals to take up residence in Switzerland was Allen Dulles. Dulles would later become one of the key personalities in the development of the Central Intelligence Agency (CIA). Beginning in 1942, Dulles had the mission of creating and running an espionage network that would end up going for nearly three years. During World War I Dulles had also been working in the US Embassy in Bern. Facilitating Dulles' activities was a very large German expatriate community that had fled to Switzerland in the 1930's to avoid the Nazi's in Germany. His target was to gain as

much credible information about life in Germany and keep the American government informed how the war was going on the German home front. In his entire tenure in Bern, perhaps the most notable contact that Dulles was able to develop and maintain was an employee of the German Foreign Service in Berlin. This German who was given the code name "George Wood" would for the next two years provide Dulles with over 1,000 highly secret documents that would measurably assist the Allied cause. Only when George Wood escaped to Switzerland in early 1945 was his identity revealed as Fritz Kolbe, who had been a career diplomat prior to the advent of the Nazi controlled German state. Later in the war Dulles would receive assistance from several of the 1,200+ American Army Air Force personnel that had been interned in Switzerland when they were unable to return to their bases and found themselves in the refuge that was provided by a neutral country.

Prior to the start of World War II there had been "Anti-Nazi" resistance groups in Germany. Some had even begun to plot the assassination of Hitler before the war began. Once Germany was embroiled in the struggle of war, these groups seemed to proliferate and develop a variety of attempts to eliminate Hitler. The opposition to the Nazis and Hitler was widespread within the Army leadership, disbanded political parties, universities, religious groups and labor organizations. When comparing the total population of Germany during the war, these groups were representing less than one percent of the population at large. It seems that most well known of these groups was the "Kreisau Circle" who was organized from among a group of aristocrats who served both in the military and in the political government. The German response to these groups ranged from arrest and confinement in a concentration camp to immediate trial and execution. Finally, on the 20th of July 1944 a bomb was detonated in Hitler's East Prussia headquarters by Colonel Claus von Stauffenberg that nearly succeeded in killing Hitler. The results were to only make Hitler more paranoid and unstable in his ability to lead the German military. For the conspirators and those even remotely connected was sheer terror. Over 5,000 people were killed and many relatives of the plotters would be imprisoned until the end of the war. It was in this attempt on Hitler's life that Field Marshall Erwin Rommel was implicated. By October 1944 Rommel, who was one of the most popular war figures in Germany, had taken his own life rather than be tried in a People's court and then executed.

Name: _____ Date: _____

**Multiple-Choice Quiz: Lesson Three – The United States Enters World War II
(circle the correct answer)**

1. What was the conference that was held in late December 1941 in which the United States and Great Britain established the strategy for their involvement as Allies in World War II?
 - a. Quebec Conference
 - b. Montreal Conference
 - c. Arcadia Conference
 - d. London Conference

2. Which two European countries were considered to be neutral during the course of World War II?
 - a. France & Switzerland
 - b. France & Spain
 - c. Sweden & France
 - d. Spain & Switzerland

3. What was the term that was used to describe the American success in breaking the Japanese diplomatic code?
 - a. Magic
 - b. Wizard
 - c. Ultra
 - d. Focus

4. Who was the Japanese admiral who was known as the “Architect of the Pearl Harbor Attack” of December 7, 1941?
 - a. Yamaguchi
 - b. Yamamoto
 - c. Hirohito
 - d. Tojo

5. Where did the brutal “Bataan Death March” take place?
 - a. The Philippines
 - b. Burma
 - c. Thailand
 - d. China

6. What two American islands, part of the Alaskan Territory, did the Japanese attack, capture, and hold in 1942?
 - a. Honshu & Kobe
 - b. Wake & Hawaii
 - c. Attu & Kiska
 - d. Iwo Jima & Okinawa

7. Who was the leader of the American raid on Japan in the spring of 1942?
 - a. Doolittle
 - b. Marshall
 - c. MacArthur
 - d. Nimitz

8. Operation "Uranus" refers to the Russian army pincer movement directed by Marshall Zhukov that ended up surrounding the German 6th Army at what battle?
 - a. Moscow
 - b. Kursk
 - c. Leningrad
 - d. Stalingrad

9. Who was the British general and what was the name of the British army organization that finally halted the Germans at the Battle of El Alamein and began to force them out of North Africa?
 - a. Montgomery - 8th Army
 - b. Patton - 7th Army
 - c. Paulus - 6th Army
 - d. Clarke - 5th Army

10. What was the position and feeling of the famous aviator Charles Lindbergh towards Germany prior to the start of and the first year of World War II?
 - a. He supported American rearmament and preparedness
 - b. He was in favor of American intervention
 - c. He was an isolationist
 - d. He was in favor of providing assistance to the German government

Multiple-Choice Quiz: Lesson Three – The United States Enters World War II**Correct Answers**

1. c. Arcadia Conference
2. d. Spain & Switzerland
3. a. Magic
4. b. Yamamoto
5. a. The Philippines
6. c. Attu & Kiska
7. a. Doolittle
8. d. Stalingrad
9. a. Montgomery & 8th Army
10. c. He was an isolationist

LESSON PLAN - DAY FOUR

Subject:

Phase Three (1943 – 1944):

The period of history in Europe and the Pacific as the conflict reached full intensity after both Germany and Japan began to suffer catastrophic setbacks.

Educational Goals:

The Student will learn facts and comprehend the events pertaining to:

Pacific Theater:

- The First American Land Offensive of the War - Guadalcanal
- The Army Campaigns marching towards the Asian continent.
- The Marine Island Hopping Campaigns in the Gilbert, Marianas and Palau island chains.

Mediterranean Theater-Europe:

- The Allied Landings on Sicily and Mainland Italy
- The Stalemate in Southern Italy and the Battle of Monte Cassino
- The Significance of the Allied Landings at Anzio
- Breaking the Gustav Line and the capture of Rome

The War in the Atlantic:

- The Allied Supply Lifeline of Convoys
- Allied – German Surface Warfare
- The Threat and Terror of the German Submarines (U-Boats)

Duration of instruction time required:

- 45 – 50 minutes

Required materials:

- World or American History Textbook
- Map of Europe
- Map of Asia

Supplemental materials (included):

- **Letter from the mother of the five Sullivan brothers to the U.S. Navy Department**

For many people the desire to serve the country in the time of war is paramount. Those who were of age would often enlist in the service of choice as soon as they became eligible. In some cases the family members would follow their own interests (separate services) or in other cases would ask to serve together in the same organization, unit or ship. The most famous instance is that of the five Sullivan brothers who served together on the U.S.S. Juneau and were all killed on November 14, 1942 naval battle off the coast of Guadalcanal. After this incident, the U.S. military did not let family members serve in the same units or ships.

Question for the Students: Do you think it would be important to serve with your siblings during the war? How do you think that your parents would feel? What do you think was the reaction for Mrs. Sullivan when she learned that her five sons had died in combat? Answer: Many may feel that it is important to be with family during life and death situations, while others may feel that they would want to spare their parents any further grief if one of them was to die in battle. Remind them of the plot in “Saving Private Ryan”.

- **Two Letters from the American Public on the General Patton “Slapping Incident”**

The General Patton “Slapping Incident” occurred at the end of the Sicilian Campaign in August 1943. It was handled by General Eisenhower who relieved General Patton as Commander of the 7th Army and subsequently sent him to England in late 1943. General Patton was probably by this time the most well known of the American “combat” generals. When the incident became public in November 1943 there was a strong reaction among the American general public that demonstrated support for and against Patton. When the German high command learned of the outcry against Patton, they were quite surprised. One German general even remarked that if a German private had done such a thing he would have been shot without any further question. In the end, of the thousands of letters that ended up on General Marshall’s desk, nearly 77% were in support of General Patton while only 23% were negative, against General Patton.

Questions for the Students: Do you agree with the actions taken against General Patton? What do you think about the overwhelming support for General Patton from the American public? Answer: Responses may vary. Patton was one of the most successful and well known American generals at the time. He was known as a general who got results and won battles. The American public was generally supportive of Patton because this was a time when public morale needed victories because the outcome of the war was still not yet clear. Some of the letter writers as well as one of the soldiers he had struck felt that Patton himself may have been suffering from “Battle Fatigue/Combat Stress”.

- **Stars & Stripes Newspaper, European Theater, December 24, 1943**

Most news that came to the servicemen and women overseas was either by the mail or by the newspapers that the military had established in each particular theater of the war. In the majority of cases the soldiers would turn to the Stars and Stripes that was published locally to learn about events in the world. These papers and other magazines like “Yank” became some of the most well read publications in existence at that time.

Question for the Students: How important do you think that newspapers were for information in an age where there was no television or Internet? Do you think that the servicemen and women were more literate and read more than their own present generation? Answer: The students should be able to recognize that their generation is much more distracted with popular media activities than the World War II youth. Additionally, they should be able to add personal insight as to whether or not they are engaged enough in their own personal reading habit. Have they picked up a paper or magazine recently?

- **Stars and Stripes Newspaper, Mediterranean Theater, November 11, 1944**

As the Allies advanced further towards Germany, the Stars and Stripes developed separate issues for all the theaters of the war. The news that was presented was directed more specifically to their own area of the fighting as well as general information and news about what was going on in other theaters. This issue discusses the advance of the 5th Army in their drive to Bologna and the Po River Plain. Attention is also directed to the headlines that mentions the advent of the German V-2, the world’s first ballistic missile.

Question for the Students: If you were a soldier fighting in Italy, would you be concerned with news pertaining only to your own theater or rather all theaters? Answer: Students will probably indicate interest in knowing what was going on in all areas, the sooner the war would be over, the sooner they could go home.

- **Japanese Invasion Money**

The Japanese prepared the Invasion Money for each area and country that they conquered with the intent of attempting to control the economy. In each area the local citizens were ordered to exchange the quantities of their own currency for the new Japanese currency. Many people were reluctant to do so because they did not trust the motives of the Japanese. These people then hid or hoarded their personal savings, often under the penalty of death. As the war dragged on, the Japanese began to issue more and more currency without backing it up with any kind of value standard. Late in the war the Japanese were unable to determine how much currency they had actually printed. This would lead to the eventual collapse of various economies at the end of the war.

Question for the Students: How valuable is paper money to you? Do you think that bartering began to take place in order to provide some degree of value to economic controls? Do think that this would lead to the creation of an “underground or black market” economy? Answer: Responses may vary among students depending on their own financial knowledge. Anytime a forced conversion to a new currency occurs under wartime or occupation circumstances, the population is generally reluctant to participate. This will usually lead to an

underground although inflated economy that is based on value that the citizens recognize due to the shortage of various commodities.

Allied Military Currency

As the American and British forces invaded and subsequently restored a legitimate government to each nation, there was concern that each country's economy would become stable as soon as possible. Allied leaders felt that a resurgent economy would help to put a country back on its feet in the shortest amount of time. In order to control inflation and set values specific currencies were created for each country that was either liberated or occupied. This military currency would provide stability and hopefully halt any inflation that might develop. This type of currency also assisted each country until their own currency could be created and issued to its general populace.

Questions for the Students: What do you think was the reaction of the U.S. soldiers when they were provided this currency in lieu of American dollars? Do you think that US military personnel would use this currency as a way to plunder goods and services from local inhabitants? **Answer:** Many soldiers had never seen any type of currency other than the US dollar and were very skeptical of the bills. Some were known to have treated it as “funny money” that did not have any real value. Later the soldiers would end up exchanging or trading it for a variety of goods and services as they advanced to and through Germany. Local citizens were anxious to obtain this currency because it represented something that had a real value attached since they were uncertain if the German or their own currency would retain any type of value once the Allies had occupied their area.

- **Life Magazine, 15 January 1940**

With the onset of World War II there was not a great deal that England could do in order to retaliate against Germany. England was an island nation that depended on imported raw materials, goods, food products and a variety of other items. Germany was also dependent on imported items, but not the extent of England. Since England was recognized as having the single most powerful navy in the world, England could begin an economic blockade of Germany as had been done in World War I.

Question for the Students: If you were a neutral ship captain and your ship was halted by the British Royal Navy and some of your cargo was confiscated as being materiel of war how would you have felt? **Answer:** The greatest impact for the captain would be the loss of the cargo and whatever value it may have held. If the ship was neutral, did the captain know that if he was detected dealing with Germany that his cargo would be confiscated?

- **War Diary – USS Guadalcanal – 4 June 1944**

As the war progressed various ideas were explored in order to develop strategies that could be employed against the German submarines. In this process aircraft began to be used from either shore based or sea based launching platforms. In this fashion naval task forces were created around what became known as “Escort Carriers” or “Baby Flattops”. The USS Guadalcanal was part of the increased effort to rid the Atlantic of the U-Boat menace. Up to this time it was nearly impossible to engage a U-Boat and capture it intact. Through a lucky set of circumstances the Guadalcanal was able to capture the U-505. Further, an in-

depth search of the vessel was able to turn-up sensitive classified materials that assisted in disrupting German operations.

Question for the students: If you were the German Commander of a U-Boat what would be your first thought if your submarine was captured? Answer: Various responses. Students should reflect on one of two comments. Either ensuring the safety of your crew or destroying any classified secret materials or scuttling the U-Boat so nothing will fall into the hands of the Allies.

- **Post War Interrogation Record of Admiral Karl Donitz**

When Hitler had committed suicide, Grand Admiral Donitz was named as the head of the Third Reich government. Throughout the course of the war Admiral Donitz had access to Hitler and speak to him about the U-Boat operations. Hitler initially did not feel that the U-Boats were of any significance. However, as the U-Boats demonstrated their success against Allied convoys he became more supportive. This included the use of the Wolfpack formation. In 1943, Donitz indicated to Hitler that the introduction of Radar/Sonar by the Allies was impacting on the operations of the submarines.

Question for the Students: What does the term “Wolfpack” mean when employed by the German U-Boats? Answer: The term “Wolfpack” refers to having more than one submarine deployed in a picket line over an extended body of water. When an Allied convoy is spotted the information is communicated to the other U-Boats who then converge on the convoy in order to sink as many cargo ships as possible.

Instruction evaluation (included):

- Ten question multiple choice quiz
- Answer sheet

Topics to be covered:

1. Asian Campaign
 - Island Hopping
 - Disrupting Japanese Strategy
 - Nature of the Warfare in the Pacific
 - Japanese
 - Americans
 - Guadalcanal
 - Savo Island/”The Slot”
 - Gathering Critical Staging Areas
 - New Guinea and the Northern Solomons
 - Naval and Aerial Forces Strike Hard
 - Tarawa
 - Truk
 - Saipan
 - Peleliu

2. European Campaign 1943 – 1944
 - North Africa
 - Tunisia
 - Entering the “Soft Underbelly” of Europe
 - Sicily
 - Italian Peninsula
 - Monte Cassino
 - Capture of Rome
 - German Response to Italian Partisans – Atrocity
 - Shift Towards Northern Europe
3. Axis and Allied Economic Controls
 - Japanese Invasion Money
 - Allied Military Currency
4. War in the Atlantic
 - Convoy Operations
 - Sonar
 - PQ-17
 - German Surface Raiders
 - Graf Spee
 - Bismarck
 - U-Boat Menace
 - U-505

Methodology:

Part I.

Option One:

Instructor can provide copies of portions of the text to each student as well as copies of the related materials listed above and lead the students in a discussion of the events as they occurred chronologically and utilize the included documentary materials. Particular attention should be directed to what now seemed like a string of victories as the Allies began to advance slowly on all the fronts of the conflict.

Question for the students: Does it seem like the United States was the deciding factor in the change of fortunes for both the British and Russians in their battle against the Axis? Once the Allies began to advance in Southern Europe and the Pacific does it seem like they will be victorious in the end?

Option Two:

The instructor can select key points and one or two battles and discuss the idea of combat in World War II. This can be contrasted to the present situation throughout the world. Has ground or air combat changed since 1945?

Part II.

This presents an excellent opportunity to gauge the spirit and feelings of the general public as they regarded the war. Based on the letter from Mrs. Sullivan, the two Patton letters, and the Stars and Stripes ask to students to write an essay as homework answering the following questions.

- a. Did the general public seem to feel that the United States was fighting in a “just war”?
- b. What is the overall tone of the letters?
- c. With regards to the Stars and Stripes, how would you characterize the nature and slant of the articles that are presented?

Asian Campaign 1943 – 1944

Island Hopping

Sitting in the South Pacific nearly a thousand miles northeast of Australia lays the island of Guadalcanal. It was here in August 1942 that the United States launched what would be called the “first offensive” of World War II against the Axis powers. It would be a Navy and Marine operation at the start when the first landings were made. By the time that this campaign would end in February 1943, both the Marines and the Army would be fighting side by side as they pushed the Japanese forces from the island.

Beginning in the early stages of the American involvement of World War II, the Allied war strategy had been established for the European Theater to receive priority for personnel and equipment while the Pacific theater would hold their own with a reduced priority for these same resources. The Allied Pacific campaign would advance on Japan with the final thrust coming after the Axis powers had been defeated in Europe. Within the Pacific Theater a term was coined that referred to attacking selected islands and areas while bypassing and isolating those others that were not deemed to be of any tactical or strategic value. This was called “Island Hopping”. Guadalcanal was the first island that was to be the target of this new offensive action that would start pushing the Japanese back from their Pacific Empire.

Australian “coastwatchers”, that is those civilians, military and other personnel, who had become fixtures on the various islands, reported the movements of Japanese ships and landings to the Allied forces. These coastwatchers then became the eyes and ears of the Allies in their attempts to follow the advances of the Japanese. Nearly all were fluent and familiar with the local customs and dialects of the indigenous peoples and were able to enlist their aid in the war against the Japanese. On more than one occasion, the Japanese would try to ferret out the radio networks of the coastwatchers as they reported to the various headquarters with their vital intelligence.

Disrupting Japanese Strategy

Originally, the Japanese plans for the Pacific called for the capture and occupation of enough areas that could be used for staging future incursions into what would be Allied held territories. The Japanese strategic planning was intended to isolate and destroy the American fleet, establish a defensive perimeter around the expanded imperial conquests of the Pacific and secure enough installations that could be used to stage operations against the extended and vulnerable Allied supply lines. This concept would be based on the fact that the Japanese would resupply their own forces through internal lines of communication that would emanate from the home islands of the Japanese empire. For the Japanese, success would come from maintaining strong supply routes for their far flung outposts.

The intent of the Allied war planners for the Pacific was to maintain a foothold in several key areas that would allow for renewed operations as conditions and circumstances would allow. Recognizing that the Japanese appeared to be at the extent of their imperial

conquests it was necessary to ensure that the “Southeast Asia Peninsula” would remain secure and protect Australia. Once that had been accomplished it would provide a starting point to advance to the west against Japan. The initial Allied advances were intended to provide a staging area that would allow for the start of a war of attrition against the Japanese. Additionally, it became clearly evident that the extended length of the Japanese supply chain was extremely vulnerable. In the Southwest Pacific Theater, the key Japanese supply base would be at Rabaul on the northern end of the island of New Britain in the Bismarck Archipelago. Rabaul would finally be rendered ineffective as a forward logistics base by the Americans in March 1944 after relentless aerial attacks by American army, naval, and marine forces. After this the Japanese would concentrate their supply operations to the north on the island of Truk. In the Central Pacific Theater the key Japanese supply base was at Truk which would eventually be neutralized by the Americans in the summer of 1944. Truk was geographically located centrally within the Japanese held island chains of the Caroline, Marshall and Gilbert islands. Once Truk was eliminated, any Japanese base in Micronesia would not be able to be supplied. In this fashion the Japanese held islands that had been bypassed by the American forces would “wither on the vine” from a lack of supplies.

Nature of the Warfare

For centuries the Japanese military had always followed what was known as “Bushido” or the way of the warrior. By the 19th century the warrior class or “Samurai” made up nearly 10% of the entire Japanese population. It was felt that the greatest thing a Samurai could do was to die for the emperor. In 1941 this became known as the “Soldiers Code” that was adopted for the Japanese military. It stated that it was ignominious to surrender or be captured in battle. This would result in dishonor and disgrace to the soldier and his family. This attitude would serve to fuel a fanatic and fatalistic attitude among the Japanese military (particularly among the officer corps) that was totally inconsistent and incomprehensible to the Allied forces that first engaged the enemy in 1942.

Again and again throughout the war in the Pacific the Japanese “Banzai” charges, refusal to surrender against overwhelming odds, emerging from hidden cave bunkers, kamikaze attacks, and other tactics would force the Allies to harden themselves with the notion that they had to fight without mercy or compassion. This was a new concept that the Americans in particular would quickly learn in order to survive the ordeal of Pacific combat.

In evaluating how the casualties were sustained among the Americans forces in both Europe and the Pacific Theaters there is a strong contrast which points out the difference between the natures of the combat in each theater. In Europe the majority of deaths among the American ground forces that came from enemy artillery shelling were identified at 58%. Deaths that were resultant of small arms in close combat were 19%. In the Pacific Japanese small arms claimed 32% of American lives while artillery claimed only 17%. This indicates the close nature of the war in the Pacific that brought the opposing sides into close proximity with each others and the invariable hand-to-hand duels that resulted. In the Pacific the warfare would be with very basic weapons that would be reminiscent of combat in earlier centuries. The final cause of injury and

sometimes death was very unexpected in the Pacific. That was the specter of exotic and tropical diseases to include Malaria as well as the unusual wildlife that would attack both the Japanese and the Allies. While each side could prepare for the other in combat, it became much more difficult to prepare for dire medical situations. Early in the Pacific campaign Allied medical supplies were quickly exhausted and became more valuable than gold. As time went on, the Allied forces learned what to expect and how to deal with this particular threat. But, nonetheless, casualties would continue to occur from this source until the end of the war and even in the aftermath.

The result of the Japanese attitude of warfare would mark the Pacific campaign, when compared to the European campaign, as one that was a brutal fight to the death with no quarter being given by either side of the combatants. Allied prisoners of war in the Pacific were subsequently regarded as being dishonorable for allowing themselves to be captured and were therefore to be treated as slaves. The Allied prisoners of war being held by the Japanese experienced higher mortality rates than their counterparts being held by the Germans. Very few Japanese were taken prisoner throughout the war based on this ideal. Usually those who entered Allied custody had been wounded or disabled in such a manner that they could not continue the struggle. Those who would surrender on their own accord were at first very minimal. Although toward the end of the Pacific campaign in 1945 larger numbers of Japanese were actually surrendering as compared to their counterparts of 1942.

Guadalcanal

Forming the island chain called the “Solomons”; Guadalcanal marked the actual furthest island advance of the Japanese in World War II. Strategically, the Japanese had hoped to extend their reach even further so they would seriously impact the supply lines that stretched from the United States to Australia. The 19,000 men of the 1st Marine Division would land at Guadalcanal on the 7th of August 1942 and remain on the island until being relieved by one marine and two army divisions on the 9th of December 1942. The 2,700 killed and wounded casualties that the 1st Marine division suffered served to highlight what would be the brutal fact of the island fighting in the Pacific. The more men involved meant the greater the carnage. Of the 60,000 American army and marine ground forces involved in the campaign, 5,800 would be hit. The Japanese would send in nearly 38,000 men to the “Canal” and suffer an appalling loss of 25,000 who would be killed or wounded while less than 1,000 would be taken prisoner. The other remaining Japanese managed to be evacuated in order to fight again. Of these prisoners only a few would surrender on their own. The “Canal” was finally declared secure on 9 February after a bitter six months. The Allied victory in this campaign had taken the offensive initiative from the Japanese forces.

The major focal point of the battle on Guadalcanal was the airfield that was subsequently named Henderson Field in honor of a Marine aviator who died at the Battle of Midway. Time and again the Japanese attacked to recapture this key feature and again and again they were repulsed. Initially, the Japanese underestimated the number of American forces on the island and sent in units that were outnumbered and doomed to failure. Only after repeated destruction of Japanese forces were larger units sent in to meet the same

fate. At one point in the bloody combat, it appeared that the Allied naval forces would have to withdraw because of a threat of Japanese Naval presence. This left the marine defenders without a source of supply for their ammunition and food. Disease further wracked both sides with malaria and dysentery.

The Slot and Savo Island

Resupply by sea was clearly the decisive factor in this campaign. An area that ran between the islands of Bougainville and Guadalcanal would be christened as “The Slot”. It was in this area that the naval forces of each side would attempt to move in order to resupply their forces in the Solomon island chain. Off the northern coast of Guadalcanal was Savo Island. The area that was located between Guadalcanal and Savo Island would later be christened as “Ironbottom Sound” by the Americans because of the large number of ships that would be sunk in that area. The Japanese resupply efforts were given the nickname of the “The Tokyo Express” because they would make strong attempts to resupply their forces on Guadalcanal. These attempts would eventually end in failure. Throughout this naval campaign both sides did significant damage each others ships. The night of 12 November saw a David vs. Goliath struggle between a force of Japanese battleships and cruisers and an American force of cruisers and destroyers. The Japanese forces were intending to resupply their forces at Guadalcanal but were intercepted by the outnumbered Americans. The resulting fight saw the United States suffer significant damage and loss to 12 of the 13 ships (**See included letter from Mrs. Sullivan about her five sons on the USS Juneau**) while the Japanese loss was half of that. Over the next several days the Japanese continued to attempt to resupply Guadalcanal with men, but seven of their nine transport ships were sunk with a loss of nearly 6,000 men. With this action the Japanese gave up their attempt to hold out on Guadalcanal. The fighting would then continue for another two months before the remaining men were withdrawn and the first allied land victory in the Pacific obtained.

The experience gained and the lessons learned from the struggles on Guadalcanal and at Papua in the southeast corner of the island of New Guinea came at a high price. The Americans were not experienced in this type of jungle warfare and amphibious landings. Additionally, the American Navy had recognized that it would be necessary to develop a system that would ensure a continuous ability to keep ground forces supplied once they had been landed. The nature of the fighting revealed that superior American numbers and equipment would not necessarily guarantee victory. The Japanese had learned the value of weapons such as small caliber artillery and light tanks that were more adaptable to the jungle than the heavier and larger American equipment. Over time the Americans would learn to adapt to the challenges of warfare in which those who could move quickly and silently would often be the victor. Eventually the Americans would gain the upper hand once they had gained experience of jungle warfare. But that experience was initially paid for at a high price in the lives of men who were killed and wounded. Another factor that the Americans had not been prepared for was the effect that the tropical climate would have on the fighting ability of the soldier. Medical supplies were quickly exhausted and the effect of some diseases on the individual American fighting man was not always expected. Once these issues were addressed by the leadership the American forces would prove to be an even match for the Japanese defender. It should

be noted that modification of the Joint Chief's of Staff Pacific strategy would continually occur based on the results of this and future campaigns. General MacArthur would still continue pushing toward the Philippines from New Guinea while Admiral Nimitz would move his naval forces in the open ocean and advance through the Central Pacific toward the eastern coast of Japan.

Gathering Critical Staging Areas

With the victory at Guadalcanal and the successful conclusion of operations in the Papua campaign America began the westward march towards Japan. Because of the success of these two operations in pushing the Japanese back, the goal of making Australia secure from any possible future Japanese actions was nearly complete. This then set the stage for the simultaneous campaigns in New Guinea and the Northern Solomons. These campaigns would be directed against the neutralization of the fortified Japanese installations at Rabaul on the northern coast of the island of New Britain. Here the Japanese had a strong naval anchorage, a very large contingent of troops and supply facilities and five functioning airfields.

Rabaul served as the principal military supply base for the Japanese until finally in 1944 when it was rendered ineffective. Rabaul as a Japanese garrison would hold out to the end of the war. At that time it would surrender nearly 100,000 personnel, having never been attacked with ground forces as it had been bypassed. Any invasion attempt at Rabaul would have most likely cost the Allies a large number of casualties. With Rabaul neutralized, it ended any threat for possible Japanese actions directed against Australia. The fighting in this sector of the Pacific between early 1943 and early 1944 would also see the death of Admiral Yamamoto who was the architect of Pearl Harbor surprise attack. He was shot down over Bougainville in the Solomon's after the Allies had learned of his movement through intercepted Japanese naval messages that had been decoded. Additionally, the commander of one of the American torpedo boats, PT-109, that was engaged in operations in the Solomons in 1943 would be nearly killed when a Japanese destroyer sliced his boat in half and he was marooned for six days. That man was to become the president of the United States in 1961, John F. Kennedy. By late 1944 and the conclusion of the campaign in the Solomon islands and on New Guinea, the Allies under MacArthur in the Southwest Pacific were now poised to begin their concerted efforts to assault the Philippines.

New Guinea and the Northern Solomons

Once MacArthur had secured Papua from the threat of Japanese expansion he began to plan for the conquest of the remainder of the island of New Guinea. This operation was to be coordinated with Admiral "Bull" Halsey who was the commander of the American forces in the South Pacific. Halsey was under the jurisdictional command of Admiral Nimitz in the Central Pacific. Because this operation also concerned the elimination of the Japanese base at Rabaul, MacArthur and Halsey met to discuss a movement up the Solomon island chain from Guadalcanal. This would then eventually culminate in a two pronged attack on Rabaul from both New Guinea and the Northern Solomons that would be codenamed "Cartwheel".

Over the course of the next year MacArthur's forces moved across the eastern and northern coasts of New Guinea in a series of amphibious operations that would bypass strong Japanese pockets of resistance. With support from the Army Air Forces of General George Kenney, MacArthur would be able to land ground combat forces and equipment where they were not expected by the Japanese. In a series of attacks from forward operating bases, General Kenney's aircraft eliminated the threat posed by the Japanese army and naval air forces. The introduction of the improved range P-38 Lightning fighter escort, the B-17 Flying Fortress and B-24 Liberator bombers were now able to knock out huge concentrations of Japanese aircraft before they were able to take to the air. This led to the American air superiority which gave a decided edge to the Americans on New Guinea. With a stroke of luck and some hard fighting the Americans were later able to capture the Admiralty Islands to the west of Rabaul, thus effectively cutting off western approaches to this fortified Japanese garrison.

Moving up from Guadalcanal the American forces being landed by Admiral Halsey's fleet encountered severe Japanese resistance at the island of New Georgia and subsequently Bougainville. On each of these islands as the Americans advanced, the soldiers and Marines gained a better understanding of the nature of combat in the Pacific. This type of fighting saw the Americans land at a few isolated places and thus drive wedges into the Japanese forces and cut them off from their own supply system. In this fashion the Americans were able to keep the Japanese off balance and vulnerable. The Japanese proved to be a determined foe and on New Georgia they were relentless in their defense. Rather than stage huge suicidal attacks that would be seen towards the end of World War II in the Pacific, the Japanese when nearing defeat would disengage the American forces and evacuate up the island chain to the next fortified Japanese position. In this fashion, the Americans moving up the Solomon chain would continually face dug in and well prepared Japanese forces. The final stop of this particular campaign would be the struggle for the island of Bougainville. Here the Japanese forces would not retreat and the fighting would become very demanding when the Americans realized that they were facing nearly 40,000 Japanese defenders.

Bougainville was the island that marked the northern boundary of the Solomon island chain. Landing in November 1943, the American Army and Marine units quickly established a beachhead. Through the use of American deception plans, the Japanese held off attacking this force, thinking that the main invasion would come elsewhere. Finally in March 1944, a Japanese force of nearly 20,000 moved across the island and prepared to attack the Americans. Unlike previous American operations, when it was the Americans attacking the Japanese fortified positions, the roles were reversed. From November 1943 through March 1944 the Americans had established a strong defense posture with gun emplacements and fixed field fortifications. When the Japanese began their assaults in March 1944 they found themselves suffering appalling casualties with little to show for their efforts. By the end of March the Japanese were in retreat and ceased being a threat to the American presence. By December 1944, the Americans had turned the island over to the Australians who would continue to fight the Japanese on the island until the end of the war. With the reduction of the threat of Bougainville, the

isolation of Rabaul became complete. The goal for the victorious Allies was soon to be advancement into the Philippines.

Navy and Aerial Forces Strike Hard

The year of 1942 saw the Allied naval forces blunt and end the expansion of the Japanese imperial ambitions. This was accomplished with strategic planning and sound military tactical operations in the Battles of Coral Sea and Midway. Allied attention now turned to the start of the island hopping campaign in the Central Pacific Theater. The overall strategic goal of the United States and their allies was to move closer to Japan by seizing areas that would serve two strategic military functions. The first would include capturing areas that would allow for the construction of air fields that could be used to stage aerial operations against targets deeper in the Japanese empire and eventually targets in the home islands. The second key goal was to obtain areas that would allow for safe anchorages for the Allied fleets that would allow for repairs, resupply and refueling. In deciding which areas to attack utilization of these facilities would be key factors in determining the next invasion site in the westward advance.

The island campaigns of the South Pacific, by contrast to the Southwest Pacific campaign would be short, but very costly. These island atolls were normally without vegetation and cover for concealment by an invading force. The Japanese would have the opportunity to fortify their defensive positions while the invading Marines and supporting Army troops would have little or no cover. Each island had it's own distinctive feature such as being entirely of coral with no real protection or one that may have been volcanic and covered with ash that defeated any attempt for a marine to "dig-in". Fighting on these islands would leave the military forces little room for maneuver and each foot would be contested by the defender. On some of the larger islands, particularly those with hills or mountains, the defenders would be able to dig underground caves from which to fight. While on others, the defenders would construct defensive positions that would literally be on the beach. It was in this scenario that the American forces advanced.

Tarawa

The original objective of Admiral Nimitz in the summer of 1943 had been to capture the fortified Japanese naval base at Kwajalein. This atoll contained a very large naval and air base that had been established on the world's largest atoll. Tarawa was key to the American advance across the Pacific because of the airfield on it that could be used by the Japanese to interdict and disrupt American supply lines in the advance deeper into the Japanese Empire. Tarawa must be taken. The small island of Tarawa lies in the Gilbert Island chain less than 100 miles from the Equator. The island is in the shape of a triangle and is approximately three miles long and one mile wide. When the battle for Tarawa was over it would be forever remembered as "Bloody Tarawa".

On the morning of 20 November 1943, the invasion of this small island by the Americans began. The Japanese defense comprised of soldiers as well as impressed Korean laborers who for the past 15 months fortified the island in minute detail. These defenders were

estimated at approximately 4,800 and they would fight literally to the last man. When the battle was ended on the 23d of November 1943, there was only one Japanese officer and 16 soldiers left who became captives of the Marines along with approximately 100 of the Korean laborers. The Marines landing were the Guadalcanal veterans from the 2nd Marine Division. There were not new to island fighting, but they were not prepared for the carnage that would engulf them in this short four day period. At first they were truly fighting to gain a small toehold on the island. One of the Marine battalion commanders would radio back to the command flagship about the success of the landing when he said "unable to land, issue in doubt". But with dogged determination, the Marines held on and began to be reinforced. Slowly and through incredible bravery and self sacrifice they pushed inward and conquered the island. At the end of the day on the 23rd the Marines had lost a total of 1,100 officers and men killed and another 2,300 who had been wounded from a total of 12,000 who had been involved in the fight. It was described as the entire Pacific campaign's area of the "most concentrated violence" in so short a period of time. Americans at home were not use to this type of carnage in so short a period of time. But it would serve as a harbinger of the future island struggles yet to come. Tarawa in the end served as a bitter laboratory for the experiment of Marine tactical doctrine. Needs for improved landing craft were noted as well as the usefulness of naval gunfire and air attacks on an entrenched enemy. Most notably, the individual Marine realized what would be required of him in future landings.

In preparation for the next phase of operations it was realized that something would have to be done to counteract the threat that was posed by the huge Japanese Naval base at Truk. This island was often characterized as the Gibraltar of the Pacific because of the perceived defensive strength of its geography. The large natural harbor at Truk and the many Japanese airstrips had the potential to disrupt any plan in the Marianas. In the period of two short days, a new concept of war was introduced to the Pacific Theater. The war in the Pacific demonstrated the value of carrier based air power and that if it was used carefully and logically it could be very decisive. On the morning of the 17th of February and continuing through the 18th, the US Navy demonstrated that the Japanese could be defeated without a huge naval assault, land based air attacks or an amphibious landing. Utilizing naval aircraft from three carriers groups under the command of Admiral Mitscher, the Americans struck Truk at sunrise. Faced with continuous pounding on both the merchant fleet and warships in the harbor the Japanese realized that Truk had lost its strategic value. Of the 365 Japanese aircraft scattered on the Truk airfields, the majority were destroyed on the ground and those that rose to attack the Americans were easily shot down. A further demonstration of the advances in strategy and the capabilities of naval aviation occurred at Truk. It was at this opportunity that Admiral Mitscher's carriers launched the first night attack by carrier based aircraft on shipping. Using radar that had been specifically developed for this purpose, the naval aviators managed to deliver 13 direct hits on a variety of Japanese ships. Clearly the value of carrier warfare and strong carrier groups was evident. The Japanese could not escape the American onslaught under the cover of darkness. The result of this two day aerial assault was that Truk was reduced in capability and ceased to be a strategic base. The Americans now could bypass the island without an amphibious invasion in their westward drive to Japan.

Saipan

Buoyed by the bloody success on Tarawa and the lessons learned Admiral Nimitz now in the early summer of 1944 gazed westward toward the next major island chain in his path. This was the Mariana's which was the next logical step in his advance. Earlier in February 1944 his westward advance had been strengthened by the conquest of the Marshall Island chain and the capture of key Japanese facilities at Kwajalein. Within the Mariana's were three islands of significance; Guam, Saipan and Tinian. With the loss of these three islands, the huge Japanese supply base at Truk would be nearly cut off and would be isolated from the Japanese home islands. Further, the islands of Guam, Saipan and Tinian would provide airfields that would allow the Americans to utilize the new B-29 "Super Fortress" for bombing missions over mainland Japan. It should be noted that Col. Paul Tibbets departed from Tinian in August 1945 with the world's first atomic bomb on his mission to Hiroshima.

The battle for Saipan began in mid-June 1944 and ended in mid-July. Using techniques that had been learned the year before the American forces were able to more effectively use both their equipment and manpower. While there were still problems in orchestrating naval gunfire and aerial support, the Marines of the 2nd and 4th Divisions and the soldiers of the 27th Division were successful. Facing a force of 27,000 Japanese, the Americans would suffer 3,100 dead and 13,100 wounded. Only about 2,000 Japanese would be taken as prisoners at the end of the battle. The commander of the operation, Marine Lt. General Holland "Howling Mad" Smith would eventually relieve the 27th Division's commander, Major General R. C. Smith after the battle over the differences of military doctrines between the two services. The Marines favored a quick and decisive assault while the Army favored a more deliberate and prepared assault on enemy positions.

Peleliu

Meeting in Hawaii with President Roosevelt in July 1944 General MacArthur and Admiral Nimitz advanced two different plans that would lead to the final assault on the home islands of Japan. General MacArthur favored an approach through the Philippines while Nimitz favored a strategy that would lead the American forces to China and the island of Formosa. President Roosevelt settled the issue when he approved MacArthur's plan. Now General MacArthur would focus on moving up the Philippine Island chain while Nimitz would move northwest and seize the islands of Iwo Jima and Okinawa. In order to protect the right flank of the forces under General MacArthur it became necessary to eliminate the Japanese forces in the Palau Islands. These Japanese naval and air forces had the potential to disrupt any American activity in the Eastern Philippines. With the isolation of Truk, the Palau Islands took on greater significance for the Japanese. In the planning for this invasion Admiral Halsey would be providing support for General MacArthur while remaining under the command of Admiral Nimitz. Halsey would question the need for the invasion of the Palau's because he felt the Japanese strength had been greatly diminished. He was fearful of another "Tarawa like" invasion with its associated casualties. Unfortunately he was overruled by Admiral Nimitz, his superior.

Initially, it was thought that the main island of Peleliu would not be as difficult as others. The Japanese defenses had been hammered for nearly three days of naval gunfire and aerial bombing. When the initial wave of Marines hit the coral reefs on 17 September they found out how well the Japanese defenders had survived and were now ready to fight. The first three days of the struggle saw the Marines take horrific losses for very little ground gained. Units were isolated and out of touch with their adjacent Marine units and often feared that the Japanese would exploit the gaps in their lines. Fortunately that did not occur. Because of the huge losses elements from the Army's 81st Division were landed on 23 September. With this help and the remaining Marine units the Japanese were finally eliminated by the end of October. The Japanese defenders had been well entrenched and had clearly thought out their defensive strategy. It now seemed to the Marines that the Japanese were beginning to change some of their earlier defensive techniques and avoid the suicidal "Banzai" charges that had been so costly. Instead the Japanese when overrun would retreat to alternative positions that were equally strengthened. Thus the fight on Peleliu would continue on well past what had been envisioned in the early invasion planning.

With the conquest of the Palau, Marianas and Marshall Island groups the noose was beginning to tighten around the shrinking Japanese Empire. The remainder of 1944 would see General MacArthur's forces in the Southwest Pacific land and begin the campaign to reclaim the Philippines. Admiral Nimitz's Central Pacific forces would now begin their preparations to capture islands within the inner ring of Japan's bases. This next assault would bring Nimitz to within 600 miles of mainland Japan, and would make the name of a small volcanic island a household legend in America.

European Campaign 1943 – 1944

North Africa

The Allied landings on the 8th of November (code named "Torch") at three places in North Africa had caught the French as well as the Italians and Germans off guard. Initially the French had resisted to various degrees the Allied landings, but over the period of four days had accepted surrender terms that were offer. By the end of November General Eisenhower had at his disposal over a quarter of a million men on the shore of North Africa. Although separated by nearly 400 miles the three landing areas were to face two different operational goals. Within a few days after the invasion, the German forces occupied the remainder of France and the capital of unoccupied France at Vichy. Thus the northern coast of the Mediterranean would now pose a threat to the Allied advances. Because of this Eisenhower directed that the forces in the Western (Casablanca) and Central (Oran) landing areas remain and prepare for a possible attack by the German forces who had the potential to move through Spain and attack in the rear of Eisenhower's forces. Once the threat from the north was discounted, the Western and Central forces would be marshaled and sent against the Germans. This initially left only the Eastern Task force to advance toward the city of Tunis and its ports.

At the onset of the Torch landings, Italy rushed two divisions of troops into Tunis while the Germans sent two armored divisions and one infantry division to halt the Anglo-

American advance creating the Fifth Panzer Army. These forces were quickly strengthened and by February 1943 they exceeded 100,000 men. Lacking in the number of forces that would be necessary to penetrate the German and Italian lines, Eisenhower as overall Commander-in-Chief of all Allied North African forces had to wait. His inaction was also compounded by the weather that turned the terrain into fields of mud that would not allow the movement of armored forces and thus favored the defender. The Germans would bring to the Tunisian campaign the experienced General Von Arnim fresh from commanding a Corps in Russia. He would coordinate his efforts with Field Marshal Rommel who was retreating from the east in the face of the British 8th Army under General Montgomery.

Tunisia

North Africa was the first ground combat experience for the Americans in the war against Germany. The majority of the forces were untried and untested. Within a few months they would get their first taste of real combat against the Germans at a place known as the Kasserine Pass. From the end of November 1942 until February 1943, the Americans built up their forces and placed the II Corps to the south of their extended front. It was here that the Germans under Field Marshall Rommel launched an attack on the 30th of January against the French XIX Corps. The German panzers quickly broke through and subsequently halted American counterattacks. Pushing deeper into the Allied lines, Rommel's forces gained enough ground until they threatened the American rear. The commander of the American II Corps, Major General Lloyd Fredendall was not effective in the deployment of his forces and they were piecemeal chewed up and many were captured. The final blow fell as the German panzers entered the Kasserine Pass and quickly cleared out the American forces. Fortunately, the Americans were able to withdraw and consolidate their positions with the British to the north and halt the German advance. Thus Rommel was halted and turned his attention to the approaching Montgomery to his rear.

The defeat of the Americans at Kasserine caused Eisenhower to relieve Fredendall and replace him with Major General George Patton who had earlier commanded the Western Task Force in the Torch landings. Within the period of ten days Patton was able to turn around the dispirited II Corps and reinvigorate its fighting spirit. In mid-March 1943 General Montgomery launched his final assault on the Germans in North Africa. After a week of hard fighting he was able to break through the German lines and push them up the Tunisian coast. To the west the Americans, now under Patton pushed back against the Germans and were able to penetrate the German positions in the west, thus forcing them to join their fleeing compatriots in front of Montgomery. Within a month the Allies had pushed the Germans and Italians to the northern cities and ports of Tunisia and Bizerte. Finally on the 9th of May 1943, the North African campaign came to a close.

The introduction of the Americans into the war was a tough learning process. In six months of fighting, 2,700 Americans were killed, 9,000 had been wounded and over 6,000 were missing and presumed to be prisoners of war held by the Germans. This was in contrast to the German and Italian forces who suffered a total of 200,000 battle

casualties and nearly 280,000 prisoners of war. Americans from general officer on down to the private gained valuable experience that would serve them well in future campaigns.

North Africa would further serve to give General Eisenhower the combat field experience as a commander that would serve him well in June 1944. Rising from the American ranks were two general officers, George Patton and Omar Bradley, who would become American household names by the end of the war. It is interesting to note that at the start of the American advance in February 1943, General Bradley was Patton's deputy. In April 1943, Bradley would replace Patton as commander of II Corps in order to allow General Patton to begin planning for the invasion of Sicily. Within war there is always a great deal of irony present. In the short period of 14 months General Patton would soon find himself serving under General Bradley in Normandy. This time General Patton would be commanding the Third US Army while General Bradley would be his superior commanding the 12th US Army group.

Entering the "Soft Underbelly" of Europe

In January 1943, President Roosevelt and Prime Minister Churchill met at Casablanca, in Morocco along with their staffs, to determine the next appropriate course action for their forces. After resolving some differences and disagreements in strategy it was agreed that Italy, through Sicily, would be the next target. The Americans, particularly under General George Marshall who was literally Roosevelt's "right hand man", wanted a cross-channel invasion of France and into Germany. He was overruled and plans were made to continue operations in the Mediterranean. Although not clearly stated, the goal was to take Italy out of the war. The commander for the operations was again to be Lt. General Eisenhower with all of his staff deputies to be British. Thus Operation Husky was born.

The invasion of Sicily was to be a significant invasion force of 3,300 ships. Much bigger than the forces that brought "Torch" to North Africa. The British forces would consist mainly of the 8th Army under General Montgomery while the American forces would consist of the 7th Army under the command of Lt. General Patton. Within Patton's forces would be the 82nd Airborne Division who would see some heavy fighting as well as friendly fire losses over their drop zones. Facing the Allied forces, the Axis defenders were made up primarily of 200,000 Italian soldiers who were initially supported by 30,000 Germans. However, at the outset of the landings, the German commander of forces in Italy, Field Marshal Kesselring, would reinforce the German defenders bringing that total up to 50,000 Wehrmacht soldiers. The strategy was fairly simple. The British would land at the southeast corner of the island and push up the coast northward with an ultimate final objective of securing the Messina. They were to cut off the retreating Axis forces and prevent them from evacuating to the toe of Italy. The Americans were to land to the west of the 8th Army and push along a parallel track in order to provide flank security to Montgomery's forces. Past the initial plan for the landings, details were not worked out that would provide further objectives for Patton's forces. This failure would cause some interesting and contentious problems as the campaign would develop.

On the 10th of July 1943, the Allied forces hit the Sicilian beaches having been preceded by airborne and glider borne forces. The invasion forces met little real resistance and within the first day were firmly established in Sicily. The British forces quickly began their movement up the coast and captured the port cities of Syracuse and Augusta. To the west the center of the American landings was now being contested strongly by the German Herman Goering Division. On the second day of the battle Patton ordered the insertion of elements of his airborne forces being held in reserve in North Africa. Despite the great lengths of the American commanders to inform all beach and naval personnel of the airborne reinforcement some did not get the word. That evening saw 23 Allied transports shot down over the invasion area by nervous gunners at a loss of nearly 250 paratroopers. After the third day of operations the beachhead was firmly secured.

As Montgomery's 8th Army began to reduce their rate of march due to stiffing German defenses a change was made in the operational boundaries that had been set between the American and British forces. The boundary was moved westward to allow Montgomery to flank the coastal Axis defenses. This shift caused a great deal of furor among Patton and his commanders. Not wishing to be relegated to a secondary role Patton and the 7th Army began to push westward to Palermo, the capital of Sicily. He also had General Bradley continue to move north through central Sicily and support Montgomery's flank. Patton's new advance moved with lightning rapidity and shortly captured the western tip of Sicily and now swung along the northern coast pushing eastward to the Strait of Messina. The 7th Army now had control of the western half of the island.

The fighting at this stage had a repercussion on Mussolini as he was ousted from power on the 25th of July. The Rome-Berlin Axis was now cracking. For Germany, this would eventually mean a need to strengthen Italy with even more German soldiers in order to halt the Allied advance. As the Sicilian campaign wore on over the next week the German forces began a withdrawal to the Italian mainland, recognizing that they could not hold on in Sicily. The final struggle ended on 17 August when elements of Patton's 3rd Infantry Division entered Messina from the west, just as the last of the German troops were boarding a ship for the short ride to the Italian mainland. General Patton arrived on the scene and personally accepted the surrender of the city. As he did this a column of British units arrived in the city, much to their chagrin, Patton had captured their objective.

Two things that occurred in the Sicilian campaign would serve to provide controversy for the remainder of the war. The first was the myth of the rivalry that had developed and encouraged by the press between Montgomery and Patton. Both had large egos and both liked to be in the limelight. As a result of this campaign each was now the center of attention in their respective countries as the example of the fighting general. Each would be compared to the other and this would not be lost of the vanity of the two. However, for Patton his rise to public adulation would also serve to cause him great embarrassment and make him question his own future. This of course is the famous Patton slapping incidents. General Patton always made it a point to visit wounded soldiers as they were recovering in the ever present US Army field hospitals. On the 3rd of August Patton was visiting the 15th Evacuation Hospital where he threatened and slapped a soldier who had been admitted for battle fatigue. A week later on the 10th of August he slapped another

soldier at the 93rd Evacuation Hospital. In each of these incidents Patton thought he was doing the “right thing” in his attempts to “shock” the soldiers out of their circumstances. These actions were reported up the chain of command and reached Eisenhower within the week. Eventually Eisenhower was able to handle the situation and deal with a hostile press that wanted to get rid of Patton. In the end Patton’s 7th Army was stripped of personnel and assets to reinforce the 5th Army for their upcoming invasion of Italy. Patton would now remain at Palermo in a state of Limbo in a very small headquarters. The furor further erupted in November 1943 when the slapping incidents became general knowledge to the American public through a nationally syndicated radio program. **(See included response of American general public letters on Patton slapping incident)** Within days the American public was either praising or despising General Patton. Fearing that his career was over he was dismayed. With Eisenhower, Marshall and others recognizing Patton’s value as a field commander he was finally recalled to England with the possibility of future command. General’s Eisenhower and Bradley had left the Mediterranean theater in January 1944 to assume their roles in the upcoming cross-channel invasion. Patton would see that his former subordinate, General Bradley, would now be his commander.

The assault on Sicily brought the downfall of Mussolini, but not the collapse of the Italian government. However, the successor to Mussolini, Marshall Badoglio, realized that the future of Italy was in serious jeopardy. By the 3rd of September, Italy had agreed to an armistice with the Allies that would take effect on the 8th of September. However, earlier Montgomery had landed on the 3rd of September at Calabria across the Strait of Messina while the remainder of the 8th British Army would land on the 9th at the Italian boot heel. This was simultaneously with the American 5th Army landings at Salerno also on the 9th of September. The departure of Mussolini in July from the Italian command structure forced the Germans to take quick and decisive action to keep Italy in the war. With the subsequently announcement of the Italian Armistice the German Wehrmacht began to expand their flow into Italy with even more additional men, material and equipment. Rome was quickly occupied and the Italian government was secured, although both King Victor Emmanuel III and Marshall Badoglio escaped to Southern Italy where they encountered the troops of Montgomery’s 8th Army.

The Allied landings in southern Italy met with mixed responses. The British faced little resistance and were able to link up with the Americans to the west within a week. Over the course of that week the 8th Army had advanced up the boot and by the end of the second week had secured the great airbases at Foggia. The American 5th Army under Lt. General Mark Clark had a very difficult time on the beaches at Salerno, just south of Naples. Salerno was important because it lead to Naples. The capture of the large port facilities at Naples was critical to the success of the campaign up the boot of Italy on the western coast. After ten days of fighting the beachhead was secure and the German forces began withdrawing to the North. By the 1st of October, American forces had entered Naples and pushed through the city. A week later the Allies would be at the Volturno River and linked together across the entire length of the Italian Peninsula. Within mid-October the Allies began to move across the river which had become swollen with rains. Progress was slow. By mid-November a frontage of over 20 miles had been gained.

The Germans had established three defensive lines that reached across the width of Italy. These were intended to slowdown and through attrition weaken the Allied advance. The first was the Barbara line, followed by the Bernhard Line and lastly the Gustav Line. By January 1944, only the Gustav Line remained to be breached. But it was here that the Allied forces would take a beating, not just from the German forces, but also from the weather. On some occasions more soldiers were injured from the mountainous terrain and the weather conditions than they were from German weapons. Anchoring the Gustav Line in the center was the 1,400 year old Benedictine Monastery of Monte Cassino. The heights of the Abbey of Monte Cassino allowed for a commanding view of all entry to the Liri Valley. It was clearly a strategic position that would evoke later controversy at the end of the war. After fighting up the peninsula of Italy, the troops were exhausted. It would now take a superhuman effort in order to break out past the Gustav line.

The strategy that was subsequently developed to break the stalemate along this winter front was focused on an amphibious landing at a coastal town to the north called Anzio. It was 40 miles to the south of Rome, afforded good beaches for landings and most of all was far enough from the Gustav Line to give the Germans pause for concern about being attacked from the rear. The operation had originally been scheduled for late November-early December. But due to the failure of the American 5th Army to advance far enough, it had been reluctantly called off. Now on Churchill's insistence in December, 1943 the plans for the Anzio operations were resumed. **(See included Stars and Stripes Newspaper, 24 December 1943)**

On the 22nd of January 1944 elements of the 5th Army landed at Anzio in Operation "Shingle" with little opposition. The Germans were surprised. Within several days the Allied forces had expanded the beachhead to a depth of seven miles and landed nearly 50,000 troops. Concurrently the Allied forces on the Gustav Line began their push in their attempt to break through. Here was where the Allies faltered. The German forces under Field Marshall Kesselring quickly reinforced the Gustav Line and blunted the Anzio beaches where the Allies failed to aggressively advance. By early February the Allied were bottled up at Anzio facing huge casualties and the possibility they could be forced off the beaches. To the south the Germans were doggedly halting the allied advance.

It would not be until May 1944 when these forces would be able to break out of their positions. Over the next four months their perimeter would shrink and expand, and the German artillery would continue to rake the American facilities that would come to be known as "Hell's Half Acre". At Anzio the US Army had established field hospitals to treat the nearly 33,000 personnel that would pass through their tents. These hospitals were located on the beaches and were under constant threat of bombardment. Among the personnel were 200 female Army Nurses who provided a touch of home to many of the soldiers. Six of these nurses would lose their lives, while four would be the first ever women to be awarded the Silver Star for their heroism.

Another attempt to break the stalemate the across the waist of Italy was the controversial Allied bombing of Monte Cassino. It was believed that the Germans had occupied the

heights of the mountain and were in the grounds of the abbey. From this strategic position, it was thought the German artillery was being directed on the advancing Allies as they moved up the boot of Italy. All attempts to take the abbey in late 1943 and early 1944 ended in failure.

The decision to bomb the abbey was not one that was unanimously approved by the Allies. The Commander of the American 5th Army, General Mark Clark, was not in favor of the idea when it was presented to the overall Mediterranean Theater Commander, British General Harold Alexander. The deciding factor was the psychological impression of the Gustav Line's invincibility that existed among the Allied soldiers. The abbey was seen as the lynchpin of the German line and the key that had to be opened (destroyed) hopefully improving the morale of the attacking soldiers. With that in mind, General Alexander felt that the destruction of the abbey was of military necessity and was needed to spare Allied lives.

Over the course of two days, the 15th and 16th of February 1944 the Allies hammered the abbey with medium and heavy bomber strikes, depositing nearly 600 tons of munitions, literally turning it into a pile of rubble. Thinking that this would dislodge the German occupation from the 1,800' height of the Abbey, the Allied ground forces advanced. Sadly this proved not to be the case and within hours of the bombing and artillery barrages, tough German paratroopers from the 1st Parachute Division occupied the ruins of the Abbey. It would take another four months before the Abbey was finally taken at yet a more terrible cost. On the 18th of May, 1944 Polish II Corps finally stormed the last defenders of the abbey. Afterwards they took stock of their losses. In the four months of heavy fighting the Poles lost over 4,000 men who are now buried on the Snakeshead Ridge Polish cemetery. But for the Poles who had been fighting the Germans since the 1st of September 1939, it was an appropriate ending.

On the 11th of May 1944, the Allies began their final attack on Monte Cassino and the surrounding countryside. Within a week the Gustav Line had been breached and several days later the Anzio beachhead finally broke free and moved to link up with the forces moving from the south. Fortunately as the Germans withdrew from the area, fearing encirclement, they decided to bypass Rome and subsequently declared it to be an "open city". On the 4th of June the Allies marched victorious into Rome. This first of the Axis capitals had fallen. In the meantime, Mussolini had been rescued by a special German force from his Italian captors and had been installed in a puppet state in the North of Italy called the "Italian Social Republic". This puppet state would continue the pseudo Italian war effort against the Allies from their newly established capital at Salo. The fighting in Italy would still continue through early May 1945. The capture of Rome did not really make the headlines or capture the attention of the British or the American public. This was because the Allied cross-channel invasion would occur on the 6th of June and the war in Italy would become a secondary point of interest. The campaign to gain Rome had cost the Germans and the British-American forces nearly an equal amount of casualties. The total would approach 30,000 dead, wounded and missing on each side. This would be in addition to the large number of non-battle casualties from disease and battle fatigue.

After Rome was taken by the Allies, the German forces began to form a new series of defensive fortified lines that would run from the “Dora Line” just north of Rome to the Genghis Khan Line south of Bologna. From June to September the allies were able to continue their advance northward, pushing the Germans toward the Alps. The fighting in the upper reaches of the Apennines would again be as brutal as it had been to the south. The Gothic Line was the last real barrier the Allies would face in Italy. The rapid advance saw the capture of Sienna, Florence and the ascent into the central Apennines. This came to a climax at the Futa Pass in late September 1944, where a determined allied push broke the Gothic Line and moved into the Po Valley, south of Bologna. **(See included Stars and Stripes 11 November 1944)** Hurriedly, the Germans rushed reinforcements and with the combination of an early winter the combined British – American armies were halted. A stalemate along the lines of World War I would emerge as each side took time to lick their wounds, regroup and rearm. It would not be until the 14th of April 1945 that the advance would begin again. This time against a German foe who knew that defeat was only weeks away.

From the period of 14 April to 29 April the Allied armies marched north and captured Venice, the entire northern Italian plain and were on the outskirts of the Alps in the north and at Trieste to the east. Rather than continuing the defense of Italy at the cost of more casualties the German forces began to surrender in droves, particularly in light of the announcement that Hitler was dead. One of the more interesting stories that emerged in this period was that of the SS Commander for Italy, General Karl Wolfe. Earlier he had been linked to a failed plot to kidnap Pope Pius XII from the Vatican. General Wolfe later stated he had defied Hitler’s orders and sabotaged the plan. In the closing months of the war he was also involved in dealing the American OSS representative Allen Dulles who was running espionage operations out of Switzerland. The final German surrender in Italy would occur on 2 May when Field Marshal Albert Kesselring would order the cessation of hostilities and formally end the Italian campaign.

German Response to Italian Partisans – Atrocity

The departure of Italy from the war with the armistice and surrender of the Italian forces in the fall of 1943 gave rise to increased partisan activities that were directed against the German occupiers. Some of these activities included destroying key installations, facilities, transportation networks as well as harassing and nuisance acts of sabotage.

After the Allies had passed Rome and the German forces began to retreat northward, the partisan activity became more aggressive. German convoys were ambushed, depot facilities were destroyed, and railroads were disrupted and in one case a set of German plans for the Gustav Line were captured. The main actors in this drama against the Germans were groups of individuals who were led by American OSS operatives or those who had been organized around charismatic individuals who were sometimes guided by Communist ideology. One of these groups was known as the “Stella Rossa” and would be the focus of what would become the worst German atrocity in Italy during the entire war.

As the Germans were falling back from Rome and moving through the Apennines they came more frequently under attack. Determined to put an end to these disruptive activities and improve the morale of the German soldier, Field Marshall Albert Kesselring directed that select units of the German military organization be utilized to deal with this threat. One of the areas where there had been strong Italian partisan movements was in an area south of Bologna that was known as Monte Sole. The summit of this range of the Apennines reached 2,000'. To deal with the partisans and to set an example of what would happen to those who fought clandestinely against the Germans, a group of SS units were organized to specifically ferret out and destroy the partisans.

On the 29th of September 1944 members of the 16th SS Panzergrenadier Division under the command of the one armed Major Walter Reder descended on the small town of Marzabotta and other small mountain villages. These communities had existed in the shadow of Monte Sole for centuries. Over the course of the next three days these SS men methodically moved over the terrain rounding up the citizens who consisted mainly of elderly men, priests, women and children and systematically killing them and burning their homes. By the end of the operation, very few people who had any involvement with the Italian partisans had been killed. Instead, the majority of the dead were innocents who only wanted to avoid the bloodshed of the war. At final count there were 1,830 civilians who had been murdered in this act of violence. This single event did more to stimulate hatred against the Germans, than reduce the efforts of the partisan movement in Northern Italy. This would later prove to be the largest atrocity by the German to take place in Western Europe during the war.

Shift towards Northern Europe

Beginning in 1942 efforts began to prepare for the eventual invasion of Northern Europe. The key to the planning for this invasion was to ensure that England remained in the war. With the decision to invade Northern Europe having been settled at Casablanca, the remainder of 1943 and the first half of 1944 would be seen as the final buildup of invasion forces. Various units were transferred from the Italian campaign and returned for England to help train the newly arriving units.

The key leaders for the invasion of Northern Europe had been assembled and Patton was now being held in reserve providing deception operations in the southeastern part of England. The Allied air forces were initiating a campaign that would begin to destroy the infrastructure of Northern France that would slow the ability of the Germans to provide any reinforcements to the landing areas. Daily aircraft missions were taking place all over Northern Europe as well as strategic bombing missions that were being directed at Germany.

The Italian campaign and the forces of both the American and British armies would now battle the Germans for the remainder of the war in the shadow of the Northern European campaign that would begin with the Normandy landings. The number of forces involved in Italy and the Mediterranean theater would decline as resources were focused to the north through increased priorities. Rome had been taken, and now it was seen that the quickest way to Berlin would be through Western Europe.

Axis and Allied Economic Controls

Japanese Invasion Money

When Japan invaded the areas of Asia that were controlled by the United States and the European powers they instituted economic controls that would, in effect, provide them with an economic advantage over these conquered countries. This gave rise to what was known as the Japanese Invasion Money or JIM. It was issued in the various denominations of the local currency in order to replace the countries “hard” currency with what would become at war’s end worthless money. In each of the countries that were occupied by the Japanese this process led to severe inflation and the potential for economic ruin. The hard currency that the Japanese collected was used to finance their own war production efforts through what became known as the “Greater East-Asia Co-Prosperity Sphere”. The currency was not serial numbered and was printed in what became unlimited quantities. In the Philippines the Japanese money was listed in centavos and pesos, in Malaya it was prepared in Malaysian dollars, in Burma it was prepared in Rupees and in the Dutch East Indies it was prepared in cents and Guildens. **(See included examples of Japanese Invasion Money)** At the end of the war people in many countries had hoarded their original currency and brought it out for circulation. However, because of the severe inflation and the Allied decision not to recognize the Japanese currency, efforts were made to create a new currency that was backed by the Allied governments in attempts to stabilize the post-war economies.

Allied Military Currency

When the United States began to prepare for the invasion of the European and Pacific areas that were under the control of the Germans, Italian and the Japanese, a series of military currencies were prepared for each of these locations. The banknotes were actually printed in either the United States or England and were provided to the Allied forces as they entered the new countries. The intent was to help to stabilize the economy of each area, prevent American dollars or British pounds from falling into the hands of Axis power’s and hopefully to prevent inflation or black market activities in these local economies. This type of Allied Military Currency is often referred to as “Invasion Money”. The countries that saw a great deal of this type of currency was Italy, France, Austria, Germany and Japan. The currency was prepared in denominations that were based on the existing monetary system in each particular country. Each piece of military currency was only valid in that particular country. **(See included examples of Japanese, Italian, French, German and Austrian military currencies that were prepared by the Allies)** After the war ended these military currencies were converted to both new national currency issues and to military payment certificates. This was particularly important in post-war Germany due the Soviet reluctance to support stability controls for a new currency for occupied Germany and Austria.

The Naval War in the Atlantic

The naval war that would engulf the world in World War II can be viewed in a different prism from that of the land war. After the entry of the United States into World War II, strategic policy decisions were made between Roosevelt and Churchill that directed the war in Europe would have priority over the war in the Pacific. England was under a greater threat from Germany than the United States was from the Japanese. This was for the purpose of directing supplies, equipment and personnel the strategy that would be used to defeat the Axis powers. In the Pacific Theater this policy would call on primarily the American forces, in conjunction with the forces of the British Empire, to deal with the Japanese with reduced materiel and manpower until the war in Europe was victorious. The Atlantic Ocean would become the battleground that would pit the German Kriegsmarine against British Royal Navy and subsequently the United States Navy. The Americans would be engaged in combat in the Atlantic in a reduced role when compared to their participation in the Pacific Theater of the war. The Battle of the Atlantic would end up being a struggle over the supply and transport of commodities primarily to England and later the Soviet Union.

On the other hand, the war that would be fought in the Pacific Ocean would be one that would rely extensively on American naval forces in order to make counterstrokes against the Japanese aggression. The vastness of the Pacific Ocean would require the commitment of very large naval forces on the side of the United States. In the pre-war years of the 1920's and 1930's Japan had embarked on an expansion of their ship building industries and by the start of the America's combatant role in the war in December 1941, the Japanese possessed such a substantial navy that they had complete control of the Western Pacific Ocean. During these same pre-war years, the United States had fallen behind in the pre-war naval arms build-up. In planning for the strategic defense of the United States it was recognized by the leadership of the United States Navy that the greatest threat that faced the United States, prior to World War II, was that of the expansionist Japanese Empire. As a result, the bulk of the pre-war American fleet was stationed on the west coast of the United States or in the Pacific at bases such as Pearl Harbor, Hawaii. There was no apparent need for a significant American naval presence on the east coast since it was considered that the only other major sea-power in the world, England, was America's ally.

Thus when assessing the impact of the war at sea in either the Atlantic or the Pacific Oceans it must be taken into account that the numbers of surface combatant vessels involved as a whole were greater in the Pacific Theater while the number of sub-surface (submarine) combatant vessels was greater in the Atlantic. The dominant naval powers, in terms of numbers of surface ships, in the Pacific were the Japanese and the United States while the dominant naval powers, in terms of sub-surface (submarine) were the Germans and the Italians in the Atlantic and Mediterranean. This can further be borne out by the number of vessels sunk and surrendered at the end of the war. In the course of the war the German Kriegsmarine, fighting primarily in the Atlantic, would lose in combat five of their six battleships; 10 of their 13 cruisers; 53 of their 73 destroyers and 790 of 835 submarines (1,175 were actually built) that saw active combat. The Italian

navy in the Atlantic and Mediterranean would lose three of their eight battleships; all seven of their aircraft carrier escorts; 18 of their 30 cruisers; 62 of their 73 destroyers and 116 of their 137 submarines. The Japanese fighting in the Pacific would lose all 11 of their battleships; all 20 of their aircraft carriers; all five of their escort carriers; all 18 of their heavy cruisers; 21 of their 22 light cruisers; two of their three training cruisers; 160 of their 176 destroyers and 133 of their 194 submarines. One of the conclusions that can be drawn in evaluating the number of losses among the Axis powers is that the war in the Atlantic seemed to be one that had been fought most frequently against submarines while the war in the Pacific seems to have been fought more often against surface vessels.

The American naval involvement on the Atlantic Ocean over the course of World War II would be more in support of the British Royal Navy. The United States Navy for the most part would provide Atlantic convoy escorts, troop transport ships and armed merchant ships. Towards the final years of the war there would be an increased American warship presence in the form of the escort carrier groups that would be actively engaged in anti-submarine operations. Additionally, for the Allied landings between 1942 and 1944 in North Africa, Sicily, Southern Italy, Normandy and Southern France the United States Navy would provide significant numbers of warships ranging from battleships to destroyers that would be used to “soften-up” the invasion landing sites. Many of these ships that participated in landings such as D-Day would later see heavy fighting in the Pacific in the final years of the war.

The Convoy System

The war at sea that was to take place in the Atlantic Ocean between the Allies and the Axis powers would be different, but yet similar to the struggle in the Atlantic during World War I. In World War I, there were infrequent surface fleet actions between the great powers. The most notable was the last great clash of capital ships off the western coast of Denmark. This was the Battle of Jutland in June 1916 between the fleets of Germany and England that resulted in what could be considered as a “draw”. World War II in contrast would see more surface fleet actions between England and Germany in the early years of World War II. The one constant and deadly factor that was similar in both of the wars at sea was that of the highly effective utilization of the German submarine (U-Boat) against Allied shipping.

In World War I the German Navy was able to effectively use the U-Boat as a means to disrupt the shipping trade between England and her various colonies and trading partners. With the entry of the United States in the Great War in April of 1917, the successful operations of the German U-Boats were greatly reduced. Towards the end of the war, new tactics were introduced as well as new equipment that could be used to detect the U-Boat. The most notable of this was the implementation of the Convoy System and the employment of ASDIC, named for the organization that developed it (Allied Submarine Detection Investigation Committee). The American name that became highly recognized for ASDIC was SONAR (Sound Navigation Ranging). The ASDIC transmitter would be fitted under the front of a surface vessel and would send out a signal that would hit a submerged object and would reflect the impulse back to the source. Good ASDIC operators were able to determine the location on a compass bearing of the submerged

object and estimate its distance. In selecting individuals to serve as the ASDIC operators it was important that they have excellent hearing abilities. It was discovered that professional musicians were very well suited for this type of work. Unfortunately, ASDIC only worked in detecting submerged vessels, not U-boats that were on the surface. This would later prove problematic for the Allies in World War II. As time went on in the Great War the U-Boat was rendered ineffective. It should be noted that of the nearly two million American servicemen and women who were transported over the Atlantic to Europe not one transport ship was lost to submarines. In World War II the Americans would not be as fortunate.

The war in the Atlantic began on the 4th of November 1939 when the United States repealed the “Arms Embargo” provision in the Neutrality Acts of the 1930’s which prohibited the sale by American companies of arms and munitions to belligerent countries. This would now allow the British and the French governments to purchase American products and ship them in their own cargo vessels back to Europe. The arms embargo repeal did little to help the Germans and the Italians, since they did not control the sea and their ships did not effectively make it to America. It became clear that the United States was now aiding the European democracies in their struggle against Fascist countries. This became known as the “Cash and Carry” policy. The original Neutrality Act of 1935 was intended to help keep the United States from becoming entangled in the struggles of Europe. It had been felt that this was one of the causes of the American entry into World War I. By the summer of 1940 the British stood alone in Europe against Fascism and were beginning to exhaust their cash and gold reserves that had allowed for the purchase of American goods. On the 2nd of September 1940 it was announced that the United States and England entered into an agreement that would provide mutual assistance to each other. This deal would provide 50 overage destroyers to the British Empire in return for basing rights on British possessions in Newfoundland and the Caribbean. The United States saw this as a way to help the British, but at the same time gain places where American forces could be deployed for the defense of the Panama Canal and the Atlantic seaboard. Earlier on the 5th of September 1939, five days after the start of the war in Europe, President Roosevelt had directed the US Navy to establish a Neutrality Patrol. The “avowed object of this patrol was to report and track any belligerent air, surface or underwater naval forces approaching the coasts of the United States or the West Indies. The fundamental purpose was to emphasize the readiness of the United States Navy to defend the Western Hemisphere.” These bases would help support that mission. After the destroyer for bases deal was worked out it became apparent that England could not pay for any more American products.

On the 11th of March 1941 the United States passed the Lend – Lease Act which would allow the President of the United States to “sell, transfer title to, exchange, lease, lend or otherwise dispose of ... any defense article” to any country or nation which the defense thereof was considered to be vital to the defense of the United States. This Lend – Lease Act would be the catalyst that would begin increased logistical aid to England. This aid would be transported on merchant and cargo ships to England and subsequently to Russia in order to help them survive against Germany. It would take nearly a fleet of 3,000 merchant cargo vessels to perform this supply task and nearly 2,500 would be at sea at any one time. When America entered the war in Europe on the 10th of December 1941

with the German declaration of war, the United States was already providing England and Russia with significant materiel for the war against the Axis powers. These convoys would have to be halted by the Germans if they were to win the war.

Remembering the circumstances of the First World War at sea a system of convoys had been established by 1940 that allowed for the Allied merchant vessels to travel in some degree of safety. Some merchant ships preferred to travel alone and this proved to be the most vulnerable way to move cargo. Of the nearly 1,800 ships that were sunk by the Germans in the period of September 1939 to June 1941, only 362 were sunk while in a convoy. The widespread view among the British was that convoys offered the best protection. Initially those British convoys that did depart from the western hemisphere ports would be escorted by the Royal Navy and elements of the Canadian Navy when warships were available. Most often the convoys were large and would travel with only one or two military escorts. The larger British warships were predominately being used ineffectively to patrol the Atlantic Ocean and the western approaches to England in an effort to catch the German navy at sea and engage in battle. In the early years of the war, the Germans would very effectively use their surface fleet of battleships and cruisers to disrupt the convoy system. In turn this caused the British to impress aging battleships to serve as convoy escorts. This did provide a small degree of security for the merchant convoys. By late 1940, the German U-Boat campaign against British merchant ships had been forced westward towards the United States. This was due to the success of the Royal Air Force, working in conjunction with the Royal Navy, in sinking the U-Boats lurking in the waters between Iceland and England. In July 1941, President Roosevelt announced that the United States Navy would begin escorting merchant convoys carrying lend-lease goods as far as Iceland. This was done to help ensure that the goods that the United States was producing would actually make it to the intended destinations. Iceland was important to the Allied war effort.

In the spring of 1940 Denmark was overrun by the German forces in a repeat of the Blitzkrieg of Poland. The monarchy of Iceland had previously been closely tied to Denmark and alarmed by the potential of German presence in Iceland, the British invaded Iceland in May of 1940. This happened even though Iceland had declared its neutrality at the start of World War II. England recognized the strategic value of Iceland as a merchant convoy harbor and an air base for RAF planes on anti U-Boat patrols. Within a year England would place 25,000 soldiers on the island. In July 1941, by mutual agreement with the Icelandic government, the United States would relieve the British presence in the country with 40,000 American personnel. When Roosevelt announced the United States Navy's role to escort merchant convoys to Iceland, it was in essence stating the United States would ensure the safety of all merchant vessels between North America and Iceland, thus freeing the British for other duties.

By the summer of 1941, Germany had tried to maintain a policy that Hitler had hoped would avoid any sort of confrontation with the United States. With the advent of American warships escorting merchant convoys to Iceland that policy seemed in jeopardy. The first confrontation at sea between the United States and Germany occurred on the 4th of September 1941. The *USS Greer*, a Wickes class destroyer built during World War I, was on a course for Iceland when it came in contact with a German U-Boat,

the U-652. At 12:40 the submarine fired a torpedo at the Greer that was avoided. Reacting aggressively, the Greer launched depth-charges with no noticeable effect. Within an hour the U-652 launched a second torpedo that was also avoided. Unable to determine the location of the U-652, the Greer continued on to Iceland. This incident was immediately relayed to Washington and within a week President Roosevelt announced that "From now on, if German or Italian vessels of war enter the waters the protection of which is necessary for American defense, they do so at their own risk." In the early morning hours of the 17th of October, 1941 five US Navy destroyers were in the process of providing convoy security for the North American – Iceland route when they found themselves in the middle of a U-Boat wolf-pack attack. The destroyer *USS Kearny* was struck by a single torpedo on the starboard side fired by the U-568. This action subsequently caused the death of 11 American sailors. Within hours the *Kearny* was limping for Iceland and repairs. It would be the events of the 31st of October 1941 that would take the first American warship to the bottom of the sea. That day saw five American destroyers escorting convoy HX-156 towards Iceland. In the early morning hours as the light was beginning to break on the horizon, the *USS Rubin James* was hit on the port side by a torpedo fired by the U-552. The resultant explosion literally tore the ship in half and it went down within five minutes. Only 45 of the crew of 160 were rescued. This was the first loss of an American combat vessel in World War II. With these events happening in rapid succession, President Roosevelt worked to have the Neutrality Law amended. By the 13th of November 1941, changes were made to the Neutrality Law that now placed trained US Naval gun crews of between 10 and 20 sailors aboard the merchant ships. These armed guards would crew 3" and 5" deck guns as well as heavy machine guns on the merchant ships allowing them to fight back for the duration of the war. Additionally, the amendment to the law also stated American ships were now authorized to escort merchant convoys into war zones, thus taking them all the way to England.

Later when the United States entered World War II, the Royal Navy along with the Canadians would handle the warship escort duties for the majority of the supply and merchant convoy operations. This would free up the United States Navy to begin to their warship escort duties for the ever increasing troopship convoys. These convoys were critical since they would convey the millions of military personnel involved in Operation Bolero and would eventually make up the D-Day invasion forces. The American troopship operations involved staging passenger vessels in places such as New York and Norfolk for the long and dangerous voyage to England. By mid-1943 the American troopship operations were becoming extremely hectic. Earlier, the British Cunard liners *Queen Mary* and *Queen Elizabeth*, as well as other British and French passenger liners had been moving American personnel to England. Since these vessels were extremely fast, they traveled individually, had few warship escorts and were thought to be able to outrun any U-boats. In order to increase the number of American personnel in England and southern Europe a new type of troopship was created. These troopships would have the ability to travel at 15 knots per hour and were given heavy escorts of destroyers, minesweepers and even a battleship when available. The first of these troopship convoys sailed on the 5th of September 1943 and arrived in England ten days later without incident. However, there were losses of troopships to the German U-boats. Two of these losses included the *USAT Dorchester* and the *SS Leopoldville*. The loss of the *USAT*

Dorchester in the North Atlantic occurred prior to the heavily escorted troopship convoys and is commemorated for the Four Chaplains who gave their life jackets away as it went down in February 1943 with a loss of 675 soldiers and sailors. In December 1944, the S.S. Leopoldville was sunk as it entered the harbor at Cherbourg, France by the German U-486 with a loss of nearly 750 men. Often these losses were “hushed-up” in order to avoid any type of negative impact on the morale of American personnel who had to travel to Europe or within the Pacific Theater. In total approximately 21 American troop transport ships would be lost in World War II. The greatest Allied loss of life may have occurred when the Germans invaded France in May 1940. At that time the *HMS Lancrastria* was dispatched by the Royal Navy to pick-up British and French soldiers at the port of St. Nazaire. The ship was attacked and hit by German dive bombers which caused the ship to capsize with a loss of nearly 6,000 military personnel.

The early convoy routes that the Allied ships would follow to England took them across the Atlantic via two specific routes. Initially, in the first year of the war, the ships would form up at Halifax, Nova Scotia and travel along an eastward route entering British waters at the southern coast of Ireland and to the west of Lands End on the southern English coast. This is where many of the 1939 - 1940 losses to U-Boats occurred. In the second year of the war the convoy routes would still originate at Halifax and St. John's, Newfoundland. From there the convoys would pass eastern Greenland, southern Iceland and enter the British Isles to the north of Ireland and the west of Scotland. The English Channel and the southern coast of England were now under threat from German occupied France and the earlier route was no longer considered to be safe. The area to the north of the British Isles would now see the bulk of losses to the German U-Boats in the second year of the war. With the entry of the United States in the role of convoy escort the merchant ship losses to U-Boats for the remainder of the war would occur up and down the Atlantic coastline and in the area of the North Atlantic to the south of Iceland, with relatively few later losses occurring along the coastline of England. After 1941 some of the convoy routes would also travel across the equator to Southern Europe and the Middle East, while some routes would go around the southern tip of Africa and up to the Persian Gulf or on to Asia via India. However, the greatest number of convoys would continue to travel the North Atlantic route to England. By the end of the war a total of 24,548 merchant vessels would travel in 554 convoys from either Halifax, Nova Scotia or New York, NY on the North Atlantic convoy route.

In order to minimize the losses of merchant ships while in the convoy system at sea the formation of the convoy was creatively organized in such a fashion to reduce the vulnerability to attacking U-boats. The escort warships would be stationed on the corners and along the flanks of the convoy and would patrol in a circular or elliptical pattern moving with the merchant ships. The escorts would have Sonar and later Radar that could be used to detect the presence of the U-boats. While the merchant ships would normally travel at between seven and ten knots per hour the faster escorts could easily traverse back and forth along the formation. The most volatile of the merchant vessels were the ammunition ships and they were placed in the center of the convoy. Also placed in the center were the troop ships, which would afford them a larger degree of protection. Usually the convoy was wider than it was longer, sometimes to a width of six or seven miles and a depth of only two miles. This would serve to present a smaller flank to the

U-boats since this is what they would normally target in their attacks. The exterior of the convoy would be made up of merchant ships carrying raw materials that were considered to be expendable and easily replaced. The size of convoys could range from as few as a dozen ships to well over sixty merchant vessels. Often the number of the ships in a convoy was determined by the weather, the availability of merchant cargo ships and the warship escorts as well as the need for the cargo. These efforts would help to defeat the German attempt to blockade England.

In World War I the Germans hoped to put up an effective sea blockade with their U-boats that would prevent merchant ships from bringing much needed supplies to England. This blockade did not work in 1917 and would subsequently fail again in the Second World War. The British also implemented blockade system in World War I that effectively prevented munitions and war materiel from reaching both Germany and Austria-Hungary. In World War II the British would again begin a blockade that was intended to prevent any type of products or materials that could be used in the German war industries. By January 1940, the Royal Navy had instituted a blockade in the areas of the Mediterranean Sea and the North Sea that for the moment would restrict Germany's access to the outside world. **(See Life Magazine, 15 January 1940)** Unfortunately, once the Germans had overrun Scandinavia, the Low Countries and France in the spring of 1940, the idea of a blockade against Germany became moot. England would need to direct all available naval resources against the German attempts to strangle England's dependence on imports.

The German Surface Raiders

Under the terms of the Armistice agreement at the end of the First World War the German High Seas Fleet would steam on the 21st of November 1918 to the British Royal Navy base at Scapa Flow in the Orkney Islands. Passing in what seemed more like a grand review rather than entering captivity, the entire High Seas Fleet of capital ships including all the battleships, battle-cruisers as well as significant other craft of various types would be interred. It was here that the High Seas Fleet would sit under the control and watchful eye of the Royal Navy. The German ships were without ammunition and unarmed while they waited the signing of the Treaty of Versailles which would determine their fate. As the treaty neared completion a command decision was made by Admiral von Reuter, commander of the High Seas Fleet, to scuttle the entire German fleet and thus deny it to the victorious Allies who would parcel out the ships to each other. On the morning of the 21st of June 1919 the entire German High Seas Fleet was scuttled at the Royal Navy base at Scapa Flow. The act served to infuriate the British far more than any type of pitched battle at sea. As a final result of the Treaty of Versailles, the German Navy that had been the pride and joy of Kaiser Wilhelm II was reduced to a force without any capital ships or submarines and would only retain a token force to provide security for the coastal waters that surrounded Germany in the north. This force included six old, pre-dreadnought battleships and 12 destroyers. After the period of 20 years, the Germans could build replacement battleships, but only with certain limitations. New ships could also be built as long as they were restricted in size and armament. Thus the German Navy was equally reduced as was the German Army and Air Force.

By the 1930's when Hitler came to power the German Navy had already launched the new light cruiser *Emden* in 1925, the *Karlsruhe* and *Köln* followed by 1928 and the pocket battleship the *Deutschland* in 1931. In 1928, Admiral Erich Raeder was appointed head of the navy in the Weimar Republic by German President Paul von Hindenburg. In efforts to sidestep the limitations of the Treaty of Versailles Raeder worked to increase the size of the German Navy. This included funding the construction of submarines in Dutch shipyards under the oversight of German designers. In order to train personnel, methods were taken to put pseudo naval personnel on commercial vessels to gain experience. In 1935 Hitler renounced the conditions of the Versailles Treaty and signed the Anglo-German Naval Treaty which would allow for Germany to build a number of ships that were not 35% of the strength of the British Royal Navy. Additionally, the Germans could again build submarines (U-boats). With this the size of the German Navy (Kriegsmarine) would grow.

At the start of World War II in September 1939 the Kriegsmarine was divided into three elements. The first division was entitled "Armored Ships" and would consist of battleships and battle cruisers. The second division was entitled "Scouting Forces" and would consist of cruisers, destroyers, torpedo boats, and minesweepers. The third division would be the submarines. The submarines were actually the weakest of the three divisions and had received the least support from Hitler. At the start of the war the U-boat force only consisted of 57 vessels, of which only 27 were considered to be sea worthy for the combat of the Atlantic. At the end of the war in June 1945 Grand Admiral Karl Donitz, who commanded the U-Boat force throughout the war, stated "the war was in one sense lost before it began, because Germany was never prepared for a naval war against England . . . A realistic policy would have given Germany a thousand U-Boats at the beginning". What Donitz was referring to was the fact that Hitler did not have any type of appreciation for naval strategy nor did he grasp the significance of sea power. Hitler was called "landsinnig" (land-minded), or someone who focused on European continental conquests rather than sea victories. Additionally at the urging of Reichs Marshall Herman Goering, the Luftwaffe would get priority for allocation of production while the rest of the German armed forces would lag behind. The German Kriegsmarine would find itself lacking the prestige it had enjoyed in the First World War.

The leadership of the Kriegsmarine of World War II would revolve around the two men who wanted to restore to the German Navy the prestige of World War I. These men, Admiral Erich Raeder and Admiral Karl Donitz, were very different, but yet focused on the importance of making successful contributions to the German war effort. Both Raeder and Donitz had to constantly argue with Hitler about the need for a strong navy to keep the British occupied, as they both recognized that the Germany Navy could never hope to actually defeat the British Royal Navy in open combat at sea. These personalities were career naval officers who had distinguished themselves in World War I. Both had managed to stay on in the Reichsmarine naval force of 15,000 men during the Weimar Republic. Each was devoted to Germany. Admiral Raeder was politically aloof, did not like to be around Hitler and never joined the Nazi Party. Admiral Donitz enthusiastically supported Hitler as well as enjoyed being in his mesmerizing presence. Hitler would later state that it was the German U-boats who made the difference in the German naval war against the Allies. It would be Donitz, who was looked upon as being totally loyal to

Hitler in the end, who would be named as the successor head of the Third Reich after the suicide of Hitler. Both Raeder and Donitz recognized the influence that Herman Goering had with Hitler and they realized that the Kriegsmarine would never get the resources that it needed to be totally successful. In May 1943 Admiral Raeder retired from active service as the leader of the Kriegsmarine and was replaced by Admiral Donitz.

At the start of World War II Admiral Raeder reported to Hitler that the only actions the German Navy could effectively take would be confined to defensive operations along the German coasts and a few attacks on the enemy shipping. The small size of the German surface fleet would make it suicidal to risk any action against the British Royal Navy. Also the numbers of the U-Boats in the German fleet would not really support any real efforts to disrupt Allied shipping and communications. The result of this was that Hitler gave his support to the production of the submarine. Prior to 1939 only four U-boats were being completed each month. After the start of the war the production level rose to 20 to 25 each month. In the end, even this number would not be sufficient for Germany's needs.

The early years of World War II would see significant actions involving the German High Seas Fleet in several roles. The Kriegsmarine recognized that it could never hope to win a surface battle with the British fleet. As a result the strategy that was adopted by Hitler would provide the German navy with a small force of "super battleships" and auxiliary support vessels that would be used to attack the great economic sea routes. It was envisioned that the British Royal Navy would have to disperse and spread their warships throughout the world in order to protect their vital merchant shipping fleets. In this fashion the German surface navy could cause a great deal of disruption and destroy the weaker and smaller British warships. However, at the start of the war in September 1939, the German surface navy did not have all the ships that were needed to implement this strategy. As a result the surface actions at the start of the war between the Royal Navy and the Kriegsmarine were more attritional than strategic, losses that Germany could ill afford.

From the 30th of September until the 7th of December the German pocket battleship the *Graf Spee* caused panic and confusion as it roamed the South Atlantic and Indian Oceans. Under the command of Captain Hans Langsdorff, the *Graf Spee* would sink nine British Empire merchant ships and cause the Royal Navy to launch a massive effort to find her. The *Graf Spee* mounted six 11" guns that could easily handle the majority of the British warships it would encounter. After meeting for a resupply and transfer of prisoners with the supply ship the *Altmark*, the *Graf Spee* headed for the merchant vessel rich River Plate estuary on the eastern coast of Uruguay. There the *Graf Spee* came into contact with three Royal Navy cruisers on the 13th of December. In the ensuing battle the *Graf Spee* pounded the *HMS Exeter* into a "blazing shambles" and the *HMS Ajax* was severely damaged. The lone remaining Royal Navy cruiser, the *HMS Achilles* continued to engage the *Graf Spee*. The *Graf Spee* then headed for the neutral port of Montevideo, Uruguay. The *HMS Ajax* and *Achilles* would wait outside the port for the *Graf Spee*. Over the next few days the British ships were refueled and the *HMS Cumberland*, another cruiser, arrived. The *Graf Spee* had taken some 20 hits to her superstructure which would need repair before fighting another major engagement. While the British

had taken a beating at the hand of the Graf Spee, it was now forced into inaction. Over the next several days it became clear that the Graf Spee could not hope to break out and head for Germany, nor could she effectively battle the increasing Royal Navy force waiting for her outside the River Plate. At twilight on the evening of the 17th of December 1939, Captain Langsdorff scuttled the ship with demolitions that blew out the bottom of the ship in the harbor channel. Three days later, Captain Langsdorff wrapped himself in the Imperial German flag of the First World War and took his own life. This first major sea engagement between the Germans and the British did several things. It demonstrated that one German warship could cause a great deal of damage to the Royal Navy and could disrupt the economic lifeline of the British Empire. It also proved that the Royal Navy still dominated the seas with a much greater sized fleet. It should be noted that Captain Langsdorff was praised by Winston Churchill “as a high class person” for his actions at the River Plate. Of the nine merchant ships captured by the Graf Spee none of their crew were killed or injured and when made prisoner they were subsequently treated with courtesy by the Germans. Langsdorff had made his decision to scuttle the Graf Spee because he wanted to spare the lives of his crew in what he saw as a hopeless battle against a greater foe. This engagement was the first of the war in the Atlantic and would set the stage for the remainder of the war.

Prior to the loss of the Graf Spee a squadron of Kriegsmarine vessels were in action laying mines off the coast of England near the Tyne River. On their return trip to Germany they were sighted and attacked by the British submarine *HMS Salmon*. The Salmon managed to hit the cruisers *Leipzig* and *Nurnberg* causing damage that would take between six months and a year to repair. In April 1940 when the German army invaded Norway, the Kriegsmarine provide support for the invasion forces. In the course of these operations the Kriegsmarine would take a beating at the hands of the British. Although the German landings were successful and neutral Norway came under the German Swastika it was done at a price the Kriegsmarine could not afford. In the initial landings of the 8th of April 1940, the German battle-cruiser *Hipper* was able to fatally damage by gunfire the British destroyer *HMS Glowworm* who subsequently rammed the Hipper before sinking. Unfortunately for the British the damage was of little consequence. The actions of the Hipper gave the British Home Fleet pause after it left its anchorage at Scapa Flow in its move to Norwegian waters. To the north, the *Gneisenau* engaged the battle-cruiser *HMS Renown* and suffered minor damage. The *Gneisenau* and *Scharnhorst* were stationed to support the landings in the fiords of Norway by drawing away elements of the British Grand Fleet. The landings at the Norwegian capital at Oslo and the southern coast proved to be disastrous. The heavy cruiser Blucher was sunk on the 9th of April and along the southern Norwegian coast the light cruiser Karlsruhe was also sunk. As the German army landed at Narvik on the 10th of April the Kriegsmarine would find themselves engaged in action against the Royal Navy. Over the period of 10 -13 April 1940 they would lose 11 destroyers and a U-Boat to British guns and torpedoes.

The greatest loss that would severely curtail the German surface raider operations was that of the battleship *Bismarck*. The *Bismarck* and later her sister ship the *Tirpitz*, were the two largest battleships ever built until by the Yamato class Japanese battleships in the Pacific. The *Bismarck* was conceived as a surface commerce raider that would threaten both the convoy system as well as the Royal Navy. The *Bismarck* was intended to

operate as part of a group of combat vessels that would either force the British to confront the German threat directly by stripping the vulnerable convoys of their battleship escorts or have the British prepare battle groups that would try to chase the Bismarck all of the Atlantic. Either way, the Bismarck would cause havoc because the Royal Navy had nothing to match it. On the 21st of May, 1941 the Bismarck, escorted by the Prinz Eugen, left Norway to enter the waters of the North Atlantic with the purpose of disrupting British convoy operations. Located along the coast of Greenland, the battleships *HMS Hood* and *HMS Prince of Wales* engaged the Bismarck and Prinz Eugen. Within five minutes the Hood went down leaving only three survivors on the surface out of 1,419 crew members. The Prince of Wales was repeatedly hit by both German warships and was forced to withdraw. The German menace had now become a nightmare as two impressive British warships suffered at the hands of the Bismarck. As the engagement ended several other smaller British warships began to trail the Bismarck by use of radar. Over the next day the Prinz Eugen broke away and the Bismarck was now alone. Added to the pursuit of the Bismarck were the aircraft carriers HMS Victorious and HMS Ark Royal. Over the next day ships of the British Grand Fleet would converge in the North Atlantic and on the 27th of May engage the Bismarck once and for all. It was over in a matter of hours as the Bismarck was struck by shells from the Royal Navy warships that had virtually surrounded her. Added to the mix were Swordfish torpedo aircraft that launched a total of 71 torpedoes scoring 12 hits. Recognizing the futility of the fight the Bismarck launched scuttling demolitions and within a few minutes, it rolled over and sank with a loss of 2,200 of the 2,300 crew. The loss of the Bismarck now caused a serious evaluation of the strategy for the Kriegsmarine for the remainder of the war. Within the period of one year the German surface navy had been literally stripped of half of their assets. Of the remaining Kriegsmarine warships it would only be the Tirpitz that would cause the Royal Navy the fear and concern that had been seen with the Bismarck.

The Tirpitz was launched after the Bismarck with the intent of complimenting the efforts of the Bismarck against the Royal Navy. However, after the loss of the Bismarck the Tirpitz was ordered to remain closer to home. Thus the new role of the Tirpitz was born. In late 1941 Churchill had promised Stalin that convoys would begin to provide equipment and war materiel to the Soviet Union via the "Murmansk run". This was the dangerous voyage through the Barents Sea to the Russian port at Archangel. What the Germans could not do to the British, the harsh winter weather would. On the 28th of September 1941, the first set of convoys left Iceland and Archangel and arrived safely at their destinations. Initially, the convoy routes were not discovered by the German navy. By the end of 1941, seven convoys had arrived safely in Russia with tanks, aircraft, vehicles and dry goods. The Tirpitz would now be given the mission of disrupting this convoy route and by her presence would constantly keep the British on guard. The most notable action with the Tirpitz and the Murmansk convoys happened in early July 1942. It began with the departure of convoy PQ-17 that consisted of 33 merchant cargo vessels bound for Russia. The convoy was escorted by an Anglo-American force of 19 warships and two submarines. The German Kriegsmarine learned of the convoy and set into motion "Rosselsprung" (knights' move). This involved the Tirpitz, the pocket battleships *Lutzow* and *Admiral Scheer*, seven destroyers, numerous submarines and long range Luftwaffe patrol aircraft. When the British learned of the advance of the German warships they ordered the withdrawal of their Royal Navy warship escort. The merchant

ships were told that they were on their own and to make quickly for the nearest Russian port. In the ensuing days only ten of the original 33 ships would ever make it to Russia. Initially, when the British felt threatened by the Tirpitz battle group, they felt that to engage the Tirpitz with their number would be foolhardy and would place the warships and the convoy at risk. After the Luftwaffe and U-Boats began to sink the ships in PQ-17, the need for the Tirpitz became unnecessary. The Tirpitz and her escorts returned to port in Norway. By the mere presence of the Tirpitz near the Arctic convoy routes, the British Navy felt threatened. It would not be until late November, 1944 that the Tirpitz was finally sunk by the exploits of RAF Lancaster bombers dropping 12,000 pound "tallboy" bombs in the Alten Fjord, Norway. The Tirpitz rolled over and sank. Thus ended the last of the threat of the German surface fleet to the Allied war effort.

Perhaps what could be described as a short lived, but very interesting aspect of the German naval surface war against the Allies was the German use of merchant ships as armed commerce raiders. In the First World War these came to be known as "Q-Ships". These were ships that were very non-descript, non-threatening, and unobtrusive. Unfortunately for the British they were heavily armed with guns, cannons, torpedoes, machine guns and reconnaissance aircraft and were very deadly. These ships would be able to adopt the disguise of any number of real neutral or allied vessels and lure unsuspecting Allied merchant ships into ambushes. These raiders were hard to track down and were able to create confusion among in the sea commerce early in the war. The most successful of the World War II merchant commerce raiders was the ship "Atlantis" under the commander of Captain Bernhard Rogge. The Atlantis was able to engage Allied shipping in the Atlantic, Indian and Pacific Oceans and eventually capture or sink 22 ships with a merchant tonnage of 145,697 tons over the period of 20 months. The Atlantis was itself sunk in November 1941 by a British cruiser. The irony of the actions of the nine ships that were disguised German commerce raiders was that they sank a total of 130 Allied merchant ships with a combined tonnage of 850,000 tons. This represented a total sunk that was far more than had been sunk by the German warship surface raiders such as the Bismarck and Tirpitz. By early 1943 all of the commerce raiders had been sunk and their threat was eliminated. While it was the German surface navy that was the most visible and early in the war perhaps most feared, it would be the German U-Boats that would cause the greatest amount of damage to the Allied merchant convoys. At the start of the war the German U-boat fleet was small, but by the end of the war it would be the U-boat fleet that would prove to be the most deadly.

The U-Boat War

At the start of the World War II the German Navy only had 57 serviceable submarines afloat. At the end of the war there would be a total of 1,175 U-Boats that had been built. Out of this total it is believed that 830 actually saw combat service. Of those that participated in the war at sea, nearly 785 would be sunk or captured in the course of the war. When comparing this statistic to the Allied and Japanese submarine forces, it is clear to see that the war under the Atlantic was perhaps the most deadly place anywhere in World War II. Estimates fluctuate in arriving at a figure of German U-Boat personnel who perished in the war. There were approximately 35,000 men who served in the U-

Boats and roughly somewhere between 29,000 and 31,000 (over 85%) were thought to have died at sea.

At the start of World War II the U-boat arm of the German navy was only beginning its ascendancy within the German armed forces. The Treaty of Versailles had forbidden any U-Boats in the German Reichsmarine. In order to circumvent this, German U-boats were being designed by a German Krupp financed firm in The Hague, Holland. The submarines built at this facility were supposedly intended for sale to Japan, Turkey and Holland. In fact the majority of these materials were being sent back to Germany and were being stockpiled. When Hitler had repudiated the Treaty of Versailles in March 1935, shortly thereafter the first of 14 submarines were assembled from these components in the shipyards at Kiel, Germany. The leading proponent of the German submarine force would be Admiral Karl Donitz. In the First World War Donitz rose to the rank of Lieutenant and in 1916 transferred to the Imperial submarine forces. By 1918 he had risen to the command of the UB-68. In this capacity Donitz was captured in October 1918 after his U-boat had been sunk by the British in the Mediterranean and would subsequently spend nearly a year in captivity. It was in these later years of World War I while serving with the submarines, that Donitz came to the conclusion that large numbers of U-boats operating together could disrupt the supply convoy system of the Allies. This would become the famous “Wolfpack” that would ravage the supply convoys in the first half of World War II during the period that became known as the “Happy Time”.

After the declaration of war on the 1st of September 1939, the German U-boats went on a war footing. It would be only a few days later on the 3rd of September that the U-30, under the command of Fritz Lemp, torpedoed and sank the British passenger liner *Athenia*, which resulted in the death of British civilians and Americans who were fleeing Europe. Lemp had mistaken the *Athenia* for an auxiliary cruiser of the Royal Navy. This act caused concern to the British who thought that the Germans were returning to the unrestricted warfare of the First World War. In fact, Hitler recognized the propaganda value to the British and temporarily forbade any type of submarine attacks against passenger ships. This reluctance on Hitler's part would change within a year. On the 17 of September 1939, the Kriegsmarine U-boat force scored the first of many victories against the British when the U-29 sunk the *HMS Courageous*, a light battle cruiser that had been converted into an aircraft carrier with the loss of nearly 600 sailors. Earlier the *HMS Ark Royal*, an aircraft carrier constructed during the massive 1930's Royal Navy building period, had barely escaped destruction at the hands of the U-39 on the 14th of September. The *Ark Royal* would be sunk by the U-31 on the 13th of November 1941. The greatest and perhaps the most significant early U-boat attack would be the efforts of Lieutenant Gunther Prien, who would become an early household name in Germany. Under the personal direction of Admiral Donitz, Prien was given the mission of infiltrating the most heavily guarded Royal Navy base in the world, Scapa Flow in the Orkney Islands. In the First World War attempts were made on two occasions to send a U-boat to Scapa Flow to sink as much of the Royal Navy as possible. On both attempts, the U-boats never returned. On the 13th of October 1939, the U-47 under Prien's command was able to enter Scapa Flow undetected and sink the World War I era battleship the *HMS Royal Oak* with a loss of 833 British sailors. The demise of the

Royal Oak was a great act of daring that captured the attention of the German populace. For the British, the loss of the Royal Oak was not that significant since the ship had been retired from front line service. However, the fact that the German submarine force was able to enter undetected the greatest Royal Navy base put the British on notice that they could not be complacent about the threat that they now faced. By the end of 1939 the German Kriegsmarine had accounted for 215 merchant ships and had sent two powerful warships to the bottom of the sea.

The U-boat force began to increase in number, but it was still in a precarious situation. In order to attack British and French shipping, the U-boats had to enter the waters around the western coast of Europe by either a dash through the English Channel or a circuitous route through the North Sea and the northern tip of Scotland. In the spring of 1940 the Blitzkrieg of the Wehrmacht dashed through the Low Countries and France. Additionally the western Scandinavian country of Norway would fall to the Germans. Both of these conquests provided large coastlines with harbors and port facilities that could now be used as bases for the Kriegsmarine and in particular the U-boat. This would enable a greater range of operation for the German fleets as well as eliminating the dangerous return voyages to the German shipyards at Kiel or Wilhelmshaven. The harbor cities of Saint-Nazaire, Lorient and Brest in France as well as the Norwegian port cities of Trondheim, Narvik and Bergen would be used as advanced bases for various flotillas of the German submarine service. In addition to Kiel, five of these six bases would be the most active in the terms of the highest number of patrols over the course of the war. Beginning early in 1941 construction was begun on hardened submarine “pens” that would be able to resist any Allied attacks by sea or air. The largest of these bunkers were the structures that were created at Lorient, France. By the time construction was finally halted at Lorient, there were a total of seven bunkers that could accommodate 55 U-boats in the water or in dry dock. By late 1943 the RAF had perfected the use of the “Tallboy” (12,000lbs) and “Grand-Slam” (22,000lbs) bombs that could penetrate the roofs of the U-boat pens. This caused the Kriegsmarine to harden and strengthen the facilities with the addition of more reinforced concrete ceilings that would go to a thickness of up to 10 meters (30’) thick. The U-boat pens along the French coast would always be a priority aerial target over the course of the entire war. Unfortunately, as was discovered in the Strategic Bombing Survey conducted after the war, it was learned that many of the bombing raids on the French port cities caused more damage, death and destruction to the local populace than it did to the German U-boats and their crews.

Now with the use of the Atlantic coastal bases the U-boat war patrols would exact a very large toll on the Allied merchant convoys. The concept of the “Wolfpack” was first introduced in the summer of 1940. With the advent of the convoy system, the Wolfpack strategy was intended to counteract the defensive deployment of the warship escorts. This would entail a group of U-boats being deployed in a picket line across several hundred miles of the North Atlantic. Each U-boat would be approximately 10 – 20 miles apart from an adjacent submarine. When a convoy was detected, the location and heading was transmitted to the U-boat headquarters as well as all the near-by U-boats. The U-boat that had detected the convoy would then begin to shadow the convoy, keeping it under observation. When sufficient numbers of U-boats had arrived at an intersection point with the convoy, the submarines would attack. Usually submarines

would attack the convoys at night and on the surface. The low silhouette of the U-boat was more difficult to detect at night. During the daylight hours the submarines would stay submerged, but yet within a close striking distance of the convoy. During an attack some U-boat commanders, such as Otto Kretschmer, would actually enter the grid of the convoy and move about the Allied merchant ships picking out targets for destruction that seemed to be the most important. In this fashion Kretschmer would eventually sink 44 vessels with a total capacity of 266,629 tons. In March 1941, Kretschmer himself would be captured when his U-boat was sunk by the British, subsequently spending the remainder of the conflict as a prisoner of war. He turned out to be the most successful of all the German U-boat captains in the amount of tonnage and number of ships he sunk in the war and more remarkably he lived to tell about his exploits. This was unusual since 90% of the U-boats captains were killed during the war.

The year 1940 would see the expansion of German operations in the coastal waters and western approaches around Great Britain. This would account for a loss of nearly 500 Allied merchant ships and a tonnage of 2,373,000 cargo tons. The German shipyards would manage to launch just 54 U-boats while 26 would be lost to enemy action. The U-boat fleet still remained relatively small at the close of 1940 with only 82 submarines that were operational. This would begin to change in the year of 1941. German shipyards would now be on an increased production schedule that would see 199 U-boats launched and only 38 lost thereby increasing the fleet to 243 submarines by the end of the year. That year would see a total of 445 Allied vessels representing 2,171,890 tons being sunk. This was the start of what became known among the U-boat crews as “the Happy Time”. This was a period when the submarines enjoyed enormous success with very little risk. During the war the most successful year for the U-boats would be 1942 in which a total of well over 1,000 ships representing six million tons would be sunk. The German shipyards at Kiel and Wilhelmshaven would produce 237 U-boats that year that would be balanced against a loss of 88 vessels. The strength of the U-boat force now hovered at 400 submarine. The year 1942 would also see the U-boats begin to hunt American vessels off the eastern coast of the United States. Earlier the major cities of the US had been reluctant to move to a wartime existence, and as such much of the east coast was still illuminated. After the United States had entered the war against Germany, blackout conditions were implemented which would make it more difficult for the U-boats to see the Allied merchant ships silhouetted against the night. Since the U-boats presence off the east coast of the United States required the submarines to travel a greater distance, the Germany Kriegsmarine introduced the “milkcow” submarine. These were U-boats that were expressly built to serve as fuel tankers and resupply vessels for the wider traveled submarines. This action gave the U-boat fleet a greater range of operation and would allow them to stay at sea longer. With the increased range the U-boats expanded into the Gulf of Mexico, along the eastern coast of South America and the western coast of Africa. Operations in the Mediterranean would begin to trail off as the Allied navies began to support the invasion operations in North Africa and southern Italy in late 1942 and into 1943.

As the U-boats extended the range of their operations, the year 1942 would prove to be the year that marked an increase in the numbers of U-boats lost to Allied warships. This dramatic shift in the war at sea can be indirectly attributed as a result of the British

capture of the U-110 on the 9th of May 1941 in the North Atlantic. The U-110 was initially damaged and forced to the surface in a skirmish against an Allied convoy. Thinking that it was about to be rammed, the German crew abandoned the vessel. However, the British were able to capture the U-110 when the German demolition charges intended to scuttle the submarine did not detonate. As a result the British were able to enter the submarine and seize its' Enigma cipher machine and various classified code books. The U-110 would subsequently sink within days of its capture. This intelligence coup now allowed the Royal Navy to read the coded message traffic to the U-boat fleet which subsequently pinpointed the locations of all submarines. Within months the losses of the U-boats began to mount. For the remainder of the war, the German Kriegsmarine and the U-boat arm never realized that their communications traffic was being read by the Allies.

With the entry of the United States in the war, better utilization of the convoy system, improved anti-submarine weapons such as the "Hedgehog", a multi-barreled mortar and the development of the aerial delivered acoustic torpedo that focused on the sound of the U-boat the period of "the Happy Time" was now over. As a result of the mounting U-boat losses in mid-1943, Admiral Donitz ordered the withdrawal of the submarines from the North Atlantic. Even though 1943 saw the launching of 284 submarines, there was a corresponding loss of 237 U-boats. The total tonnage sunk due to U-boat operations had also taken a drop, with only 451 Allied ships representing 2,395,000 tons being lost in 1943. This was half of the total of 1942. By 1943 the American navy was beginning to make a substantial contribution to the war against the U-boats in the Atlantic. Most notable was the use of combined air and sea resources to locate and subsequently defeat the German submarines.

By 1943 the United States Navy had developed the concept of Escort Carrier Groups that would operate in both the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans. These consisted of shorter deck aircraft carriers that would carry a reduced compliment of aircraft that could be used to support a variety of missions. Often, these "baby flattops" as they were called would be augmented with other warships in order to provide convoy escort security as well as anti-submarine operations. The Atlantic Theater would see the escort carriers USS Bogue, USS Card, USS Block Island, USS Core, USS Croatan, USS Guadalcanal, USS Mission Bay, USS Santee, USS Solomons, USS Tripoli and the USS Wake Island. Of these escort carriers it would be the group organized around the USS Guadalcanal, as their flagship, that would make history. On the 4th of June 1944 this escort group captured the first enemy vessel on the high seas since the War of 1812. **See War Diary of the USS Guadalcanal** The USS Guadalcanal was under the command of Captain Daniel Gallery, an experienced naval officer as well as an accomplished aviator. By mid-1944 Captain Gallery had already sunk the U-544, U-515, and the U-68 while on patrol in the Atlantic. He now was determined to capture a U-boat intact and went so far as to create boarding parties that would be immediately placed on a U-boat should they be able to force one to the surface. On the 4th of June the U-505 was observed as it cruised on the surface by two fighters from the Guadalcanal. These planes were able to quickly direct two destroyers to the location where the U-505 had submerged. After a determined round of depth charges were fired, the submarine popped to the surface. The U-boat commander, had been under the mistaken impression the boat was sinking due to water leaks pouring into the

engine room. In order to save the crew he ordered the ship to the surface. The German submariners quickly abandoned the U-505 and within minutes the boarding party from the destroyer the USS Pillsbury came alongside with a boarding party. Within an hour, the U-boat was secured, scuttling valves were closed and the U-505 was under tow. Four days later the submarine was entering the security of the American base at the Bahamas. The U-505 proved to be a wealth of information with their code books and other classified materials. The U-boat crew was transferred to the United States while the headquarters of the German U-boat Command would not learn of the circumstances that surrounded the loss of the U-505 until the end of the war. Today the U-505 sits in Chicago, Illinois as part of the Museum of Science and Industry along the Lake Michigan waterfront.

As 1944 continued, the losses of U-boats at sea accelerated. Operationally, a total of 241 submarines would be lost in 1944 against 229 that were commissioned into service. The Allied shipping and convoy operations in 1944 would see a steady decline in the number of ships sunk, with the loss of only 131 ships with a cargo of 701,000 tons. The Allied landings at Normandy in June had also caused the U-boat bases on the western coast of France to become concerned with the possibility that the Allies could overrun the facilities and capture any number of U-boats that might be present. The majority of the U-boats were subsequently evacuated by October 1944 to Norway and other German ports in order to continue their missions. The U-boats bases were then turned into what became known as “fortresses” that were ordered by Hitler to hold out to the last man. In fact, the U-boat bases at St. Nazaire and Lorient would actually hold out until the 8th of May 1945 when they surrendered to the 66th Infantry Division. This unit had taken over from the 94th Infantry Division the mission of containing the bases and the surrounding countryside. Rather than risk additional casualties, the 66th spent most of its time with harassing and containment actions. The final U-boat war patrol from France would be that of the U-255 which departed from St. Nazaire in April 1945 to lay some mines along the French coast. By 1945, the German shipyards would only produce a total of 91 submarines and the U-boat force would suffer the loss of an additional 153 vessels. The year 1945 would see the remainder of the German U-boat fleet concentrated around the waters of Great Britain, exactly where it had begun in the spring of 1939.

At the end of the war it is believed that the U-boats of Germany, and to a much smaller extent Italy, accounted for over 2,800 Allied merchant ships. This represented nearly 14,687,000 tons of war materials and cargo that were sent to the bottom of the sea. The last American merchant vessel that was lost in World War II was the 400' S.S. Black Point, which was carrying a cargo of coal to Boston. It was sunk with the loss of 12 crewmen by the U-853 off Point Judith, Rhode Island in the late afternoon hours of 5 May 1945. Within hours two US warships, the Navy destroyer USS Atherton and the Coast Guard vessel USS Moberly, were on the scene. Throughout the night depth charges and bombs were dropped in the areas that had detected sonar contacts for a U-boat. By 11:00 am on the 6th of May, the U-853 was declared to have been sunk. The war would end one day later on the 7th of May 1945. It is curious to note that the headquarters of the U-boat command had sent out orders on the 4th of May that as of 08:00, 5 May 1945 no further U-boats attacks were to take place against Allied shipping. Since the end of the war, questions have been raised as to whether or not the U-853 had

ever received that order. The U-Boats also sunk a total of 187 British Empire and American warships. The deck guns of these U-Boats even managed to down various types of Allied aircraft that had strayed too close.

At the end of World War II Grand Admiral Karl Donitz was interviewed by Allied interrogators in preparation for the Nurnberg War Crimes Trials. Donitz was asked about the utilization of the U-Boats and the tactics employed. Donitz indicated that with the advent of Radar and Sonar in April 1943 the U-Boat had lost its effectiveness. **(See Admiral Donitz Interrogation Report)** At the Nurnberg War Crimes Trial Admiral Donitz as well as Admiral Raeder were brought to trial for “Waging an Aggressive War”. It should be noted that both men were not charged with “Crimes against Humanity” as were other Nurnberg defendants. Admiral Donitz had subsequently replaced Admiral Raeder as the Commander in Chief of the Kriegsmarine in 1943 when Raeder and Hitler had a falling out over naval strategy. In the end Admiral Raeder was found guilty and was given a life sentence. However, due to ill health, Admiral Raeder was released from Spandau Prison in 1955. Admiral Donitz was found guilty and was sentenced to ten years in prison. He was released in 1956 and entered a secluded retirement where he remained until his death in 1980. What is interesting to note about Donitz’s war crimes trial was that he had enlisted the testimony of numerous United States Navy admirals in his defense. Most notable was Admiral of the Fleet Chester Nimitz who had stated that at the start of the American involvement in World War II against Japan, he had issued orders that US submarines were to sink on sight, without warning, any Japanese merchant ships or cargo vessel that were encountered. This was the equivalent of “unrestricted U-boat warfare” by the Allies and similar to the U-boat operations of World War II.

Name: _____ Date: _____

Multiple-Choice Quiz: Lesson Four – The Asian – European Campaigns 1943-1944
(circle the correct answer)

1. What was the term that was used to describe the Allied strategy in the Pacific Theater in which Japanese islands and positions of strength were bypassed?
 - a. Island Bypassing
 - b. Island Hopping
 - c. Island Skipping
 - d. Island Jumping

2. What were the two large Japanese bases in the Pacific that were considered key supply and logistical centers?
 - a. Truk & Saipan
 - b. Rabaul & Guam
 - c. New Britain & Truk
 - d. Rabaul & Truk

3. What are coastwatchers?
 - a. Japanese civilian and military personnel who reported the movement of American ships and forces.
 - b. Missionaries who were looking for the ships that would resupply their isolated church groups
 - c. Australian civilian and military personnel who reported the movement of Japanese ships and forces.
 - d. A special group of Allied commandos who would attack Japanese forces in the jungles of the various islands in the Pacific.

4. Where was the first offensive American ground combat action in the Pacific?
 - a. Guadalcanal
 - b. Saipan
 - c. New Britain
 - d. Tarawa

5. What was the British ASDIC ?
 - a. It was a special type of a depth charge that was used to destroy German U-boats.
 - b. It was a device that was used to communicate with nearby friendly aircraft in order to determine ships locations at sea.
 - c. It was a type of underwater radar that was used to send out a signal that contacted a submerged object which would then be reflected back to the source.
 - d. It was the super secret British program that had broken the cipher code of the German U-boats.

6. Where was the first American ground combat against the Germans in World War II?
 - a. North Africa
 - b. Eastern Europe
 - c. Northern France
 - d. Southern Italy

7. What was the purpose of the “Lend-Lease Act” approved by the United States in March 1941?
 - a. It was intended as a way to provide assistance to the German and Italian governments without cost.
 - b. It was a method that would allow American aid to England or any other country that was deemed of vital interest to the security of the United States.
 - c. It was an Act of Congress that forbade the sale of American goods to any country at war with another.
 - d. It was created as a way to provide US Navy warships to any country that was fighting against Fascism.

8. What incident got General Patton in trouble with his superiors and the American public in the fall of 1943?
 - a. he threatened four British staff officers who would not follow his orders.
 - b. he slapped and threatened two soldiers who were suffering from battle fatigue in a field hospital.
 - c. he shot a German prisoner of war who praised Hitler.
 - d. he refused to follow the orders that were given to him by General Eisenhower.

9. After Mussolini was removed from office in July 1943, what was Hitler's reaction?
 - a. Accuse Mussolini of being a traitor and order the German military in Italy to arrest him and court martial him.
 - b. Hitler had Mussolini brought to Berlin where he remained in permanent exile until the end of the war.
 - c. Capture Mussolini and use him to bargain with the Allies for the exchange of prisoners that had been captured in North Africa.
 - d. Hitler had Mussolini rescued from his captivity and installed in a puppet government in Northern Italy that was controlled by the Germans

10. Why did the Allies bomb the 1,400 year old Benedictine Abbey of Monte Cassino in February 1944?
 - a. The Allies believed that the Germans had stored huge caches of weapons and ammunition in the buildings and crypt.
 - b. The Allies believed that the Germans were using the Abbey for observation and were calling in artillery fire on their advancing forces.
 - c. The Allies felt that the Abbey was not historically significant and it blocked the advance of the VI Corps moving toward Anzio.
 - d. The Allies thought that the monks in the Abbey were providing assistance to the Germans.

Multiple-Choice Quiz: Lesson Four – The Asian – European Campaigns 1943-1944**Correct Answers**

1. **b. Island Hopping**
2. **d. Rabaul & Truk**
3. **c. Australian civilian and military personnel who reported the movement of Japanese ships and forces**
4. **a. Guadalcanal**
5. **c. It was a type of underwater radar that was used to send out a signal that contacted a submerged object which would then be reflected back to the source.**
6. **a. North Africa**
7. **b. It was a method that would allow for American aid to England or any other country that was deemed of vital interest to the security of the United States.**
8. **b. he slapped and threatened two soldiers who were suffering from battle fatigue in a field hospital.**
9. **d. Hitler had Mussolini rescued from his captivity and installed in a puppet government in Northern Italy that was controlled by the Germans**
10. **b. The Allies believed that the Germans were using the Abbey for observation and were calling in artillery fire on their advancing forces.**

LESSON PLAN - DAY FIVE

Subject:

Phase Four (1944 – 1945):

The period of history in Europe and the world as the conflict became a death struggle for both Germany and Japan as the Allied forces entered and conquered the homelands and brought final defeat.

Educational Goals:

The Student will learn facts and comprehend the events pertaining to:

Final Allied planning for the end of the war in Europe and the Pacific

- Teheran
- Yalta
- Potsdam

European Theater:

- The Russian advance toward Germany
- The Allied landings in Northern and Southern France
- The Allied advance across France to the border of Germany

Air War over Europe:

- The operations of the Allied air forces against both tactical (ground support) and strategic (industrial/transportation) targets
- The impact of the bombing campaigns on the German war efforts

Duration of instruction time required:

- 45 – 50 minutes

Required materials:

- World or American History Textbook
- Map of Europe
- Map of Asia

Supplemental materials (included):

- **Photograph of the Big Three, Churchill, Roosevelt, and Stalin at Yalta**
(National Archives NARA file # 111-SC-260486)
This would be the last meeting of the “Big Three” who had led the allies in the early years of the war. Roosevelt was in declining health and would die in April

1945. Churchill would be ousted in the parliamentary elections held in the month after the end of the war in Europe. Stalin would be meeting with Truman and Atlee at Potsdam leading to what some people felt was an advantage in the postwar settlements in Europe.

Question for the Students: How important are individual political leaders to their respective nation? Answer: In repressive societies such as Russia and Germany, the individual leader sets the tone of how the country will be governed. In more democratic societies such as England and the United States the leader has to be more responsive to the will of the majority of the people.

- **V-Mail: February/December 1944**

Mail was considered to be one of the best morale builders (although it could also cause serious problems – bad news) to the average serviceman or women. Often the mail would not be consistent and on any occasion a person could weeks without mail and then on one day get 10 – 15 letters. This process was slow sometimes taking months to reach the recipient. Early in the war the idea of V-mail was introduced to speed the communication process. One page letters would be photographed and placed on a reel that could hold thousands of letters. These reels were then airlifted to/from the United States and at their destination printed out on a smaller page. This would serve to keep everyone better informed of their activities.

Question for the Students: How important is mail (e-mail/instant messaging) to you? Without the internet or the television would mail take on a greater importance? Answer: Without all of the modern inventions students should recognize the importance of mail even though it could be bad. Further, students should be able to comment what they get out of (the importance) the correspondence they have with their family and friends

- **Eisenhower's draft letter of responsibility if the D-Day invasion should fail**
(National Archives)

General Eisenhower was a man who believed in accepting personal responsibility his actions. By the fact that he wrote a letter accepting responsibility for the invasion he was following military tradition that placed accountability on leaders. While he occasionally received criticism from his subordinates and the general public, he did not shirk responsibility.

Question for the Students: Do you think that Eisenhower would exhibit the same level of responsibility and accountability in the environment of today's political climate? Answer: This is a difficult question to answer and the responses may vary. World War II was the first war that provided a combination of print, voice, and film news to the general public in a timely manner. In the current climate news is spread in near instantaneous reporting. This can often influence how the public understands the event, particularly if the media should provide some form of bias.

- **Eisenhower's "Great Crusade" letter to the D-Day invasion forces**

The historic significance of invasion of continental Europe by the Allies was not lost on General Eisenhower. He realized that in order for the event to succeed, he must have the full cooperation and support of all the participants. This letter was intended to serve as a reminder to the personnel that their cause was the cause of freedom.

- Question for the Students: Hundreds of thousands of copies of this letter were prepared and provided to the participants of the invasion. Many saved their copy of the letter as they recognized the significance of the event. What would be going on in your mind when you were given a copy of the letter on the 5th or 6th of June?
- Answer: Based on historic interviews, Allied personnel had felt a variety of emotions. Most likely that would hold true for the responses of the students.
- **SHAEF Top Secret message from Eisenhower announcing preliminary status of the D-Day invasion** (National Archives)
For the leaders of the British and American war effort, the outcome of D-Day would have a significant impact on future plans. In the United States General Marshall, as one of President Roosevelt's key advisors, was anxious to know how the landings progressed so he in turn could advise Roosevelt on the next course of action.
Question for the Students: In reading over the message what do you think is the tone of it? Answer: The message seems to be cautious, but yet optimistic as if to state that everything is going on as planned.
 - **Photographs from the French "Village of the Martyrs", Oradour-sur-Glane**
By 1944 the war was not going well for the Germans. Many of the forces that now were preparing to fight had previously fought in Russia. These men, particularly the Waffen SS, were very brutal in their methods. This unsuspecting French village was the target of a brutal assault that murdered nearly the entire civilian population.
Question for the Students: Why do you think that the Germans committed this act? Answer: Some might accept the fact that the stated objective was in response to the activities of the French underground while others may state it was intended as an act to set an example to discourage those who committed sabotage acts against the Germans.
 - **Nurses of a field hospital who arrived in France via England and Egypt after three years service** (National Archives) # 112-SGA-44-10842.
American women were participating in the Allied operations in both theaters of wars in primarily the medical and administrative fields.
Question for the Students: Do you think that the presence of American women near the battlefield was significant to the individual soldier? Answer: the women who served as nurses reminded the soldiers often of home. The caring and gentle touch of a nurse served to provide a sense of comfort in the war zone.
 - **Photograph of the German V-1 (Vengeance Weapons) over England** (U.S. Army Center for Military History)
The German "Vengeance" weapons were more frightful than they were destructive. While causing death and destruction to the Allies, their uncertainty would at times be very unnerving. But for the most part the people simply accepted the fact that they had to deal with the "V" weapons and went about their normal daily lives.
Question for the Students: How would you have felt during this period? Answer: Responses may vary, but usually the student reactions may reflect some degree of fear over the unknown. Is this fear similar to the perceived threat the United States now has from terrorists?

- **SHAFF “Safe Conduct” leaflet encouraging the German military to surrender**
 Towards the end of the war the Allies had developed very sophisticated psychological and propaganda operations that were intended to undermine the morale of the Axis populace. As the German military grew tired of war, methods such as these leaflets were introduced.
Question to the Students: Do you think that these leaflets were effective?
Answer: The success of the leaflet program was not always apparent. Towards the end of the war, with Germany nearing complete destruction these type items would be more effective.
- **Stars & Stripes Newspaper (European Edition), September 6, 1944**
 The Stars and Stripes did a good job in reporting the news to the military personnel in Europe. This headline tells everyone that the Allied forces have reached the border of Germany and the Siegfried Line.
Question for the Students: How important would the newspaper be to you? Would you accept the news as being accurate? Answer: Most of the soldiers wanted to know what was going on in the war. Most looked at the news as being honest, but certainly slanted to present a positive aspect to the events.
- **Allied directives warning of the German soldiers in American uniforms during the Battle of the Bulge, 21/22 December 1944.** (National Archives)
 The German infiltration of soldiers dressed in American uniforms caused a great deal of uncertainty among the Allies for over a week. A wide variety of techniques were utilized to ensure that personnel were who they said they were.
Question for the Students: What would you do if you were confronted with someone who may be a German in an American uniform? Answer: Student responses might reflect the comment of disarming and detaining the individuals until they could be further identified.
- **Engineer site layout for 8th USAAF Kimbolton Air Field (Cambridge) England, Station 117, home of the 379th (B-17) Bomb Group** (The Mighty Eighth)
 When the airfields that would to be utilized by the Americans in England were built, they followed a pattern that was of a standard design. This layout was normally configured to the topography of the countryside and would have basically the features for every unit.
Question for the Student: With so many American airfields designed the same do you think that it was difficult to locate your own airfield? Answer: While the airfields did look the same, many aircrew personnel noticed certain landmarks that would help them identify their own bases. It was not uncommon to have bombers that had been separated from their formations or that had battle damage to land at any English base they saw.
- **Damaged 8th USAAF B-17’s on their return to England from raids over Germany in 1944** (National Archives) # 111-SC-54600/ 111-SC-62443 / 111-SC-51679
 The most hazardous occupation for the Allies in World War II was that of being on a bomber crew. The combat aircraft constantly took a beating from anti-aircraft weapons and fighters and yet managed to fly. The skill and courage of the

pilot often made the difference in determining if a damaged plane would make it home.

Question for the Student: What do you think would be the most fearful part of the bomber mission? Answer: There were basically three periods that aircrew were the most apprehensive about. The first involved the formation of all the bombers over the skies in England. Taking off in clouds or fog often led to mid-air collisions as hundreds of planes would rendezvous for their mission. Once over Germany, the bombers would encounter enemy fighters that would try to break up their formations. By the time they reached their targets, they would expect to encounter anti-aircraft batteries that ringed many industrial plants.

Instruction evaluation (included):

- Ten question multiple choice quiz
- Answer sheet

Topics to be covered:

1. Planning for the end of the War in Europe and the Pacific
 - Teheran
 - December 1943 - Roosevelt, Churchill, Stalin
 - Yalta
 - February 1945 - Roosevelt, Churchill, Stalin
 - Potsdam
 - July 1945 - Truman, Attlee, Stalin

2. Eastern European Campaign
 - Russia Advances Westward after Stalingrad
 - Operation Citadel
 - Kursk, German – Russian
 - Russia's Advance to the Borders of Germany
 - Warsaw
 - Vienna

3. Western European Campaign
 - The Allied Landings in France
 - 6 June 1944 "D-Day"
 - German Retaliation – Atrocity
 - Allied Breakout from Normandy - Operation Cobra
 - The Liberation of Paris
 - The German Attempts to end the War - July 20, 1944
 - Hitler's Reprisals
 - The Allied Advance on a Broad Front to the Borders of Germany
 - The Siegfried Line and the Westwall
 - Holland and "Operation Market-Garden"

- The Battle for Aachen
 - The Invasion of Southern France in “Operation Anvil – Dragoon”
 - Rhone Valley
 - The German Response and the Hurtgen Forest
 - The German Build-Up
 - The German Ardennes Counter-Offensive
 - The Allied Response to the Bulge
 - The Last German Attack – “Operation Nordwind”
 - Allied Leadership
4. The Air War in Europe
- Royal Air Force Bomber Command
 - United States Army Air Forces
 - 8th / 9th USAAF (England)
 - 12th / 15th USAAF (Mediterranean)
 - Accuracy vs. Saturation Bombing
 - The Ruhr Dams, Hamburg, Schweinfurt, and Ploesti
 - The Results

Planning the end of the War: Europe and the Pacific

Teheran

In January 1943, President Roosevelt and Prime Minister Churchill met at Casablanca in Morocco to make plans for the invasion of Italy. Absent from that meeting was Russian leader Joseph Stalin. Realizing that it would be very important that they meet with him conferences were scheduled for the late fall of 1943 to take place in Teheran, Iran just south of the Soviet Union. It should be noted that Stalin never flew anywhere. He always rode by train or armored vehicle. This was most likely due to his fear of assassination. In October 1943 staffs met in Moscow to plan this conference. At that time it was recognized and accepted that China, under Chiang Kai-shek, would become the 4th major participant in the Allied alliance. In November and December 1943, Roosevelt and Churchill would meet with Chiang Kai-shek in Cairo, Egypt. Russia and Stalin were absent in Cairo, as Russia had yet to declare war on Japan. That would come in August 1945.

Over the three day period of 28 – 30 November 1943 the “Big-Three” met. At this time Stalin was informed that the dates were set at either May or June 1944 for the cross-channel invasion of France. Further General Eisenhower was confirmed by the big three to be the commander of all of the invasion forces. Stalin was pleased because this would finally open up a “second front” and in his mind take some of the pressure off of Russia in the east. It should be noted that while the Allied operations in North Africa and Italy did drain some of the German forces from Russia, Stalin still felt that the British and the Americans had to do more. Stalin felt Russia was making an enormous sacrifice against the Germans in the east.

Yalta

By February 1945, the future of the war in Europe was a foregone conclusion. The Allies would be victorious. The big three would now meet to coordinate their efforts when Nazi Germany fell and what to do in Europe. Yalta Conference held in the Crimea (**See included photograph of “The Big Three”**) was important because it was here that they decided on the zones of occupation for post war Germany and Austria. In 1944 preliminary efforts had been made to assign equal portions to the three victorious powers on a nearly equal basis. Left out of the equation was France. After a great deal of discussion and literal threat France was given an occupation zone bordering their own territory that was made up of areas taken from the British and Americans sectors. France was also given an area in Berlin. The same strategy was also carried out for Austria and Vienna. Four powers, four zones of occupation.

At Yalta cracks began to appear in the coalition of the big three. It was becoming more difficult to resolve political conflicts that kept arising. President Roosevelt had made some political concessions to Stalin on the hopes that Russia would enter the war against Japan quickly after the European war came to a close. In some regards Churchill was concerned with the post war alignment of Eastern Europe and what the Russians might control. With that in mind he looked at a possible Anglo-American advance onto Berlin

before the Russians. Eventually this idea fell out of favor; because the Western Allies seized Berlin they would have to give up a great deal of captured Germany to the Russians based on the earlier agreed zones of occupation. Eisenhower was not willing to sacrifice lives for purely political objectives that had no impact on the outcome of the war.

Potsdam

With the war in Europe over, the big-three met in July 1945 in Potsdam, Germany. Roosevelt was gone, having died in April 1945 and replaced by Harry Truman. In the middle of the conference Churchill would find himself voted out of office in British elections that would return Clement Atlee in his place. The only one of the original big-three to remain was Joseph Stalin. This would begin the spectacle of the split of the alliance that had defeated Nazi Germany.

As a result of the discussions at Yalta, Stalin again stated that Russia would enter the war against Japan within 90 days of the German surrender. This would take place on the 8th of August 1945, after the first atomic bomb was dropped on Hiroshima, when Russia would declare war against Japan.

The discussions at Potsdam did not follow any specific agenda that had been set out in advance. A great deal of the discussions between the Big - Three would focus on the post-war occupation of the former German occupied lands of Eastern Europe and the administration of the defeated Germany and to a lesser extent the administration of Austria. The Americans and British expected that the people of Eastern Europe would be allowed to choose to set up a western style democracy. However, the people of Eastern Europe were all under the control of the Russian Army of Occupation. The Russians had a different thought than the allies, and wanted to create Communist buffer states under the direction of Moscow. These disputes would be handled by a team of negotiators from the three nations and in the end the Russian position for the most part prevailed.

Over the coming years the Cold War would develop and a clear border would emerge between Eastern and Western Europe. That under Soviet control and the other under the Western European democracies and the United States. The emergence of Russian control would be a slow process that would take between three to four years, but by 1950 all traces of any democratic reform in Eastern Europe had vanished, being replaced by Soviet Communist style governments.

The Eastern European Campaign

Russian Advances after Stalingrad

With the German defeat at Stalingrad, the Russian Army became resurgent and realized that the Wehrmacht could indeed be destroyed. However, the Russian military leaders, particularly General Zhukov realized that this victory on the Volga was actually only a small part of the German military machine. In order to continue to build on their successes, the Russians launched their great winter offensive of 1943. This was a real

Russian offensive that had been launched from a perspective that included gaining strategic objectives. One goal of course would be to take pressure off of those fighting in the south at Stalingrad by hopefully diverting any German replacements to the north rather than to the south. Beginning on a front from the outskirts of Moscow they pushed westward along a 1,500 mile line and in many places were able to gain the territory that had been lost in 1942. This included recapturing the large Russian cities of Kursk and Kharkov which had suffered very badly under the German occupation.

It can be said that a contributing to the success to the Russian advances was the activities of Soviet partisan and guerilla groups that operated behind the German lines. In some areas, the German military would have to divert entire divisions of soldiers in their efforts to halt the sabotage in their rear areas. This helped to prevent further German forces from being engaged in the Russian offensive. Eventually the Russian attacks began to falter, more from a lack of supplies and logistics capabilities than from the defensive efforts of the Germans. Within a week of the Soviet success, the Germans under Field Marshall Erich von Manstein launched a strong counteroffensive in February and by March 1943 the city of Kharkov had been retaken from the Russians. The result of the Russian advances in the north and the German advances in the south was a bulge in the front lines that penetrated the German front to a depth of 75 miles. Kursk to the north remained under the Russian control, while Kharkov to the south, Russia's fourth largest city, remained under German control. These successes for each side proved to be short lived as the Russians and Germans now faced the spring thaws that turned the Russian countryside into a quagmire of mud and impassible terrain. This brought on a period of relative calm that would last for three months as each side began to make preparations to renew the conflict once the ground had become more stable.

Over the course of the next three months both the Germans and the Russians planned offensive operations that would hopefully, in their minds, bring them victory in the east. The Russian military was now flush with their recent successes and desired to continue to their drive to the west. The German high command realized that it needed to erase the bulge in their lines that formed the Kursk salient. It should be noted that the Russian strength in terms of forces alone outnumber the Germans by 4 -1. Anticipating a German offensive at the Kursk salient, the Russians prepared a defensive posture that would stretch in-depth nearly 100 miles. Each successive line of defenses would support the forces to their front and in this manner they would be reinforcing each other.

In the terms of the magnitude of World War II and subsequent conflicts of the postwar period, the battle that would begin in July 1943 would come to be known as the largest armored conflict in history. The conflagration would see over two million men, 5,000 aircraft and over 6,000 armored vehicles involved. It is interesting to note that this number of armored vehicles and combatants far exceeded the numbers that would be seen on the western European front in the summer of 1944 and thereafter.

Operation Citadel

On the 5th of July, the German Army Group South under Manstein and supported General Kluge's Army Group Center attacked the shoulders of the Salient from the north at Orel

and in the south at Belgorod. The first lines of Russian defenses were quickly overwhelmed. But suddenly the German forces became bogged down in the subsequent Russian belts of defense that began to take a very heavy toll of the German armored formations. Within the next ten days the Germans would find that they had only been able to advance a few miles into the Soviet lines. When the German assault had been blunted, the Russian forces all along a two hundred miles front attacked with fresh forces that caught the Germans off guard. Very quickly, what had been intended to be a great German offensive, turned into a German retreat with enormous losses in both men and material. Losses have been difficult to determine but they are believed to have included nearly 1,650 Russian armored vehicles that were total losses to the German loss of 1,900. However, it must be noted that the Germans losses included in this number account for approximately 1,500 armored vehicles that were salvaged from the battlefield and eventually repaired to fight again. This clearly makes the point that the Russian could afford losses because of their high rates of production, while the Germans could not.

Russia's Advance to the Borders of Germany

Continuing their push westward the Russians moved to retake Smolensk in the north and Kiev in the Ukraine. The Russian front had stabilized along the Dnieper River which was quickly bridged in a number of locations. These actions led to the capture of these cities by November 1943. Further action to the south in the Crimea had allowed the Russian forces to cut off the Germans trapped on the peninsula. As the winter began, the Russian forces made a further advance into the Pripet Marsh area that forced the German forces to give up even more ground. Never again would the Germans launch any type of offensive operations in the east and never again would the soviet forces be driven back.

In early January 1944, the Russian forces were finally successful in their goal to liberate the city of Leningrad along the Northern Baltic Sea. This city had survived what had become an epic siege by being supplied over the frozen ice of the Gulf of Finland. Over the course of three days, the Russians began an attack that quickly overwhelmed the German 18th Army and sent it reeling back 60 miles to the hastily prepared "Panther" position which would hold out for a longer period of time. Thus along the entire eastern front, Germany was now in retreat.

In the Ukraine the fighting continued its brutality and attrition with overwhelming Soviet forces. Everywhere along the 1,700 miles of front, the Germans could not halt the Russian advance. A German field force of two shattered Corps, which was made up of three infantry and one panzer division, had been surrounded and cutoff, creating what became known as the "Cherkassy Pocket". Through sheer determination of will and a desire not to leave their comrades in the hands of the Russians, a relief force eventually was able to help them to break out. But this was one of the few exceptions as the Russian forces continued to overpower the Wehrmacht by sheer numbers. Most German units were now only concerned with their own survival and would not devote their limited resources to help other units.

By May 1944 the only part of Soviet lands that was still under the control of the Wehrmacht was that of the area of Byelorussia (Belorussia), the lands between the Baltic

States in the north and the agricultural plains of Russia's breadbasket, the Ukraine to the south. On 22 June 1944, the third anniversary of the initial German invasion of Russia which was an irony not being lost on the Russians, they launched an assault along a 350 mile front that would soon see great gains in the south while to the north the Germans would only very grudgingly give way. By September the Russians were at the gates of Warsaw at the Vistula River, had moved through Romania and had begun to enter Hungary. By the end of December Budapest was encircled and in Russian hands. When the Russian troops had crossed the Danube in September 1944, the government of Bulgaria withdrew from the Axis powers and joined the Russians against Germany.

Some controversy has emerged about the Russian failure to enter the Polish capital in the summer of 1944. Inside the city the Poles very heroically rose up on the 1st of August 1944 against the Germans. They had expected support from the Russian forces which did not come. The rebellion was put down with utmost brutality by the Germans and ended on the 30th of September. This would eventually serve to create animosity between the Russians and the Poles. Some have thought that the Russians waited deliberately to allow the Poles and Germans to destroy each other, thus making it easier for them to take the city later. Others have suggested that the Russians wanted to allow the Germans to destroy any future Polish resistance, so when the Russians eventually occupied the city they could easily place their own puppet rulers in place and control the country. The truth probably lies somewhere in-between. When the Russians had arrived outside of Warsaw, they had been fighting a very hard campaign and were reduced logistically in terms of ammunition and equipment. This could possibly be a reason that would account for their delay on the banks of the Vistula River.

To the south and the conflict in the Balkan States, the Russians had made equally impressive gains. The Russian forces with the added support of the Bulgarian army were able to capture Belgrade on the 20th of October. In this action they had the help of a partisan leader named Josip Broz who would become the dictator of Yugoslavia after the war ended under the name of Tito. In the far north the Russians moved across the Baltic Republics between October and December 1944. Capturing what had been a buffer between Germany and Russia, the war was now on Germany's doorstep. Finally these Russian assaults were halted at the border of East Prussia by counterattacks.

It should be noted that in each of these German operations to delay and halt the Russian advance, the German high command was being issued orders by Hitler that seemed to be suicidal to the commanders in the field. Repeatedly, Hitler would order that fortress cities be established that were to literally hold out "until the last man". Some of these cities such as Königsberg in East Prussia would hold out until the end of the war. Further, Hitler would not allow strategic retreats by the German forces once their front lines had been breached by the Russians. Each of these actions further contributed to the enormous losses in personnel and equipment that the Wehrmacht was experiencing up and down the entire front lines. In some cases officers were disobeying Hitler in order to save their own forces from complete annihilation. Some of these individuals were not disciplined such as General Kluge, while others were relieved from their commands as was Field Marshall Manstein. This demonstrated a total lack of a unity of command within the German military hierarchy. On the other hand, the Russian military now

demonstrated a distinct ability to effectively manage their forces and deploy operationally in an effective manner. The roles had reversed themselves from the German invasion of 1941.

On the 12th of January, along the Polish frontier, the Russians launched 22 armies that comprised of 2.2 million men against a greatly reduced German army of 400,000 men that made up Army Group Center. The Russians easily broke through along a 300 mile wide gap and were able to penetrate to a depth of nearly 100 miles. By the 3rd of February this advance had now covered over 300 miles and reached the banks of the Oder and Niese Rivers, less than 40 miles from Berlin. Temporarily stalled, Russian forces quickly turned northward, capturing what was left of East Prussia and the fortress cities of Danzig (30 March) and Konigsberg (9 April) halting at the Baltic Sea. For the Russians the end was in sight. To the north and the south of the Byelorussian and Ukrainian fronts German forces had been isolated and either surrounded or neutralized in places like the Balkans, East Prussia and the Baltic Republics. The Axis forces in these areas proved to be of no use to Hitler in the final months of the war. Additionally fortress cities like Breslau (held out until 6 May) in Silesia in the east and the U-boat bases in France of Lorient (surrendered 8 May) and St. Nazaire (surrendered 8 May) in the West would tie down limited Allied forces, but would ultimately not have any impact on the final stages of the war.

The Russians would continue to follow a broad front approach to their westward advance. This was much the same as the strategy that would be adopted by Eisenhower once the Normandy landings and breakout had taken place. To the south the 2nd, 3rd and 4th Ukrainian Army Groups aggressively moved through the winter of 1945 to the edge of Austria and by early April 1945 were poised only five miles outside of Vienna. Vienna would fall by the 15th of April to the Russians. Prague, like Vienna, did not fall to the Russians until the closing days of the war in May 1945. It should be noted that Prague would see a revolt from within in the closing days of the war that did more damage to the city than did either the German or Russians forces that were in the area.

For the Russian forces and the Russian military strategy that was developed by Stalin and his general staff, the goal of their armies had always been to capture Berlin. The final year of the war on the eastern front saw the greatest amount of pressure being brought to bear in the geographic areas that led Berlin. The campaigns to the north and south in these final battles of the war were envisioned as supporting campaigns to help to achieve this goal. Thus, after nearly four years of fighting, the Russians had advanced over 2,000 miles from the gates of Stalingrad to the outskirts of Berlin. The final stage was now set.

The Western European Campaign

Allied Landings in France

In the period leading up to that memorable date in history, 6 June 1944 England had become literally a floating arsenal. Once America had entered World War II it was recognized that adequate supplies, equipment, and personnel would have to be built up in advance of any planned invasion. The build up of the invasion forces was code name

“Operation Bolero”. Due to the increased presence and success of the German U-Boat operations, the initial build-up went rather slowly. By the end of the two year build-up period the Allies had moved 1.5 million soldiers to England (**See included V-Mail, February 1944**) and nearly five million tons of supplies and equipment. In addition to the munitions, tanks, armored cars, trucks and aircraft over 1,000 locomotives and 20,000 railway cars were sent. This would serve to quickly move the needed equipment along a rail system that would probably suffer heavy damage in pre-invasion and post-invasion periods. Because the Allied planners recognized the fact that they would likely not be able to secure port facilities for their deep water draft transport ships an artificial port was created. These artificial facilities were termed as “Mulberries” and would be towed from England, established at beach bridgeheads and be used for the expedient discharge of cargo.

From early in 1943 entailed plans for a cross-channel attack had been under way in England under the direction of British General Frederick Morgan. Earlier Morgan had gained substantial experience in planning amphibious operations in the North African “Torch” landings and for the planning of the invasion of Sicily in “Operation Husky”. This gave him a very unique insight for what would be demanded when the cross-channel invasion would occur. Given the code name “Operation Overlord”, Morgan would spend the next nine months establishing the strategy and tactics as well as the logistical needs of the invasion forces. In December 1943, General Eisenhower was named as the Supreme Commander of the Allied Expeditionary Force which would subsequently evolve into the term that would describe Eisenhower as Commander, Supreme Headquarters Allied Expeditionary Forces (SHAEPF). In order to maintain a degree of collation warfare with the British, Eisenhower selected as his principal commanders British officers. Leading the land operations would be General Montgomery, while the naval operations would be under Admiral Bertram Ramsey and Air Chief Marshal Arthur Tedder became responsible for the theater’s air forces. Each of these officers would have deputies who would command their own respective forces. For the Americans this would be General Omar Bradley on the ground and General Carl Spaatz in the air.

Allied strategy called for the quick establishment of a landing area that would allow for a protected buildup of forces and for the rapid exploitation of the forces once a breakout had occurred. The area chosen for the cross-channel landings was Normandy for a variety of specific factors and characteristics suitable to allied planners. The first was range of the allied air cover from Southern England that would keep the German planes from attacking the beaches. Next was the ability of allies to resupply invasion forces. Thirdly was the nature of the terrain on the coast and how well it could support the invasion forces. The last two concerns was the immediate geography behind the coast and well the allied forces could exploit their break out and how the Germans were arrayed defensively. All these measures taken into consideration pointed to Normandy. The one area that would have been equally a good choice was that of the Pas-de-Calais which is the shortest distance between England and France. That area was dismissed as a possible landing site since the Allies knew that the Germans had heavily fortified the area. It should be noted that anticipating the German interest in the Pas-de-Calais, the Allies mounted a deception operation code named “Fortitude”. Operation Fortitude created a fictional army group under the command of General Patton that would succeed

in tying down significant German forces when D-Day eventually did come. On the 6th of June 1944, Hitler was convinced that the Normandy landings were only a diversionary attack while the real thrust would come in the Pas-de-Calais. He would hold this idea for several days, thus withholding key German units who were desperately needed in the defense of Normandy.

In the final planning for Normandy, there was one aspect of the landscape in Normandy that eluded the Allied planners. This became known as the Norman “Bocage”. Bocage can best be characterized as the dense, tangled shrubbery that had grown up over centuries and that served to provide natural fences for various pastures and estates. For a month these areas would serve as individual defensive killing grounds for the Germans who would hold up the Allies in their assaults in this slow process of attrition. The Allied planners were unaware of the bocage and what effect they might have on the invasion forces. The effect was to cause heavy losses to the Allied forces as they had to fight for each and every pasture in Normandy. It was reported that an enterprising young American Engineer Sergeant designed a device from steel rails that could be welded on the front of the tanks and could be used for ripping out the bocage. This contributed very heavily to breakout and when Patton heard of the ingenuity of this soldier he awarded the young man a Bronze Star Medal.

6 June 1944 “D-Day”

Originally, the cross-channel invasion had been scheduled for 5 June 1944, but due to weather concerns Eisenhower had the date postponed to the 6th of June. Even on that date, the weather did not seem to cooperate, but the go ahead was given by Eisenhower. It should be noted that he felt that he had to accept full responsibility for the operations and had even drafted a short address that he would read if it failed. **(See included draft of Eisenhower’s speech)** The invasion armada that had been assembled is often described as the largest invasion force in the history of the world. Comprising of over 5,000 warships, transports and landing craft the Allies moved toward Normandy. Overhead was a force of 9,000 heavy and medium bombers supported by a variety of fighter aircraft. Well over 100,000 men were prepared to land in a bridge that stretched from miles inland on the English coast to the beaches of Normandy. Eisenhower had also prepared a one page letter to all of the participants of these landings that was given to them prior to their departure for the continent. This helped to coin the phrase that World War II was often known as: “The Great Crusade”. **(See included “Great Crusade” letter)**

The initial assault phase was code named “Operation Neptune”. This called for the seaborne landing of five divisions and three airborne divisions. The invasion front was to be nearly 50 miles wide. The American 82nd and 101st Airborne Divisions would secure the western shoulder of the landing beaches while the British 6th Airborne would secure the eastern end. Five beaches were designated for the landings. To the west “Utah” and the 4th US Infantry division, followed by “Omaha” with the US 1st and 29th Infantry divisions, “Gold” with the 50th British Infantry Division, “Juno” with the 3rd Canadian Infantry Division and “Sword” at the east with the 3rd British Infantry Division. The night before the landings the airborne forces had been dropped over the Normandy

countryside with very few units actually ending up in their correct drop zones. While this inhibited the constitution of the individual airborne fighting units on the ground, it significantly contributed to the false impression the Germans developed thinking that there were more airborne forces than there really were. Within the first day the majority of the Allied airborne units had consolidated and linked up with the seaborne forces. German resistance was the weakest at Utah beach while it was the greatest at Omaha beach. It was at Omaha that the Allies took the bulk of their casualties for Normandy. By the end of the first day German defenses along the coast had crumbled and a firm, but precarious foothold had been established. The Allies suffered a total of nearly 9,000 casualties that first day, with approximately one-third being killed. Most significantly, the Allies had managed to land over 100,000 men that first day alone. **(See included Eisenhower message to General Marshall at the start of the D-Day landings)**

Because of several deception operations, primarily “Operation Fortitude”, that the Allies had developed, to include keeping General Patton in Kent (England) with the fictional 3rd U.S. Army, the Germans did not react immediately to the invasion in Normandy. Hitler, who was normally living now in a nocturnal world, was sleeping when the invasion landed. His staff was reluctant to wake him, thus preventing an immediate decision. Once Hitler was made aware of the landings, he refused to accept them as the “real” invasion. Instead he believed they were a diversion with the “real” landings coming as Pas de’ Calais, across from the English coastal areas where Patton’s fictional 3rd Army was thought to be located. Only after the passing of several days was Hitler convinced of the genuine nature of the landings at Normandy, at which time he released some of the infantry and armored divisions from the Pas de’ Calais sector for the Normandy area.

Stubborn and skill German tactics delayed the Allied advance in a painful manner. The key port of Cherbourg on the Cotentin Peninsula would not fall to the Allies until late June. Sadly that port, with its harbor facilities, had been heavily damaged in the fighting and would not be able to help the allies for some time to come. The Norman cities of St. Lo and Caen held up the Allied advance and seriously put the timetable behind schedule. The German commander of the Normandy defenses was Field Marshall Rommel from North Africa. He put to great use the experience he had learned in his desert campaigns. On the day of the invasion, the German forces had not been expecting any activity. Many of the senior officers had left the area and were taking part in map exercises and war games. Rommel had departed to Germany to celebrate his wife’s birthday. Additionally, Hitler when informed of the Allied landings thought it to be a mere diversion and did not allow for the immediate reinforcement of the defenders. Thus the Allies gained a significant advantage in the landings.

By the 1st of July, the Allied positions at Normandy consisted of a front that was over 70 miles wide and varied in depth from being 25 miles deep inland to holding an area that had penetrated only five miles. However within this beachhead were well over 1 million soldiers, 177,000 vehicles of various sizes and half a million tons of supplies. These areas were firmly under the control of the allied air forces who had maintained complete supremacy of the skies. Although they had been held up in the Norman countryside that was all about to change.

German Retaliation -- Atrocity

One of the worst German atrocities that were to occur in France in World War II happened shortly after the allies had landed in Normandy. In response to the invasion the German high command began to move forces northward to get into positions that could at least blunt the allied bridgehead. On the 10th of June 1944, the small, sleepy Limousin village of Oradour-sur-Glane was visited by the 3rd Company, 1st Battalion, SS Regiment "Der Furher", part of the 2nd SS Panzer Division "Das Reich".

Several days earlier the French resistance had begun harassing attacks on the lines of communication, railways road networks for the northern bound German forces in order to hinder their advance to Normandy. The majority of these attacks slowed down the German advance, but in the end only delayed their eventual arrival. Following the example of the destruction of the town of Lidice (June 1942) in the Czech Republic, a German SS Major determined that the French resistance should be "taught a lesson". In the early afternoon of the 10th of June, the town of Oradour-sur-Glane was surrounded by 200 combat SS soldiers. Nearly all of the occupants of the village were rounded up in the town square -- fairground. Some people were able to avoid this round-up and took up hiding places nearby. Women and children were then marched to the church of Oradour where they were herded inside. The massacre began at approximately 4:00 pm and within an hour 642 men women and children were murdered. Over the course of the next 24 hours the town was burned to the ground and thoroughly looted by the SS. Finally, these Germans continued on their way to Normandy. The German SS officer who had ordered the massacre was himself killed in the fighting surrounding Normandy as was nearly half of the unit. In the end fifteen residents of Oradour were able to escape the carnage. This was accomplished by means of hiding, escaping from the church or by simply "playing dead". **(See included before and after photographs of Oradour-sur-Glane)**

"Operation Cobra" – Breakout

The highest ranking American officer to be killed in the European theater was Lieutenant General Leslie J. McNair who was responsible for the training of the U.S. soldier as the Commander of the U.S. Army Ground Forces. In early July, McNair had come to Europe to see how well the soldiers his organization trained were doing in combat. It was the 25th of July 1944, 11:00 when the Allied aerial armada came over the frontlines of the Americans. Within minutes the Germans on the other side were being crushed in a storm of iron and steel that totaled 4,200 ton of explosives. However, within a short time that Allied bomblines began to move towards the American lines. In a matter of seconds 110 Americans were dead and nearly 490 had been injured. Among that 110 was General McNair. These friendly fire casualties were a consequence of the total war that was being waged in the cauldron of Normandy. Some of the first U.S. Army medical units to arrive on the continent to care for the wounded soldiers were mobile field hospitals that contained numbers of female Army Nurses. In addition to caring for the wounded soldiers, these ladies provided a great morale boost for the soldiers since it was considered that they represented the wives and girl friends that they left behind. **(See included photograph of US Army Nurses)**

The effects of the aerial bombardment allowed the American forces to breakout from the Norman bocage and begin to flank the German positions to the west. With the British pushing to the northeast at Caen for a breakthrough, the Americans were now able to take advantage of their armored forces speed and mobility. Quickly moving south, the Americans opened a gap at Avranches. This would then allow the American's to push large numbers of forces through the German defenses and to their rear. The countryside that opened up was perfect for the doctrine of mobile warfare. One of the greatest practitioners of this tactic in World War II was General Patton. On the 1st of August 1944, the Third US Army was activated under General Patton. To Patton's flank, General Courtney Hodges took command of the 1st US Army from General Bradley, while General Bradley became Commander of the 12th US Army Group that would include Hodges and Patton. In the British zone to the north of the Americans, General Montgomery would be in command of the 21st Army Group which would be made up of the Canadian 1st and the British 2nd Army.

The initial objectives that were assigned to General Patton were to swing to the west and cut off the Brittany peninsula and attempt to seize the channel port cities of Brest and St. Malo. Because of the destruction caused by the heavy fighting for the port cities of Brest and St. Malo they proved to be of no real use for the Allies when finally captured. Besides the Normandy beaches, it was still critical for the Allies to seize port facilities in order to supply their rapidly advancing forces. The Atlantic port cities of Lorient and St. Nazaire were also targeted, but did not have the importance of the English Channel facilities. Both of these cities were eventually surrounded by the fall of 1944, but held out and did not surrender to the Allies until the end of the war on 7 May 1945. Within a month of the invasion the English Channel islands, which were a mere 14 miles off the coast of France, had been isolated from the mainland. The German garrison of 27,000 men would hold out until the end of the war before finally surrendering to the British.

With Patton's success in Brittany, his orders were adjusted to allow him to swing to the south of the retreating Germans and outflank them in the process. With the strength of the Allied advance, Hitler ordered the German 7th Army under Field Marshall Kluge to attack westward in an attempt to split the two American army groups. However what that attack ended up doing was to create a pocket that enveloped the Germans on three sides. This became known as the "Falaise Pocket". Both Bradley and Montgomery recognized the opportunity that this provided to capture an entire German Army. To the south General Patton and his rapidly advancing Third Army were ordered to attack to the north halting at Argentan while Montgomery's First Canadian Army would push south from Falaise and link up with Patton's forces, thus sealing the pocket. Once the Germans realized what was happening to them they put up a furious resistance that somehow managed to halt the Canadians. This subsequently allowed large numbers of Germans to escape to the east. In the end when the Falaise Gap finally closed the Allies had bagged 25,000 German prisoners and nearly all the equipment, armor, artillery and vehicles of the German Seventh Army. After the war this failure to effectively close the Falaise Gap would cause friction between the American and British ground commanders.

To the north Montgomery's 21st Army Group moved in tandem with the coastline along the English Channel. His goal was to seize as many port facilities as possible to ease the Allied logistical supply chain. Additionally, his forces were also instructed to seize or destroy as many of the V-1 and V-2 launch sites as possible. The Germans had been bombarding London and southern England with the V-1's since June from the Pas de Calais area. **(See included photograph of V-1 attack on London)** Later the German missile and rocket attacks would include the V-2's. These would later be directed at the Allied port facilities on the continent, such as Antwerp, in efforts to disrupt the flow of the supplies that were necessary to wage the war.

The Liberation of Paris

The race for Paris and the natural barrier of the Seine River was on. Eisenhower recognized that if the Allies were forced by the Germans to fight for Paris the struggle would be long, destructive and costly. Hitler had issued the orders that Paris was to be destroyed as the Germans retreated. Fortunately for history and the French nation, the German commander of Paris conveniently overlooked Hitler's directive.

In early planning General Eisenhower had intended to bypass Paris for many reasons. Most importantly he did not want his forces to be bogged down in slow house-to-house fighting, nor did he want to have to accept the responsibility for the feeding of millions of French in the capital. However, he later recognized the political necessity of a secure Paris and the need to continue to utilize his French forces and the French population against the Germans. To capture Paris would serve as a major psychological boost to the Allied efforts and hopefully provide even more support for the Allies from the French. To that effect the British in the north moved toward Rouen and the goal of capturing the port at LeHavre. Within nine days from the closure of the Falaise Gap the Allies were at the Seine River and in Paris. To the south Patton's Third Army was skirting around Paris after liberating Orleans and Chartres and pushing to the east. Hodges First Army moved toward Paris with the French 2nd Armored Division under General Leclerc attacking from the west and the US 4th Infantry Division attacking from the south. On the 25th of August 1944 Paris was liberated after four years of German occupation. Within days Charles de Gaulle was in Paris and found himself jockeying with Communists and other groups for what would be control of postwar France.

German Attempts to End the War – 20 July 1944

Resistance to Hitler since his assumption of power in 1933 had been building throughout the German state. Not widely known are the various attempts to kill Hitler, even before the Nazi party achieved the absolute control of Germany. As these attempts grew Hitler took to having a personal bodyguard with him everywhere, wearing a steel cap in his hat, using bullet proof vehicles and having "food tasters" before he would eat his meals.

Prior to the start of the war in September 1939 there were a few groups of Christian intellectuals who opposed Hitler as well as the German Communists. As Germany began to suffer defeat the resistance grew, particularly among the upper level German military aristocracy, who saw that Hitler's continuance in power would mean the total collapse

and ruin of Germany. Some of these individuals were even in contact with Allied intelligence agencies in Sweden and Switzerland. The British also went so far as to provide an assortment of explosives that could be used in an assassination of Hitler.

The most famous attempt on Hitler's life took place on the 20th of July 1944 in his East Prussia headquarters known as the "Wolf's Lair". Led by Prussian aristocratic Colonel Klaus von Stauffenberg, who had been severely wounded in North Africa, the plot to kill Hitler almost succeeded. The plot against Hitler had been developed in the circles of the upper ranks of the German military. Very few officers were actively involved with the mechanics, but many were aware something was going on and some were selected to take a role in the post-Hitler government that was intending to come to peace with the Allies.

Attending an afternoon briefing to provide information about the German Home Army, Stauffenberg carried a very powerful bomb that was intended to leave no survivors. Succeeding where others had failed, Stauffenberg was able to place the bomb within six feet of where Hitler stood. Shortly thereafter he departed the room to take a "phone call". Moments later a staff officer next to Hitler bumped the briefcase, and to get it out his way placed it behind the solid oak leg of the conference table, away from Hitler. Within 30 minutes a huge explosion rocked Hitler's conference room. At first the security personnel had thought that Allied aircraft had somehow managed to drop a bomb. That was quickly dispelled and it was realized that German military personnel had planted a bomb. Hitler survived the explosion by luck; particularly this afternoon conference was moved from the underground concrete bunker to the upstairs wooden building that subsequently dissipated the force of the explosion, thus allowing Hitler to survive.

The aftermath of the failed assassination attempt was to create a more intensely paranoid Hitler. Colonel Klaus von Stauffenberg paid the same day with his life as did many other conspirators. In the end nearly 5,000 German military and their families were arrested and either brutally put to death or were imprisoned. Tragically, one of the more noted worthy German military leaders to die was Field Marshal Rommel. Implicated by others, Rommel was aware of the plot, but did not participate. Recovering from wounds he sustained in Normandy in July 1944, Rommel was offered the choice of a public trial and disgrace or a public funeral as a hero if he were to take poison by his own hand. Thus died one of Germany's most able field commanders. The Allies learned of Rommel's death and attributed it to his earlier wounds. It was only after the war that the actual truth was learned about the circumstances of his death.

The July assassination attempt left Hitler a broken man. Not giving up any bit of his hold on the German people, he would now make even more erratic and irrational judgments that would result in greater destruction for Germany. While Hitler had only trusted a small group of military advisors, he now trusted basically no one, but a few close intimates. Personnel coming in his presence were searched and the contents of all packages were thoroughly examined. From this period until the end of the war, Hitler's military judgment was clouded and would cause the total ruin of Germany.

Broad Front Approach to Germany

In May 1944, a month prior to the actual D-Day landings, the SHAEF planners under the guidance of Eisenhower developed different ideas on the overall strategy that would be followed once the Allied forces had become established on the continent. This strategy evolved over time after the landings to become what was known as the “Broad Front” strategy that Eisenhower would ultimately use until the end of the war in Europe.

This would entail the attack, once breakout from Normandy occurred, would move northeastward in a line that would be parallel with the Seine River. The goal would be to capture the industrial heart of Germany in the Ruhr Valley. The northern front under Montgomery would operate above the Ardennes while the southern front under Bradley would operate below the Ardennes. Coming up from the south of France along the Rhone River valley would be the Seventh Army that would link up with Patton’s third Army, thus creating an uninterrupted front of over 450 miles stretching from the English Channel to the Swiss border. This strategy would allow Eisenhower to shift forces as needed to deal with any strong German resistance while maintaining pressure on the entire German military. One of the key points necessary for this strategy to work was the continued maintenance of the logistics chain.

Attempts were continuously being made to undermine the morale of the German fighting man through various propaganda methods. This would include leaflets drops from high altitude aircraft over large sections of the front lines and accompanying rear areas as well as leaflets dropped over target areas warning the civilians to leave. Once the Allies had arrived in France they began a very comprehensive program for the distribution of “Safe Conduct” leaflets. These authentic looking documents were intended to let the German soldier know that he could surrender and would be treated with respect as stated under the 1929 Geneva Conventions. The psychological effect on the German soldier was significant to the point that the German High Command under a directive from Hitler stated that any German soldier found to have one of these leaflets in their possession was subject to be shot for attempted desertion. The majority of these leaflets were distributed to the German combat soldiers by both aircraft and artillery batteries beginning in June 1944 and lasting nearly through the end of the war. It is estimated that over 150 million of various types of leaflets were distributed over the final year of the war in Western Europe. **(See included “Safe Conduct” leaflet)**

Following this strategy the Allies were able to advance very quickly across Northern France with Patton’s armored units gaining as much as 60 miles in a single day. By the end of August the Allied armies of Bradley were forced to halt for a lack of supplies, ammunition and gasoline. The problem was not so much of not having the supplies; rather it was that the advance was so rapid that the supply line was constantly being outrun. With no major port yet in the Allied hands, all materiel had to pass over the ground at Normandy and then be trucked to the front in a series of convoys that became known as the “Red Ball Express”. These drivers were often on the road for 24 hours straight in their attempts to cover the distance of 400 miles to the front. A new port facility closer to the battlefield was a necessity. Capturing the ports of Antwerp and then Rotterdam were critical in order to advance further into Germany. These objectives would eventually fall to Montgomery and his 21st Army Group, by the 8th of November

when the Schelde Estuary was finally in Allied hands and the port of Antwerp could begin operations. Once Antwerp was secured, the Allies had a deep water anchorage that would allow for the rapid distribution of supplies and materiel and ending the difficult and sometimes hazardous flow of supplies from Normandy.

Holland and Operation Market—Garden

The 12th Army Group had halted along the frontiers of Germany. Their advance brought them to the edge of the southern Ardennes near Liege, Belgium and Aachen, Germany; passing by Metz, France and down to Strasbourg, France and the border of the Rhine River. To the north, the 21st Army Group was nearly through Belgium and on the borders of the Netherlands. It was at this time that General Montgomery proposed what he called his “single thrust” campaign strategy as opposed to Eisenhower’s broad front approach. Montgomery’s plan was to create a corridor through Holland that would seize key bridges over major waterways and thus enter Germany from the north of the industrial heartland, the Ruhr, thereby flanking German’s Westwall of defenses. Later, Montgomery’s would call for a continuance of the attack through Holland with the intent to make it to Berlin prior to the arrival of the Russians.

“Operation Market – Garden” would be scheduled for the 17th of September. The operation would use the First Allied Airborne Army (“Market”) who had been resting in England since Normandy which included the US 82nd and 101st Airborne Division, the British 1st Airborne Division, and the Polish 1st Parachute Brigade. On the ground would be the British 30th Corps (“Garden”) which had been reinforced with armored units. The airborne forces were to seize the key bridges Eindhoven (101st); Nijmegen (82nd) and Arnhem (1st). The bridge at Arnhem would later be tragically referred to as “A Bridge too Far”. Eventually the British ground forces were able to fight their way through the airborne corridor of bridges, but were dramatically halted short of Arnhem at the small Dutch town of Driel. It was here that the Germans had rushed two SS Panzer Divisions to protect Arnhem. The strength of the German attacks demonstrated the resolve not to allow an eastward advance to Germany. The fighting in this part of Holland would continue through April 1945 with very little ground gained until the end of the war. Although the concept and plan for Market-Garden was bold and ambitious it ended in failure. After the war there was a lot of pointing of fingers to various leaders as to the reason for the failure.

The struggle for Arnhem saw the loss of nearly 7,500 of the original British airborne force that was either killed, wounded or captured. To the south the 82nd and 101st suffered nearly 3,500 casualties and missing. The losses in this period of fighting thus prevented any future use of airborne forces until the spring of 1945. With the failure of the single thrust strategy Eisenhower felt that the only way to success would be to continue his broad front strategy. The planning and subsequent failure of Market-Garden led to the consumption of huge amounts of supplies, personnel and equipment. All the gains that had been made in the late summer were now stalled on the borders of Germany.

Siegfried Line and the West Wall

As the Allies approached Germany, the Wehrmacht fell back to their prepared positions that were known to the Germans as the “Westwall” and to the Allies the “Siegfried Line”. **(See included Stars and Stripes, 6 September 1944)** This was a series of defensive fortifications that had been prepared in response to France’s Maginot Line. It consisted of a combination of over 12,000 structures that ranged from belts of obstacles, pillboxes, bunkers, “Dragon’s Teeth” (anti-tank) and underground fortresses. These fortifications would be situated in such a fashion that included interlocking fire from machine guns and artillery bunkers and a system of defense that would be mutually supported by other positions. The line would stretch nearly 300 miles from the confluence of Belgium, Holland and Germany at Cleve, Germany in the north to the Swiss border at Basel in the south. The construction on the original line was begun in 1936 shortly after the remilitarization of the Rhineland and was subsequently continued and expanded in the later years of the war. Breaking the Westwall would be the key to invasion of Germany and the end of the war. The Siegfried Line would hold the Allied advance for nearly six months and would further mask the German buildup that would be known as the German Ardennes Counter Offensive or “Battle of the Bulge”.

Bloody Aachen

The first major German city that was attacked and captured in the initial assault on the Siegfried Line was Aachen. Earlier in history, Aachen had been the capital of the Holy Roman Emperor Charlemagne who had ruled his empire comprising much of France and Germany from this city in the 9th century. Hitler designated Aachen as a “fortress city” that was to fight to the bitter end. The assault on Aachen began on the 2nd of October with the 30th Infantry Division attacking north of the city. To the south the 1st Infantry Division began the assault on the 8th of October. The heavy fighting and fanatical resistance of the Germans was intense because they were now fighting on their home soil. On the 10th of October, the German commander in the city refused an offer to surrender and understood the city would now face “absolute destruction” in the wake of the American attacks. Finally after bitter house to house and street to street fighting the German commander surrendered the city on the 21st of October when he noted that “When the Americans’ start using 155s as sniper weapons, it is time to give up”. He was referring to the American 155 artillery batteries that had their barrels depressed to fire directly into fortified buildings which caused enormous destruction. In the end the city of Aachen was in rubble and could not really be classified as a city, it was more of a wasteland. The Americans were appalled at the level of the resistance that the German defenders provided. In no small part this contributed to nearly 10,000 casualties that were sustained in the 19 days of fighting for the city. Concern was evidenced at a number of command levels, that if this desperate stubbornness was on the borders, what would the resistance be like as the Allies drove deeper into Germany?

Southern France and “Operation Anvil – Dragoon”

After the successful capture of Rome on the 4th of June 1944 the Allies were determined to keep the pressure on the retreating Germans who set up their fortified lines to the north of Rome in what would be known as the “Gothic Line”. By September the Allies under

General Mark Clark and General Harold Alexander had pushed the Germans to the foothills of the Alps. However with the winter setting in and with a reduced number of personnel at their disposal, the fighting would slowly become a great battle of attrition, much like the struggle up the boot of Italy in the winter of 1943-1944. While now the main Allied focus was on Northern France, interest in the Italian campaign had diminished. It was now envisioned by planners as well as the key American leadership that the operations in Italy could be used to hold down various numbers of German forces. This would prevent any support being provided to the beleaguered defenders in Northern Europe as the Allies approached Germany. British Prime Minister Churchill did not agree with this plan and in fact wanted the Allied advance to continue through Northern Italy, into the Balkans and link up with the Russian forces pushing from the east. General Eisenhower saw Churchill's desires as being more of a political nature and not necessarily sound strategy from a tactical perspective. Italy would not be a priority, Northern Europe would.

Italy decreased as a priority in the late summer of 1944 because of Operation "Anvil – Dragoon", which was the invasion of Southern France that occurred on 15 August 1944. Many of the resources that had fueled the Italian campaign had been diverted for this campaign. The first discussions for the invasion of Southern France had occurred in 1943 at the Tehran Conference. Interest in Southern France developed when Germans had occupied all of the Vichy areas, that is unoccupied France, in late 1942 after the successful Torch landings in North Africa. However Anvil - Dragoon was temporarily shelved when all resources were earmarked and funneled for operation Overlord. Once the Normandy landings had taken place, Eisenhower was concerned that any and all actions be taken to tie down German forces throughout Europe. Because of this desire, Eisenhower felt that an invasion of Southern France would hold down a large number of German forces that could be prevented from reinforcing the Normandy defenders. Further an invasion in the south of France would allow the Allies to secure port facilities that could be used to support the forces to the north. Key cities in this regard were both Marseilles and Toulon. Additionally, the French resistance had been very strong in Southern France and could be used to support a landing. Lastly, there would be a Corps of French forces as part of the invasion that would certainly fight very hard for the liberation of their country. In the long run this proved to be sound strategy.

Originally, Anvil – Dragoon would have been timelier if it was launched in July as Eisenhower had desired. But by 15 August when the forces hit the beaches around the resort cities of Cannes, Raphael, St. Maxime and St. Tropez, they found little resistance. Allied deception operations, consisting of naval and airborne movements, had performed very well causing the Germans to spread their forces. The Allied landing forces consisted of the 7th US Army which was made up of both the US 6th Corps and the French 1st and 2nd Corps. Additionally, these forces included an amalgamated airborne division called the "1st Airborne Task Force" that was made up of forces from both the British and the Americans. A week before the Allied landings the British SOE and the American OSS had dropped what were known as "Jedburgh Teams" (named after the area of the Scottish border area where they trained) with a mission to link up with the French Resistance in Central France. They were to train the resistance groups and help plan and execute harassing operations against the Germans and in support of the Allied forces

moving up from the south. One of the most notable members of these Jedburgh teams was an Army Lieutenant by the name of John Singlaub. His work was so efficient that he was able to volunteer for assignment to China. There he was tasked with working with the Vietnamese under Ho Chi Minh against the Japanese. His last mission was to rescue nearly 400 Allied prisoners of war from Japanese captivity. Over the next 30 years Singlaub would rise to the rank of Major General and would be responsible for developing and shaping the future of American unconventional warfare.

Within three days of the landings the allies pushed a spearhead nearly 40 miles inland with an ultimate goal of reaching the Rhone River Valley and then pushing northward. By using bold tactics, demonstrating a willingness to take risks and individual initiative the Rhone was reached on the 22nd of August. The German forces of the 19th Army were not coordinating their defensive efforts and were more concerned in withdrawal and fear of being trapped in the south by the rapid Allied advance through France to the north. Turning to the north along the Rhone Valley the German forces could not escape the rapidly moving allied forces. By the end of the second week of the campaign the German 19th Army ceased to be an operational force, losing nearly 1,500 pieces of artillery, thousands of tanks and vehicles and 81,000 soldiers as prisoners of war. Final results at the end of the war showed that the Germans actually lost more than 125,000 men as either killed, wounded or captured. Only remnants of the 19th Army would finally make their way back to the borders of Germany. There they were reconstituted and put back in the defense to face the newly organized Sixth US Army under General Jacob Devers.

The 7th Army under General Alexander Patch would continue its northward movement and on the 11th of September, near Dijon, France would link up with Patton's Third Army. The total Allied cost for the month long campaign had been 2,700 killed and 11,000 wounded from a force that had reached over 100,000 in just a week after the landings. German forces in France were now virtually eliminated as the Allies formed a solid line against the borders of Western Germany. The only locations in France that remained under German control were several port facilities along the Atlantic, the Channel Islands and a few fortress cities. These areas were bottled up, ineffective and were contained until their eventual surrender. The southern ports of the Mediterranean were wide open providing much needed supplies to the Allies who were now bogged down at Germany's Westwall. In the end Winston Churchill admiringly stated that he thought the operations in Southern France were carried out exceptionally well and had made a big difference in finally bringing the war home to Germany.

The fall of 1944 brought the Allies to the borders of Germany. After the rough fighting for the German city of Aachen, the Allies knew that they must be prepared for their entry into Germany. After the dramatic failures in Holland and Operation Market – Garden the British and American forces were in no position to begin offensive operations into Germany. This resulted in what began as a very large buildup of Allied forces that would be concentrated along the German border. Under this circumstance, that is the Germans digging in behind their Westwall, new American Infantry Divisions were brought to the front and placed in the line in order to be "bloodied" and gain some degree of combat experience.

Hurtgen Forest

On the 2nd of November the 28th Infantry Division, whose shoulder patch consisted of a red keystone that would come to be known as the “Bloody Bucket”, launched an attack into the Hurtgen Forest. The Hurtgen was an impenetrable wood of tall fir trees nearly 25 miles wide and 10 miles deep. Entrenched in this wood was a terrain that consisted of steep hills, deep ravines, and a very confined road network. It was here the Germans placed huge minefields and well concealed fortifications intermixed with the natural obstacles. The primary object of the 28th was the seizure of the Roer River dams and the town of Schmidt. As the Allies advanced into Germany, these dams could be opened and thereby flood the Roer River Valley and destroy any bridgeheads that had been established. Additionally, the rising water could also isolate and destroy ground forces that were in the vicinity. Further the Hurtgen could also conceal German forces that could be used to attack the flanks of any advancing American armies. The Hurtgen needed to be taken.

The Hurtgen would exact an incredible toll on the Americans for the next three months. Within two weeks the 28th Infantry Division was depleted and demoralized. The Germans set their artillery barrages to burst at tree top level, thereby showering splinters of wood and hot steel on the uncovered G.I.’s below. Subsequently the 1st, 4th, 8th, and 9th Infantry Divisions, the 2nd Ranger Battalion, and elements of the 5th Armored Division would be a part of the hand-to-hand fighting in the Hurtgen. It was said that by February the landscape of the interior of the forest resembled the terrain of the First World War. Soldiers of both sides were being buried in their frozen poses of death and would remain undiscovered until the spring thaws of 1945. In all total the Hurtgen would claim 27,000 Allied casualties by the 16th of December. This would be the largest loss of American life thus far in the war.

The German Build – Up

With the distractions of the Hurtgen and the struggle taking place, Allied headquarters did not take notice of the buildup of German forces that was beginning to occur all along the Westwall. While many allied leaders genuinely thought that there was a potential for the war to be over by Christmas, it was not a realistic dream. Germany was in desperate straights. Beginning in August, Hitler had issued directives to strip all German home front activities of any male personnel that could be used to fight. The draft was widened to encompass any able bodied male between 16 and 60. Non-essential administrative personnel became members of the armed forces. With a lack of sufficient aircraft, large numbers of German Luftwaffe personnel were shifted to the army. The end result was the formation of what came to be known as the “people’s infantry” or Volksgrenadier divisions. They were equipped with large numbers of automatic weapons and the dreaded German anti-tank weapon known as the “Panzerfaust”. Some of these units would fight well and until death while others would simply surrender at the first opportunity.

Facing the onslaught of the Allies to the borders of Germany Hitler created a plan that would be codenamed “Operation Wacht am Rhein”. In an effort to catch the resting

allies off guard, an objective of seizing the strategic port of Antwerp would be the main goal of this thrust. This operation would be directed at splitting the Allies, the British to the North and the Americans to the south, disrupt the flow of supplies to the front, capture large stocks of badly needed supplies and halt the advance, thereby giving Germany time to defeat the Russians in the east. The area for the operation would be the site of earlier successful German advances in August 1914 and May 1940 through the forests of the Ardennes. Between the period of September and December 1944, the Germans would amass over 200,000 men, 1,450 tanks, and 2,000 artillery pieces.

With the halt at the Westwall, General Eisenhower stationed large numbers of combat forces to the north and south of the Ardennes so that they would be ready to strike into the heart of Germany as conditions improved. Looking at the Ardennes and what was considered to be an area that would be difficult to transit, he placed two combat weary Infantry divisions, the 2nd and 28th and two “green”, untested units, the 99th and 106th Infantry Divisions. These units were to recover from the fighting and at the same time prepare themselves for the upcoming offensive into Germany. It was these four divisions that would feel the full weight of Wacht am Rhein.

From the SHAEF Intelligence staff all the way down to the staff of the divisions holding the line, they had judged the Germans as being too weak to mount any type of offensive operations against the Allies. Any buildup on the German side was either in preparation to defend against the anticipated Allied offensives or to mount a counterattack once the Americans moved. Knowing that the war would not be over by Christmas, the Allied commanders were preparing to resume the attacks on the Siegfried line when adequate supplies and personnel were available.

The German Ardennes Counter Offensive

On the morning of the 16th of December, at 05:30 the combined artillery fire of three German armies was unleashed on the unsuspecting American forces. Very quickly all along the 50 mile front of the attack American units were swallowed up by artillery bombardment which served to create untold confusion among the American defenders. Isolated pockets of soldiers in frontline positions did one of two things. They either broke and ran from fear of being killed or captured or they stayed at and met the onslaught head on. The German forces were expecting to make a quick advance through the unprepared Americans. What the Wehrmacht discovered was that those who chose to stay and fight them put up a very strong defense. This effort put a serious dent into the precise timetable that had been developed by the German high command in order to meet their objectives.

The northern boundary of the German attacks centered on the towns of Losheim and Malmedy and to the south, the border was the towns of Wiltz and Bastogne. Pushing westward in between these two shoulders were units of the German Fifth and Sixth Panzer armies. One of the tips of the spear was the 2nd Panzer Division and the 1st SS Panzer Regiment of the 1st SS Panzer Division. The 1st SS Panzer Regiment was led by 29 year old Lt. Col Joachim Pieper who was one of the youngest regimental commanders in the German Army. Pieper had developed a reputation as being ruthless and fanatical

based on his combat record fighting the Russians. He pressed onward after being delayed by destroyed bridges, German vehicle breakdowns, and American soldiers. By the 19th of December his combat group had gone 30 miles, halfway to the next major objective, the crossing the Meuse River. It would be the 2nd Panzer Division that would create the furthest penetration into Belgium for the entire operation. This unit would bypass entrenched pockets of American and take paths of lesser resistance. As they advanced they came across the fierce American lines that surrounded Bastogne and decided to skirt those positions, leaving them for the follow up German forces to eliminate. In doing so when the German counteroffensive finally ground to a halt they would be at the deepest point reached in all the fighting, the town of Celles. From the start of the operation to Celles the 2nd Panzer had reached a depth of 50 miles by the 27th of December. They would go no further.

It would be Pieper's Waffen SS soldiers who perpetrated the now infamous "Malmedy Massacre" that resulted in the murder of 86 Americans who had just surrendered to the Germans. All along Pieper's route of advance his soldiers were not taking any prisoners. When word reached to the higher headquarters about the random murder of helpless American prisoners of war, many units vowed that they would not take any of the SS as prisoners.

The German attack made the greatest amount of progress in the center of their assault. On both the northern and southern boundaries of their attack the American forces managed to hold their ground and thus funnel the Germans inward. This would create on the map what looked like a bulge in the lines creating the name the "Battle of the Bulge". The combat between the Americans and the Germans was not any large scale struggle between units going head-to-head, but more of a series of coordinated and uncoordinated attacks involving smaller units in the densely forested Ardennes. The terrain and woods severely limited large scale confrontations. It was the heroism of the defenders in these small hand-to-hand encounters that would tip the balance of the battle in the favor of the Americans. The other key element that would contribute to the defeat of the Germans was the failure of their supply and logistics chain. Advancing armored forces were told to capture American fuel dumps to feed their hungry vehicles. Initially this approached worked, but as the Germans went deeper into the bulge it became more difficult to find supplies. When the German forces halted at Celles, they were completely out of gasoline and had to wait until their supply chain caught up with them.

The German invasion plan of the Ardennes included a number of operations that were little known, but yet created a large amount of havoc and confusion in the rear echelons of the Allied lines. The first of these operations was known as "Operation Grief" under the command of SS Major Otto Skorzeny. Using captured American vehicles and uniforms, roughly 150 English speaking German soldiers were broken up into 30 teams and sent out along with the German advance. Of these teams, nine were actually able to infiltrate into American lines where they would change route signage, redirect traffic and spread rumors of all sorts in an attempt to disrupt operations. Some of the teams were captured when they appeared at GI manned checkpoints and did not quite fit in. It was quickly learned what was going on and elaborate security measures were enacted. One rumor concerned an attempt to kidnap and kill General Eisenhower. **(See included**

American Army HQ, OISE Section Directives 21/22 December 1944) Another operation involved the final German airborne operation of World War II. In front of the advancing Panzer forces, German paratroopers were to be dropped to cut off and hold key crossroads, thus preventing any Allied reinforcement. Of the 2,000 paratroopers to be dropped, only 300 actually made it to their operational area and they were quickly neutralized. These forces had been delivered to the wrong coordinates, suffered the mechanical failures of their aircraft and crashed due to the inexperienced pilots and the challenging weather conditions.

The greatest disruption to the German advance had been the heroic stand made by the defenders of Bastogne led by the 101st Airborne Division. When the attack had begun, the 101st was at a nearby rest area, Mourmelon-le-Grand, France recovering from their combat in Holland. They were immediately rushed to Bastogne where they set up positions that forced the Germans to halt or go around them. Shortly these forces were soon surrounded on all sides. Refusing all offers to surrender the defenders held on, thus creating a further disruption to the German timetable. It was here that General Anthony McAuliffe gave his reported one word response to a German offer to surrender, “Nuts”. Bastogne, although approached by German unit who got within several hundred yards, would not fall and would remain a “thorn” in the side of the German advance.

SHAEF Response to the Bulge

When General Eisenhower was informed of the attacks he quickly reacted to the threat. He also realized that although the Germans were making some progress in the attacks, Hitler was throwing away precious resources that he could ill afford. Eisenhower’s main headquarters at the time of the Battle of the Bulge had been in Versailles on the outskirts of Paris. In the late morning hours of the 16th, General Eisenhower was conferring with General Bradley about strategy for the 12th Army Group. Immediately the call went out to locate any units that could be found for reinforcement to the front. In very short order, the 18th Airborne Corps, consisting of the 82nd and 101st Airborne Divisions were alerted and with 12 hour were on their way to the northeast. Because of the excellent road net that converged on Bastogne, these units would be placed to the north of the town. Eventually the 82nd would occupy would be sent to the northern flank of the attack while the 101st would occupy Bastogne. Meeting on the morning of the 19th at Verdun, southwest of the bulge, discussion was centered on stopping the main thrust of the German forces toward their objective of the Meuse River.

Within each of the 12th and 21st Army Groups forces were realigned in order to best support a counter attack that would be able to “pinch off” the expanding bulge in the Allied lines. To the north of the bulge, forces were added to Montgomery’s 21st Army Group as he directed movements from Holland and Western Belgium into the German’s northern flank. On the southern end, General Patton was given the mission of disengaging his attack in the Saar Basin and swing his forces nearly 90 degrees. The Third Army began on the 22nd of December their road march to Bastogne with the 4th Armored Division in the lead. Moving over icy roads, fog, and nearly impassable terrain Patton’s forces fought the 5th German Parachute Division who were supported by numerous anti-tank weapons. On the first day they only covered 12 miles, the second

only two miles and finally by the 5th day (26th of December) elements of the 4th Armored Division entered Bastogne.

Contributing to the early German success in the battle were the very poor weather conditions that had grounded Allied aircraft which prevented the observation of the German building up and then attacks on the German columns. By the 23rd of December, the weather had cleared sufficiently to allow for air drops of supplies to the defenders at Bastogne and for Allied fighter-bombers to attack the German columns. Continuing bouts of good weather allowed the Allies to hammer German forces where they lay. Once the siege at Bastogne had been broken, the Germans realized that their goal of reaching the Meuse river was not achievable, and certainly not Antwerp. Recognizing that the 21st Army Group and the First US Army from the north and the Third US Army to the south were squeezing the bulge closed, the Germans became determined to salvage as many of their forces possible. Thus began a strategic withdrawal. Fighting their way back into Germany, the remnants of the Fifth and Sixth Panzer Armies moved eastward. By the 16th of January patrols of the First and Third Armies meet near Houffalize, Belgium, thus trapping any remaining German forces.

On the morning of New Years Day, 1945 the Allies were in for another shock, although it was not as great as the initial assault of the Germans on the 16th of December. Beginning in the early morning hours over one thousand of the German Luftwaffe fighters streaked at treetop level and attack Allied airfields in Holland, Belgium and France. In one regard this surprise air raid caught the Allies off guard and destroyed 220 aircraft on the ground and shot up a number of air fields. The Allies responded by reacting with their own fighters who were able to take a toll of nearly 300 Luftwaffe aircraft and 230 experienced pilots. After this sortie the Luftwaffe would never be able to mount any sort of offensive actions against the advancing Allied armies.

The Last German Attack – “Operation Nordwind”

To the south of the bulge, Hitler was determined to initiate some sort of diversionary plan that would in his mind hopefully direct some of the American force away from the struggle around Bastogne. As a result, “Operation Nordwind” was created. Launched also on New Year’s Day, the plan was called to split the Allied forces in the Vosges Mountains and along the plains of Alsace. The Allies had recently liberated the major French city of Strasbourg which lay along the banks of the Rhine River. The tactical objective of the operation was to capture the gap that led to the city of Saverne along the Marne-Rhine Canal. This, it was envisioned, would split the two corps of the 7th Army and if successful, would allow the Germans to push to the northwest and the area that Patton’s Third Army had vacated when it turned to Bastogne.

Nordwind was to meet the same fate as Wacht am Rhein and end in a failure. Over the next three weeks, the Germans would initially make a 10 mile gain in the Saverne Gap, only to be erased by Allied counterattacks. In Alsace the Americans of the 6th Corps had to withdraw in order to shorten and restructure their lines due to the ground gained by the unceasing German assaults. But with assistance from the advancing 7th Army reserves that consisted of service, service support and combat troops the Germans finally gave up

their attacks. To the south the Germans still held key terrain among the flat surrounding farmland that was known as the Colmar Pocket. This was the last French territory that was occupied by the Germans and would be heavily contested. The 1st and 2nd French Corps launched their attacks at Colmar on the 20th of January and by the 9th of February all German resistance in France was gone.

The fighting that marked the Alsace and Ardennes campaigns was characterized as being methodically slow and quite brutal when compared to the quick advance across France in the summer and fall of 1944. A factor that contributed to the miserable conditions that soldiers from both sides had to endure was the winter weather that was colder than normal with frequent snowfall blanketing the countryside. When the final tally was made of the casualties, the Germans were to have suffered the greater number of losses. Individually, the “Battle of Bulge” was to account for the greatest number of American dead than in any other single action in World War II. The final casualty figures that were released by Eisenhower’s headquarters for the Americans, who bore the bulk of the combat, were nearly 88,000 listed as killed, missing, wounded or non-battle loss. German losses amounted to over 100,000 killed, missing or wounded. This clearly signaled the approaching end of the Third Reich. The losses encountered could not be made up in either manpower or materiel. It would only be the prospect of fighting on the personal doorstep of each soldier’s home that would keep Germany in the war until May 1945.

Allied Leadership

It can be said that the Battle of the Bulge and the Alsatian campaign was one of the largest tests of coalition leadership in a unified command under combat conditions that the Allies had to deal with in World War II. Besides the significance of the Normandy landings, the Allied response and subsequent success can be attributed to one individual, General Dwight Eisenhower. While there are critics of his strategy, he had to deal with the leadership of three national elements who were fighting the Germans. Most notably on the English side, Eisenhower had to deal with the self-absorbed Montgomery, on the American side he had to deal with the eccentric Patton and for the French it was always DeGaulle.

Once the battle in the Ardennes began, criticisms arose from General Montgomery about the American response to the German assault. Keeping in mind that the battle would be almost entirely fought by the Americans, Montgomery’s comments were taken to be an accusation of American incompetence on the part of senior leaders. The greatest affront was taken by General Omar Bradley and what he felt were the attacks on his ability. These feelings caused a great deal of animosity, to the point that the American leadership questioned their ability to work effectively and efficiently with the British in general and Montgomery in particular. All this was ongoing as the Germans continued their assault on the American forces in the Ardennes. Eventually over time, Montgomery apologized for his comments, particularly when it came to light that he might be fired. Through it all Eisenhower managed to ensure that the Allied fighting elements always remained focused on the Germans and that the leadership of the coalition remained united. This was perhaps Eisenhower’s greatest accomplishment as a field commander.

The Air War over Europe

The air war over Europe began within days of the German invasion of Poland on the 1st of September 1939. The fall and winter of 1939 – 1940 known as the “Phony War” saw limited operations between the British, French and German air forces. However that all changed with the launch of the Blitzkrieg in Western Europe in April 1940. Within six-weeks, the German victory left England standing alone. The European air war then began in earnest as the Germans began to prepare for an invasion of England (“Operation Sealion”) leading to the “Battle of Britain”. With the German invasion plan halted, the German air force (“Luftwaffe”) retaliated against England with a bombing campaign that was characterized as the “Blitz”. From the spring of 1941 the air war over England and the Channel would fade from the attention of Germany which began to look to the east.

At the onset of World War II in Europe on the 1st of September 1939, the German military quickly displayed the value of airpower through the coordinated attacks of the Luftwaffe in the Blitzkrieg. The world took notice of the use of aircraft that would take on a far different role than it had during World War I. Within days of the start of the war in Europe, the British Royal Air Force (R.A.F.) had sent ten Whitley bombers to Germany’s industrial Ruhr region and the port cities of Hamburg and Bremen on their first mission of World War II. The payload? Five million propaganda leaflets that proclaimed the Germans would not win the war. By November 1939, the RAF was attacking German targets with more than leaflets. These targets were warships in port facilities or installations along the coast of Germany. Easy to find and not much risk involved.

The war that England fought in the skies of Europe from the period of September 1939 to September 1942 could be defined as a period of learning and development. This involved refining the strategy about the use of airpower in an offensive role and establishing a defensive priority for the security of England. With the United States entering the war in December 1941, the structure of the air war in Europe would soon change. The arrival of the United States Army Air Forces (USAAF) in England by the summer of 1942 would usher in the second phase of the air war. This would change the structure and nature of aerial combat and increase the level of destruction brought to the heartland of Germany. This would subsequently give rise to a phrase, to which Winston Churchill took an immediate liking, known as “round the clock bombing”.

The first years of the war saw the RAF experiment with tactics and strategy. Initially there was concern about the RAF bombing of German industrial and urban targets as opposed to the purely military targets of installations and troop concentrations. That soon changed with the German bombing of London during the Battle of Britain. Subsequent destruction of British cities such as Coventry, Birmingham and Hull would lead to the RAF raids on the historic Hanseatic German cities such as Lubek and Rostock in the spring of 1942. In retaliation to the bombing of these and other historic German cities that were involved in the war industry, Hitler ordered that English cities be similarly targeted. These would become known as the “Baedeker Raids”. This was because of the comments made by a German radio personality indicating the targets had been selected

from a German Baedeker travel guide of Great Britain, targeting each city that had a three star rating or higher. In these early years the bombing efforts seemed to lack a coordinated and organized purposed to strategically alter the course of the war.

The targets that would be selected for bombing raids would vary due to the current progress of the war. The majority of the targets selected initially for destruction would be industrial plants, oil refineries, military installations, manufacturing centers and power generating facilities such as dams. In the end targets would also include key transportation hubs, railway junctions and population centers that housing industrial and war workers. The main goal in the assault on these targets was the disruption of the German economy and its ability to make war materiel. Later bombing raids would also be intended to destroy troop marshalling areas and equipment stockpiles.

As the air war began it was recognized that bomber crews could not continue to function until they were either shot down or declared psychologically exhausted (combat stress). A system of mission completion was established for both the RAF and the USAAF. Initially each RAF crew member had to complete thirty missions before he was reassigned to a ground position. After six months he was again placed on flight status and was required to complete another twenty missions. At that time he was permanently removed from aerial operations unless he later desired a third tour in the bombers. In 1942 the USAAF established the requirement of twenty-five missions that a crewman had to complete before being removed from flight status. By 1944 the USAAF requirement had increased to thirty missions. By 1945 with the advent of long range fighter escort, P-51 Mustang's who took the bombers all they way to the targets, mission requirements were increased to thirty-five. The first American aircraft to complete twenty-five missions was the B-17 "Memphis Belle". On 17 May 1943, the Memphis Belle crew made history within the 8th USAAF with their 25th mission. This accomplishment took nearly ten months from the time that the 8th USAAF became operational in August 1942. In June 1943, the crew and the "Belle" were removed from combat in Europe and returned to the United States for a war bond tour.

Royal Air Force Bomber Command

The RAF was not as prepared to fight a bomber war as it was to fight a war with fighters. The RAF's Bomber Command was quite different from the RAF Fighter Command. The signature aircraft that would mark Fighter Command was the Hawker Hurricane and Supermarine Spitfire. These two aircraft rose to great notoriety during the Battle of Britain in the summer of 1940. The signature aircraft of the Bomber Command would eventually be the four-engine Avro Lancaster. This was an aircraft that was not even on the drawing boards at the start of the war and would not have its first operational sortie until March 1942. The Lancaster would be able to carry a bomb load of nearly 12,000 lbs which was much greater than the normal bomb loads of the four-engine American B-17 (4,000 – 5,000lbs) and the B-24 (6,000 – 7,000lbs).

During the period of the phony war the RAF conducted limited daylight bombing raids on military targets with little success. These raids were accompanied with high aircraft loss rates. The missions did not have any fighter escort as it was thought that the heavily

armed bombers could defend themselves. Also, some of the raids were outside the escort operating range of Fighter Command. Additionally, the early RAF raids on Europe were often carried out by aircraft on an individual basis, rather than concentrated formations. The morale of Bomber Command plunged with the poor results and alarming losses. By the time that Winston Churchill became Prime Minister in May 1940, the RAF Bomber Command had become more proficient through the lessons learned from their efforts in the phony war. Finally, in mid-May 1940 the first major RAF bomber raid on Germany was launched and consisted of nearly 100 aircraft directed against the Ruhr region, Germany's industrial center. Considering the disaster of the earlier daylight raids accompanied with the significant losses of aircraft, these RAF raids would take place under the cover of darkness.

When the RAF conducted bombing missions during the daylight hours they had were, for the most part, accurate and put the bombs within a thousand feet of the aiming point. However, with the switch from daylight bombing to night bombing in the summer of 1940 accuracy began to decline. Some raids would miss their assigned targets by up to five miles and might end up bombing vacant fields and in the case of one aircraft, an RAF base in England. While the shadows of darkness would hide the aircraft, it obscured the target. At first, German air defense fighters were not able to detect the attacking bombers under the cover of darkness. But with the advent of the German "Wurzberg" ground radar system, the "Kammhuber Line" of defensive Luftwaffe fighters was able to vector in German ME-110 interceptors on the RAF bombers formations. By 1941, this system would lead to a staggering loss rate of 21 per cent of the RAF bombers in the most heavily defended areas. Far greater than the "acceptable rate" of five percent. In November 1941, Churchill directed a reduction in Bomber Command operations. He realized that there was the possibility that England could run out of trained crew as well as aircraft.

Two events occurred in early 1942 that would change the nature of Bomber Command operations. In February, Air Chief Marshall Arthur Harris took control of Bomber Command and in May the RAF launched the first of the "Thousand Plane Raids". Within a year Harris would come to be known as "Bomber" Harris because of his commitment to the ultimate aerial destruction of Germany. The first target selected for the thousand plane raid was Cologne. The city was easy to find and identify at night and the sheer number of the planes would overwhelm the German defenders in the air and on the ground. Several months earlier Harris had developed tactics that called three waves of aircraft that would subsequently illuminate the target area for the follow on bombers. Additionally, Harris would have all the aircraft hit the target within a window of one hour. This tactic was demonstrated very successfully on the French Renault factory outside of Paris that had been converted into making tanks for the Germans. Cologne had been a strategic target since early in the war because of the 250 factories that manufactured war equipment, chemicals and petroleum products. The resultant German dead from this raid were a bit less than 500, but more than 45,000 people were homeless and the negative impact of this raid on the German morale began to spread. The RAF losses amounted to 40 aircraft, or 3.8 percent. The Cologne raid set the stage for what would become the British night area bombing that would go on until the end of the war.

United States Army Air Forces

With the entry of the United States into World War II in December, 1941, planning was soon initiated to send American air force units to England. Later arriving American air force units would be posted in North Africa and subsequently southern Italy and together they would become known as the Mediterranean theater. Within England the heavy strategic bombers would be known as the 8th Air Force while the medium and light bombers would be known as the 9th Air force. In the Mediterranean theater, the heavy bomber force would be known as the 15th Air Force while the medium and light bombers would be the 12th Air Force. These units would be the primary organizations that would focus American efforts in Europe. The 8th and 15th would focus on strategic bombing missions that would take them deep into Germany while the 9th and 12th would be providing tactical support for ground forces and controlling the sky over areas of operations.

The first senior American officer in Europe who would take charge of organizing the first American air operations was Brigadier General Ira Eaker who arrived in February 1942. His mission was to serve as an advance staff to locate and establish facilities for the follow on American Forces. Within a few months, Major General Carl Spaatz arrived as the commander of the 8th with the aircraft and crews that would fly the first American mission of the war in Europe. In early 1943 Spaatz would take command of the USAAF units in the Mediterranean while Eaker would take over the 8th USAAF.

The first American mission of World War II was 17 August 1942 when twelve B-17's, escorted by four RAF Spitfire squadrons bombed railway marshalling yards outside of Rouen, France without a loss. It should be noted that the co-pilot on the lead aircraft for this initial raid was Major Paul Tibbets. Major Tibbets would later gain fame as the pilot of the B-29, the "Enola Gay", which would drop the atomic bomb on Hiroshima on the 6th of August 1945. By the end of 1942, the 8th USAAF had completed 27 missions with only a two percent loss rate. The results were also much better than expected. When the 8th arrived the American leadership was convinced of the necessity for daylight, precision bombing missions as opposed to the RAF night operations. The American leaders believed that daylight operations could be much more accurate and effective. The defensive firepower of the B-17 ("Flying Fortress") and the B-24 ("Liberator") and the higher altitude for operations was thought to minimize the advantages of the Luftwaffe defenders. The .50 caliber machine guns of the American aircraft had an effective range that was three times that of the RAF guns. A new tactic was also subsequently introduced by the 8th that was known as the "Combat Box". The formations of the American squadrons were compacted in such a tight formation that the gunners of the aircraft would be able to direct multiple aerial guns on attacking aircraft. This would allow each combat box to place the fire of three – six machine guns on one attacking fighter. This was in contrast to the RAF habit of flying in loose formations. The final factor that contributed to the American insistence on daylight bombing was the utilization of the Norden bombsite.

Accuracy vs. Saturation Bombing

Early in the war, the British “bomb aimers” learned how really difficult it was to accurately and consistently hit their targets. The result of this experience was the movement to night area bombing operations. When the USAAF arrived, they felt that with this new Norden bombsight they could accurately or precisely hit the target in daylight, thereby causing more damage to the German war economy and also minimize the number of German civilian casualties. The RAF as well as “Bomber” Harris were quite skeptical of these claims. Nonetheless the leaders of the 8th USAAF pushed ahead. Within the first six months of the American operations, the results were not what had been expected. The RAF and subsequently Prime Minister Churchill wanted to have the American bombers follow their developed strategies that had been developed over the period of the past three years. This finally came to a head at the Casablanca Conference in North Africa on the morning of the 20th of January 1943. That day General Eaker met with Churchill and presented him with a one page summation that held one key sentence that caught Churchill’s interest: “By bombing the devils around the clock, we can prevent the German defenses from getting any rest”. While Churchill commented that he still did not feel persuaded that daylight bombing was good, he liked the idea that by bombing “round the clock” it would disrupt German life. The next day the conference produced the “Casablanca Directive”.

The Casablanca Directive specified that the Americans would bomb by day using their precision techniques while the British would bomb by night using their area techniques. Target priorities were established for these missions that began with submarine construction yards and aircraft industrial plants. The directive stated that their goal was the “progressive destruction and dislocation of the German military, industrial and economic system, and the undermining of the morale of the German people to a point where their capacity for armed resistance is fatally weakened”. This statement and the subsequent aerial bombing campaign that was to follow would contribute to the German phrase that was coined to refer to these air crew as “Terror Flieger” or Terror Flyer. Sadly as the war continued some of the allied aircrew who were shot down over Germany and subsequently captured would not live to see the end of the war as they were often killed by the outraged German civilian populace. One of the most noteworthy cases of this happening involved villagers from the town of Russelsheim. On the morning of the 26th of August, 1944 eight crew members of the B-24 bomber “Wham! Bam! Thank-You, Ma-am!” were being taken to captivity and unfortunately passed through the town. The Russelsheim residents were upset because the night before the RAF had bombed the historic district of the town causing severe damage. These Americans were mistakenly identified as flyers from that raid. Outraged citizens attacked these eight Americans and in the process six of the Americans were brutally murdered. The other two were badly injured, but protected by a lone Luftwaffe guard. At the end of the war a special military investigation was conducted by the United States. Eleven of the killers were identified, subsequently tried by a courts-martial, resulting in five being hanged and the rest being given prison terms.

By the spring of 1943, the presence of American air crews had significantly increased in England. The American industrial machine had begun to increase production of the bombers that would be needed to conduct the airwar. Henry Ford’s 65 acre Willow Run, Michigan assembly plant would produce by war’s end nearly 8,700 B-24 Liberators with

a new aircraft rolling off the assembly line every 63 minutes. These aircraft along with the B-17 would be arriving in larger numbers as the war progressed. The British government began a feverish building program that would construct airfields with 6,000 foot runways to accommodate the 8th and 9th Air Forces. Predominately these would be farm lands that were located in the southern and eastern parts of the island nation. **(See included engineer diagram of Kimbolton Air Field, Station 117)** This would all contribute to the start of the 100 plane raids that the USAAF began to launch as 1943 wore on. While relatively small when compared to the Bomber Command missions, it was a start. Initially, these missions would be flown over France and Germany without the benefit of escort fighters. This strategy would produce a high loss rate among the USAAF that would only be changed with the advent of the escort fighter. As the P-38 Lightning (P referring to Pursuit), P-47 Thunderbolt and finally the P-51 Mustang became operational in theater, fighter escorts would begin to accompany the 8th's bombers for part of the way to their targets in Germany. With the addition of "drop tanks" in 1944 on the P-51 Mustang, these fighters would be able to accompany the bombers all the way to Berlin and back. This would significantly reduce the loss rate among the American aircraft.

The Ruhr Dams, Hamburg, Schweinfurt and Ploesti

The destruction that would be caused by the RAF and the USAAF from 1943 through the end of the war in 1945 would be significant, such that in the spring of 1945 allied mission planners would state that they had literally "run out of targets". With the start of the onslaught of the allied bomber forces, targets were selected by both the RAF and the USAAF that would cause the greatest disruption to the German war effort. For several years the RAF and Bomber Command had focused on the Germany's industrial heart, the Ruhr region. So significant was this area that it was literally the most frequented target through 1943.

The Ruhr River winds its way through western Germany and in some places dams were constructed that would allow for the harnessing of the river to supply electrical power for the war industries. It was believed that by successful attacks on the dams, the RAF would disrupt the supply of electrical power, flood the surrounding areas and disrupt rail and vehicle traffic and would displace hundreds if not thousand of people who were in the area. Additionally, the Germans would have to divert people from other activities in order to repair the dams. Three dams were selected for this mission. The Mohne, the Eder and the Sorpe. A specially organized RAF squadron was created and spent nearly two months in secluded training. This unit would carry a five ton bomb that had been specifically designed for "Dam Busting" operations. On the 16th of May 1943, 19 Lancaster's of the RAF departed in three waves for the Ruhr. Both the Mohne and the Eder were successfully breached and the Sorpe was damaged. The impact was nearly instantaneous, but the result was not long term. Within three months, the dams would be back in operation at a reduced capacity. After the war Albert Speer, who was Hitler's armaments minister, stated, that if the raid had completely succeed and destroyed the dams entirely it would have shut down the Ruhr industries.

Behind Berlin, the largest city in Germany was Hamburg. Hamburg was the largest port city of Germany and was a hub for transportation and had various war industrial production facilities. The city had frequently been a target for the RAF since it was easily identifiable. Air Marshall Harris had decided that since the dam busting raid was not a complete success he would return to the area city bombing. Plans were developed that called for a ten-day cycle of attacks on the city of Hamburg. Beginning in late July 1943, wave after wave of the bomber streams would hit the city, night after night. By day the USAAF B-17's were attacking the shipyards and power stations. This would be the first time that the RAF and the USAAF had coordinated their forces to attack a single target, "round the clock". The final RAF raid came on the 2nd of August. The raid had a devastating effect on Hamburg and the rest of Germany. At the start of the raid the British had used aluminum strips known as "window" to disrupt and confuse the German radar controllers and network. Because of this, there was really no effective Luftwaffe fighter defense that was sent up. By the fourth day of the raids, the bombing had destroyed the fire fighting capabilities and infrastructure of the city. On the night of the 27th of July the still burning fires easily guided the next wave of bombers to the target. Only this night the incendiary bombs would contribute to a fire that would become so intense that it would reach 1,800* F, creating a firestorm of winds 150 mph that destroyed everything in its path. The German death toll reached nearly 50,000 and 90% of the cities population was left homeless. The news of this strike left the German people as well as the Nazi led government in a state of disbelief and fear. Which city would be next became the question that would continue to be asked until the end of the war? The Hamburg campaign came the closest to breaking the morale of the German people.

While the RAF continued their area bombing campaign, the 8th Air Force was gaining more experience. By the summer of 1943 the number of aircraft and crews that were becoming available seemed sufficient to mount a targeted campaign that would be both significant and yet costly. The target chosen would be Schweinfurt, Germany. American mission planners had learned that the entire German ball bearing industry had been concentrated in the Schweinfurt area. To disrupt this or at least destroy portions of it was thought to be so significant that it would have an immediate impact on the production capabilities for the entire German war industry. In a succession of two raids conducted on the 17th of August 1943 and the 14th of October, 448 B-17's hit Schweinfurt. On both dates, the plants were severely damaged, but not completely destroyed. Within a year the plants were at full operating capacity and German war production had been adjusted to compensate for reduced stocks of ball bearings. More than anything, the Schweinfurt raids were for the Americans a very sobering event. Of the 448 aircraft involved, 88 had been lost to either German anti-aircraft fire or fighters and another 170 had been damaged. It was recognized to continue at this rate of loss, the USAAF would cease to exist. Further raids deep into Germany would have to wait until sufficient fighter escorts would be made available. In the meantime, bombing missions would now be focused on France and the areas that would be involved with the upcoming Allied invasion of Europe, code named "Operation Overlord".

Besides the 8th USAAF, the other heavy American bomber unit in Europe was the 15th USAAF. In comparison, the 15th would be much smaller than the 8th USAAF in terms of aircraft and personnel. However the 15th would perform much of the same type of

missions as that of the 8th and would be commanded initially by General Ira Eaker. The 15th was activated in November 1943 in Tunis, Tunisia and in December 1943 would move to Bari, Italy where it would remain for the duration of the war. Facing equally hazardous missions, the 15th would face the challenge of flying over the Alps in order to reach targets in central and southern Europe. Long range missions would take the 15th into Austria and the outskirts of Vienna. The unit would also attack the German U-boat pens on the west coast of France and provide support to the Italian campaign. One of the more controversial missions the 15th USAAF would undertake was the bombing of the 1,500 year old Benedictine Abbey of Monte Cassino.

The most noteworthy mission and perhaps one of the mostly costly missions that was the 1943 attack on the oil fields at Ploesti, Romania. As a nation Germany did not have any natural petroleum stores that could be used for producing oil or petroleum products. This resulted in a nearly 100 percent requirement for imported resources. In World War I, Germany began to produce synthetic fuels from coal products. By the start of World War II, the I.G. Farben Company had helped the German economy by their hydrogenization process that in essence turned the large stocks of German coal into fuel products such as gasoline. Unfortunately for Germany, this was not enough fuel to run their modernized military machine. Therefore alternative sources had to be found. By early 1941, Germany had overrun and subsequently controlled Bulgaria and Romania. Within a few months Germany would enter Russia and take control of Bessarabia. These areas, particularly Romania, would provide Germany with nearly all of their supply of natural petroleum (one-third of their total supply of fuel) for the course of the war. The oil fields at Ploesti would finally come under Allied control when the Russians captured the area in August 1944.

The center of this German fuel producing region was the city of Ploesti. It was reasoned by the Allied war planners that by disrupting the flow and supply of Germany's oil resources, the war could be brought to a conclusion in a shorter period of time. Over the course of the spring and summer of 1944, the 15th USAAF would mount a total of 23 missions over Ploesti. It is interesting to note that the first American bombing raid over Europe was actually a mission that was directed against Ploesti. That raid consisted of twelve B-24 Liberators that took place on the 11th of June 1942. Although small in number and causing minimal damage, the raid indicated the significance the Allies attached to Ploesti and the fact that the German oil supply would not be immune from assault. The most famous raid that hit Ploesti was on the 1st of August 1943, code named "Operation Tidal Wave", when 177 B-24 Liberators from both the 8th and 9th USAAF hit the refineries. While the results did temporarily disrupt production the USAAF lost 53 planes over the target and 55 damaged so badly that on their return to Libya were classified as not airworthy and were scrapped. Ploesti was considered to be one of the most heavily defended German targets in Europe.

The other German target that was considered to be one of the most heavily defended facilities in the Third Reich was the synthetic oil plant at Leuna. The anti-aircraft batteries there were able to throw up the heaviest concentration of flak encounter by the aircrews and it was considered to be the most hazardous target in Europe. Leuna was near Mersberg, Germany and was the largest plant in terms of production capacity of the

German synthetic oil processing facilities. It was thought that Leuna produced nearly a quarter of Germany's synthetic oil needs. In 1944 Leuna was hit on 22 raids that reduced the production capacity to nine percent of its pre-raid capacity. Final analysis indicated that 6,552 bomber sorties were flown dropping over 18,000 tons of bombs.

As the war dragged on many missions were flown by the 8th USAAF to Berlin, known simply among the air crews as the "Big B". These raids in the early stage of the war would prove equally costly. In February, 1944 the American bombers mounted what was known as "Big Week". There were a total of 3,800 sorties flown by both 8th and 15th USAAF units that were targeted at the German aircraft industry. At the Allied loss of 226 bombers and 28 fighters more than half of the plants that produced the German fighters were destroyed. **(See included photographs of damaged 8th USAAF B-17's)** As a result of this raid the German aircraft industry was dispersed and moved underground, in places where the Allied bombers could not reach them. It is interesting to note that even after these raids production of German fighter aircraft continued to rise. By July 1944, the German aircraft industry was producing 2,300 planes. However, without the fuel for the planes and the trained pilots, these planes would be of little use.

Late in 1944 the allied aircrew encountered a new fighter plane in the skies over Germany. This was the Me-262, the world's first operational combat jet fighter. Allied bomber streams over Germany recall seeing off in the distance an object trailing a stream of smoke moving very close to their formations. Before they could react the smoking object was on them. At first, fear of this unknown plane caused a bit of uncertainty among the 8th USAAF crews. Within a month that fear was eased when the P-51 Mustang began to shoot down the Me-262 in increasing numbers. In total, the Luftwaffe eventually would receive nearly 1,300 of the jets. Only 300 of them saw combat and their performance was good, but not such that it would change the outcome of the war in the sky. The biggest shortfall for this jet fighter was that Hitler had demanded that it be produced as a fighter-bomber, not as a pure fighter. This caused production delays and in fact made the aircraft slower. Another factor that caused the Me-262 to be ineffective was the fact that by this late period in the war the majority of seasoned and experienced Luftwaffe pilots were either dead, incapacitated through wounds or were prisoners of war. New pilots had to be trained and very few possessed the skills needed to fly the jet.

The Results

At the end of World War II the United States published what became known as the Strategic Bombing Survey. This was an organization nearly 1,200 military officers, enlisted men and civilians that were tasked with examining the bombing campaign conducted by the allied air forces in Western Europe and Japan. This Survey including examining the records of the Allied and the Axis powers in order to collect information. The Survey followed the advancing forces as they moved into newly liberated and conquered enemy territory. The captured records were not always complete, but did provide adequate information that allowed for conclusions to be drawn.

Since the end of World War II there has been historical controversy relating to the overall strategic utilization of aerial bombing on both German and Japanese cities. This controversy is unlikely to fade from the current historical landscape of World War II.

The United States Strategic Bombing Survey states that “allied air power was decisive in the war in Western Europe. Hindsight inevitably suggests that it might have been employed differently or better in some respects. Nevertheless, it was decisive.” The allied air war tied up over one and a half million German personnel involved in the aerial defense of the Third Reich. This includes defensive fighter aircraft, anti-aircraft crews, logistical and support personnel, emergency response personnel and even impressed prisoners of war and their guards. Without the bombing efforts, these individuals could have been utilized in other areas and theaters of the war to support the Axis war machine.

In quoting the Survey regarding the air war over Western Europe: “2,700,000 tons of bombs were dropped, more than 1,440,000 bomber sorties and 2,680,000 fighter sorties were flown. The number of combat planes reached a peak of some 28,000 at the maximum 1,300,000 men were in combat commands.” Of these numbers of air crew, the British lost 79,281 men killed and nearly 22,000 aircraft were lost or damaged that they were salvaged. The American losses have been placed at 79,265 men killed and 18,000 aircraft that were lost. In comparison it was only in the German submarine (U-Boat) force that there was a higher percentage mortality rate of active combat personnel over the course of the war. Flying in Allied bombers and serving aboard German U-boats were the most hazardous duties in World War II.

It should also be noted that in excess of 2,000 Allied bomber crewmen would find themselves interned in the neutral countries of Switzerland and Sweden. They reached these destinations in the majority of circumstances because their aircraft were so badly damaged that they did not expect to make it back to their bases. The majority of these individuals sat out the war in relative peace and comfort, however there were a few who did manage to escape and return to their side of the conflict. Several reports came out after the war of very harsh and brutal treatment that were given to aircrew in Switzerland because these Allied individuals had repeatedly attempted to escape their internment.

The air war over Europe resulted in destruction levels that had never been experienced in the course of any previous war. In Germany alone, nearly 20% (3,600,000) of all dwelling units were damaged or destroyed and 7,500,000 people were left homeless. Reviewing postwar records indicate that 300,000 German civilians had been killed and 780,000 Germans had been wounded. No mention is made as to whether or not these individuals were engaged in industrial efforts to aid the German economy. The 50 principal cities of Germany had been reduced to rubble and German industry was brought to a standstill. In the end, the United States devoted 35% of their war production to the air forces. England devoted between 40 to 50% of their war production to the air forces while Germany devoted 40% of their war production to the air forces. The European air war was costly to both the Axis and Allied powers in a number of categories that can be measured. It can be reasonably stated that the Allied airwar helped to hasten the decline and fall of the Axis powers in World War II.

Name: _____ Date: _____

Multiple-Choice Quiz: Lesson Five – The European Campaigns 1944-1945
(circle the correct answer)

1. What was the Allied Conference in which the “Big Three” met at to decide the borders of Post-war Europe and the Zones of Occupation for Germany and Austria?
 - a. Teheran
 - b. Potsdam
 - c. Casablanca
 - d. Yalta

2. What was considered to be the largest armored vehicle (tank) battle in all of World War II?
 - a. Stalingrad
 - b. Kursk
 - c. Kharkov
 - d. Moscow

3. What do you think is the real reason why the Russians halted on the outskirts of Warsaw in the late summer of 1944?
 - a. The Germans had managed to convince the Polish people to unite with them against the advancing Russian forces.
 - b. The Russians hoped that the Poles and the Germans would kill each other and thereby make it easier for them to capture the city and after the war bring under the control of Communism.
 - c. To allow their logistics supply lines to catch up to them and to provide replacements for their advancing army.
 - d. They were fearful of the resistance of the German army and the new “Wonder Weapons”.

4. Why did it take the Allies nearly two years to build up sufficient resources in order to invade northern France in 1944?
 - a. The British and the Americans could not agree on what logistical supplies and equipment was needed for the invasion.
 - b. The Allies lacked sufficient ships and cargo vessels to bring the resources from the United States.
 - c. There no adequate facilities to store all of the equipment in England.
 - d. The German U-Boat menace was so bad that Allied shipping was constantly being torpedoed and sunk and until the U-Boats were counteracted, it would be very difficult to move materiel.

5. Why was Normandy selected as the site for the invasion of Northern Europe?
 - a. Normandy was poorly defended by the Germans and was out of the range of their fighter aircraft.
 - b. Normandy was within the range of Allied air cover from England and the area surrounding was flat and would allow for an easier breakout from the beaches.
 - c. It provided easy anchorage and deep water ports for the ships moving the Allied equipment and troops to France.
 - d. It was the shortest distance between England and France.

6. Why was General Patton left in England at the start of the Normandy invasion?
 - a. General Patton had gotten himself in trouble again and had been relieved by General Eisenhower.
 - b. There was a flu epidemic and General Patton was taken ill.
 - c. The Germans had attempted to invade the eastern coast of England and General Patton was in command of the 7th American Army that was in the process of repulsing the German invasion.
 - d. The Allies had created a fictitious 3rd American Army under the Command of General Patton as part of “Operation Fortitude” to draw German forces into positions across from the southeastern part of England.

7. How did Hitler survive the assassination attempt on the 20th of July 1944?
 - a. Hitler wore a bullet proof vest under his clothes.
 - b. An aide kicked the briefcase containing the bomb and moved it to the other side of the heavy oak conference table, thus dissipating the blast of the bomb and shielding Hitler.
 - c. The bomb failed to go off when Hitler was in the room and exploded harmlessly after the military briefing had ended.
 - d. Hitler’s personal bodyguards were able to grab the pistol the assassin carried before he was able to fire any shots.

8. What was the purpose of the Allied “Safe Conduct” leaflets?
 - a. The Safe Conduct leaflets were intended to point how bad life was back in Germany.
 - b. The Safe Conduct leaflets were intended to convince the German soldiers to revolt against Hitler.
 - c. The Safe Conduct leaflets were intended to convince the Germans that they should fight only against the Russians in the east.
 - d. The Safe Conduct leaflets were intended to convince the German soldiers to surrender to the Allied forces.

9. Why did Operation Market – Garden fail?
 - a. The British planners were too ambitious in setting objectives and had underestimated the strength of the German forces and their will to resist.
 - b. The British commanders on the ground did not use sufficient armored forces to break through the German defenses.
 - c. The Allied airborne forces landed at the wrong locations and were not able to link up with the advancing armor columns.
 - d. The operation was unable to take advantage of the superior numbers of Allied artillery and Allied air cover.

10. What was the purpose of the 1,000 plane raids of the Allies on Germany?
 - a. The raids were intended to impress on the Germans the amount of destruction that would happen to their cities if they did not surrender.
 - b. To destroy in selected locations as much of the German war industry as possible.
 - c. The Allies wanted Hitler to see what would happen to the German cities if he did not surrender.
 - d. The Allies were retaliating for the significant damage the German bombers had done in the Battle of Britain and the Blitz to historic cities in England.

Multiple-Choice Quiz: Lesson Five – The European Campaigns 1944-1945**Correct Answers**

1. d. Yalta
2. b. Kursk
3. b. The Russians hoped that the Poles and the Germans would kill each other and thereby make it easier for them to capture the city and after the war bring under the control of Communism
4. d. The German U-Boat menace was so bad that Allied shipping was constantly being torpedoed and sunk and until the U-Boats were counteracted, it would be very difficult to move materiel.
5. b. Normandy was within the range of Allied air cover from England and the area surrounding was flat and would allow for an easier breakout from the beaches.
6. d. The Allies had created a fictitious 3rd American Army under the Command of General Patton as part of “Operation Fortitude” to draw German forces into positions across from the southeastern part of England.
7. b. An aide kicked the briefcase containing the bomb and moved it to the other side of the heavy oak conference table, thus dissipating the blast of the bomb and shielding Hitler.
8. d. The Safe Conduct leaflets were intended to convince the German soldiers to surrender to the Allied forces.
9. a. The British planners were too ambitious in setting objectives and had underestimated the strength of the German forces and their will to resist.
10. b. To destroy in selected locations as much of the German war industry as possible.

LESSON PLAN - DAY SIX

Subject:

Phase Four (1945):

The period of history in Europe and the world as the conflict became a death struggle for both Germany and Japan as the Allied forces entered and conquered the homelands and brought final defeat.

Educational Goals:

The Student will learn facts and comprehend the events pertaining to:

European Theater:

- The final Allied advance in Germany by Russians in the east and the Anglo-Americans in the west
- The effect of the Holocaust on the Allied forces
- The conclusion of the war in Europe – V.E. Day

Pacific Theater:

- The advance of the American forces across the Pacific on two broad fronts
- The significance of the U.S. submarine forces in cutting off the Japanese supplies to their forces and in isolating Japan from much needed resources
- The utilization of new long range bombers (B-29) to reduce the Japanese capability to wage war
- The determination of the Japanese forces to resist as the American forces approached Japan
- The American occupation of the Japanese home islands
- The conclusion of the war in the Pacific – V.J. Day

Duration of instruction time required:

- 45 – 50 minutes

Required materials:

- World or American History Textbook
- Map of Europe
- Map of Asia

Supplemental materials (included):

- **Photograph of American Soldiers passing through the Siegfried Line in 1945**
(National Archives NARA file # 111-SC-208-YE-193)
When the Anglo-Americans armies were final able to breach the Siegfried Line there were no real fixed fortifications that could hold up their advance. The only real obstacle for the Allies now was the Rhine River. The Americans in particular had been hung-up on the Siegfried Line and the bunker complexes for nearly six months and felt that by finally entering Germany they were going to soon end the war.
Question for the Students: Once Germany was entered by the advancing Allies in the west, do you think that the resistance of the German military would either increase or decrease? Answer: Studies have indicated that in some areas the Germans fought that much harder, while in other areas their resistance began to crumble very quickly. After the Anglo-American armies crossed the Rhine in March 1945, most German resistance to their advance was weak.
- **Letter from General George Patton to the personnel of the 3rd Army and 19th Tactical Air Command, 23 March 1945**
General Patton was a shrewd leader of men in combat. As the war reached the final months, he wanted to ensure that his troops understood the significance of their actions and accomplishments. At the same time he wanted them to understand that the war was not yet over.
Question for the Students: Do you think that General Patton was a good motivator of his personnel? Answer: General Patton was very controversial in his methods to motivate his troops. During the war many of his soldiers resented his directives, but he had their respect because he usually led from the front. At the end of the war and after Patton's death more soldiers changed their attitudes toward Patton and would reflect proudly that they had served under old "Blood and Guts" in the 3rd Army.
- **Letter from American soldier describing his visit to the Buchenwald Concentration Camp shortly after its liberation by American forces**
Many of the American soldiers who saw the concentration camps at the end of the war in Europe were astounded at the horror and misery that they witnessed. While many had heard rumors of the camps, few anticipated what they would see. Many of the soldiers would write home after the war and describe to their families the details of the camps.
Question for the Students: What or how do you think you would describe the horrors of the concentration camps to our family back in the United States?
Answer: Students might talk about how they were revolted or nauseated by the sight and the smells of the camps. Others might talk of describing the current plight of the inmates and what was being done to help them for the future.

- **Allied propaganda leaflet encouraging the Germans to surrender in the closing days of the war**

In the final months of the war some elements of the German military continued to resist the Allied advance. This particular leaflet highlights the futility of any further resistance and the fact that the Allied armies to both the East and West were close to conquering all of Germany.

Question for the Students: Do you think that these leaflets would have had an effect on your morale? Answer: The Germans knew that the end of the war was approaching. However, they were still being exhorted to resist with the hopes of some sort of negotiated settlement. Most Germans by March 1945 just wanted the war to end.

- **Stars & Stripes Newspaper (Paris Edition), May 4, 1945**

By the 4th of May it was clear to the world that Hitler was dead and that the war was all but over. In Italy Mussolini had been killed by Italian partisans as he tried to reach Switzerland with his mistress. People were unsure of what would happen next.

Question for the Students: What do you think would be the first priority of the Allied forces that are now occupying Germany? Answer: Student answers may vary, but some should consider establishing order, preventing looting, disarming the military, ensuring some type of food distribution for the people to avoid starvation and providing immediate to the victims from the concentration camps.

- **Photograph of the unconditional surrender by Field Marshall Keitel in Berlin** (National Archives NARA file # 111-SC-206292)

The unconditional surrender to the Anglo-American forces took place in Reims, France in the early morning hours of 7 May 1945. The Russians now occupying Berlin wanted their own ceremony marking the unconditional surrender of Germany. The Russian ceremony was held on the 8th of May 1945 in the Berlin suburb of Karlshorst.

Question for the Students: Why do you think that the Russians wanted their own ceremony? Was this a forerunner of what would develop into the “Cold War”? Answer: The Russians had borne the bulk of the fighting against the Germans for four years and in the end lost nearly 20 million people to the war. Stalin was suspicious of the west and staged the ceremony to ensure that everyone understood that it was the Russians who won the “Great Patriotic War”.

- **Stars & Stripes Newspaper (Paris Edition), July 27, 1945**

The Potsdam Conference began on 17 July 1945 with a goal of working out the arrangements and policy that would govern the four zones of occupation for Germany and Austria. The Potsdam Conference later issued the ultimatum to the Japan that if they did not surrender they would face destruction of their nation. Additionally, Winston Churchill had been replaced as the Prime Minister of England.

Question for the Students: With the war over in Europe do think that the Potsdam Conference was focused more on the political future of the world rather than developing a final strategy for the elimination of Japan from the war? Answer: At Potsdam the discussion revolved in part about how occupied Germany was to be administered, with major differences between the American and Soviet approaches being evident. It was here that President Truman “officially” informed Stalin about the Atomic Bomb and its intended use.

- **Stars & Stripes Newspaper (Paris Edition), September 1, 1945**

After the agreement by the Japanese government of the surrender terms, it would be several weeks before American forces began to occupy Japan.

Question for the Students: What do you think would be the attitude of the Japanese people to the Americans? Answer: The Japanese people had been indoctrinated culturally that surrender was dishonorable. They did not know what to expect from the Americans because of propaganda which characterized the U.S. in a poor light.

- **Deck Log of the USS Missouri in Tokyo Bay, Japan; 2 September 1945**

The USS Missouri was one of the most modern battleships in the American fleet and was considered to be one of the most powerful American warships in the US Navy. Representatives from all of the Allied forces met on the deck of the Missouri to witness the Japanese surrender. Representatives for the Allied powers were all military officers while the representatives from the Japanese government consisted of both the military and civilian leadership of the government.

Question for the Students: Why do you think that there are no Allied civilian representatives? Answer: The war that was fought in the Pacific was handled by the military officers as it had been in Europe. The civilian leaders, such as the President of the United States, the Prime Minister of England and the Premier of Russia delegated authority to their military commanders. The leadership in Germany who surrendered to Eisenhower was all military officers. The Japanese leadership at the end of the war in the Pacific were all representatives of Emperor Hirohito and consisted of his War Cabinet which was both civilian and military.

- **Photograph of General MacArthur signing the Japanese Surrender Document on the USS Missouri, 2 September 1945** (National Archives NARA file # 80-G-348366)

Standing directly behind General MacArthur on the USS Missouri is General Jonathan Wainwright, a personal friend of MacArthur, who was the American General who surrendered the Philippines to the Japanese in early 1942. General Wainwright was a Japanese prisoner of war for three and a half years. When MacArthur finished signing the Japanese surrender document he gave one of the pens to General Wainwright.

Question for the Students: If you had been a prisoner of war of the Japanese and now you had the privilege of watching the surrender, what do you think would be the thoughts in your mind? Answer: Students might discuss that they would feel a sense of vindication in the fact that their side had won the war. They also may mention a feeling of gladness that the war is over. Perhaps some students may even say being there would give them a sense of revenge and closure for all of the suffering and misery they had suffered at the hands of the Japanese.

Instruction evaluation (included):

- Ten question multiple choice quiz
- Answer sheet

Topics to be covered:

1. End of the War in Europe
 - Anglo-American advance through Western Germany
 - American – Russian meeting on the Elbe River
 - Revelations of the Holocaust
 - Soviet advance through Germany
 - Capture of Berlin
 - Unconditional Surrender
 - 7 May 1945 – Reims, France
 - 8 May 1945 – Berlin, Germany
2. The Final Campaigns in Asia
 - Strategic Bombing Campaign in the Pacific
 - China
 - Japanese Home Islands
 - Tokyo Fire Raids
 - The Battle for Iwo Jima
 - The Battle of the Philippines
 - The Battle for the Japanese Home Islands
 - Okinawa
 - Kamikaze Attacks
 - Planning for the Invasion of Japan

- “Operation Olympic”
- Decision to use the “Atomic Bomb”
 - Truman’s Rationale
 - Hiroshima – Enola Gay (6 August 1945)
 - Nagasaki – Bock’s Car (9 August 1945)
- Russia enters the Pacific War
- USS Missouri in Tokyo Bay, 2 September 1945

End of the War in Europe

Anglo-American Advance through Western Germany

After dealing with the threat of the German Ardennes Counter-Offensive, the Allied armies began to again look eastward and to a deeper tactical penetration into the Third Reich. The German military machine had exhausted its resources in the failed Ardennes operations and was now depleted in weapons, equipment and personnel. The ability of the German military to defend Germany was now greatly weakened. As Eisenhower continued to regroup and rebuild his armies after the Ardennes he was able to constitute 71 divisions by January 1945 with the expectation he would have 85 divisions available by the early spring. His expanding forces would then consist of 61 American, 16 British and eight French divisions. Of these divisions, 23 were armored and five were airborne.

The Allied disposition of these forces was such that they were broken out along a front that ran for nearly 250 miles. This front ran from the Netherlands and the Maas River near Nijmegen in the north along the Roer River down to Strasbourg and the Rhine River in the south. Germany was now facing three Allied Army Groups, the 21st under the command of Field Marshall Bernard Montgomery, the 12th Army Group under the command of Lt. General Omar Bradley and the 6th Army Group under Lt. General Jacob Devers.

The 21st Army Group had been led by Montgomery since the D-Days landings and had moved across the coastal areas of France, Belgium and had attempted to enter Holland through Operation Market Garden. The 12th Army Group had been under the command of Bradley since the Normandy landings and contained the 3rd Army under General Patton. It was Bradley's 12th Army Group that had borne the brunt of the fighting at the Battle of the Bulge in December 1944 and January 1945. The 12th had been in place along the border of Germany since September 1944 where it encountered the Siegfried Line as it began an assault on Aachen and the Hurtgen Forest. The 6th Army Group had arrived along the French – German border by way of the Anvil-Dragoon operation that had landed Allied forces along the southern coast of France. The 21st Army Group was a combination of British, Canadian and at times American forces, the 12th Army Group was composed of American forces while the 6th was a combination of American and French forces.

Up to this point in the war General Eisenhower had been pursuing his “Broad Front Strategy”. It was his goal to maintain an even movement and momentum against the Germans which helped to ensure that there was no possibility of flanking movements against his armies. He felt that this would hopefully speed the end of the war. In this strategy, Eisenhower further believed that he could control where to place pressure on the German defenses as the situation dictated and as the opportunity arose he would be able to exploit any breakthrough. Additionally, he did not think that the Allies could logistically support the British suggestion of a single thrust attack with his extended supply lines. Until the capture of the Belgian port of Antwerp in November, 1944 Eisenhower would have this logistical concern. The Broad Front Strategy did not always sit well with Montgomery, and he let his American counterparts know what he felt about

it. Montgomery and the British war leadership favored a single, heavily armored thrust through the portion of northwestern Germany that lay along the Rhine River above the industrial area of the Ruhr. This would lead to the open and relatively flat north German plain and on to Berlin. Additionally, because of the terrain armored and mechanized units could be favorably employed. In some respects this plan bore a resemblance to the ill fated Market-Garden operation of September 1944. Additionally, the British plan was intended to capture the German port cities of Hamburg and Bremen for what has been stated as political reasons, which are to keep them from falling into the hands of the Russians. Eisenhower stated that he intended to pursue a strategy that had a military objective, not post-war political goals.

Once the Anglo-American armies had breached the West Wall and its Siegfried Line defenses the only major obstacle that remained that could possibly hinder eastward operations towards Berlin was the Rhine River. **See included photograph of Americans Soldiers at the Siegfried Line** Always a formidable barrier since ancient Roman times, this would be the last obstacle to the heartland of Germany. The Rhineland campaign can be characterized as a two prong thrust complimented by the largest Allied airborne operation of World War II. The Rhineland campaign strategy of Eisenhower deferred in some degree to the British proposed plan for the 21st Army Group to thrust in northwest Germany with a supporting action by the two other Army Groups to the south. Eisenhower's strategic plan was to be accomplished in three phases. The first called for the clearing of German resistance west of the Rhine River. The second phase would be to seize bridgeheads over the Rhine at critical points along the Rhine River and the third phase called for Montgomery to break out along the north German plain. Eisenhower's other two Army Groups were allowed to pursue the strategy of an "aggressive defense" which was later interpreted to mean being able to conduct limited offensives. In this fashion Eisenhower actually used a combination of strategies that he felt offered the best opportunities in his situation.

There will always be some degree of controversy over Eisenhower's choice of objectives at this stage of the war. The British, under the instance of Churchill, were focused on capturing Berlin ahead of the Russians in order to use it as a bargaining wedge in the postwar conferences. They recognized that Stalin had postwar objectives for Eastern Europe. On the other hand Eisenhower felt that he, as a soldier, should be dealing only with military aspects and getting the war over as soon as possible. He recognized the large number casualties that would occur in attempting to capture the heavily defended city of Berlin. He felt that this was a needless waste of Allied lives and that the Russians were much closer to Berlin than any of his armies. His predictions bore him out as the Russians suffered very heavy losses when they took Berlin in April 1945.

As the Anglo-American armies began their final assault on the Reich on the 8th of February 1945 they immediately ran into two problems that were not expected. To the north, the Germans had destroyed the dykes along the Dutch-German border and the Waal, Maas and Rhine Rivers now flooded the countryside. This created a landscape that significantly delayed the advance and in so doing funneled the attackers in a six mile wide corridor. This did not leave much room to maneuver a heavily armored force. In the Eifel Region the retreating German army had destroyed the discharge valves of the

Schwammenauel Dam which in turn flooded the Roer River valley. These two actions would serve to disrupt and slow down the Allied timetable for moving toward the Rhine. It would take nearly two weeks of wet, muddy fighting, but elements of Montgomery's 21st Army group would eventually seize the German cities of Cleves and Goch and expand a breakthrough that would lead to the Rhine River. To the south, Lt. General Simpson's 9th Army (on loan from Bradley) would breach the Roer River which would bring them to the banks of the Rhine River, joining Montgomery's 2nd Army in a pincer movement across from the east bank Rhine city of Wessel. To the south Lt. General Courtney Hodge's 1st Army, after pushing through light resistance, would reach the skeletal remains of the Rhine city of Cologne. Fighting in Cologne would be difficult because the defenders hid in the rubble and ruins that were created by the Allied bombing campaign. Many British and American soldiers would later comment how they had been completely in awe of the amount of destruction that they saw. Cologne was the first German city that the Allies captured that had been the target of repeated raids over the course of three years.

An even more significant event occurred that only happens in the unplanned fortunes of war. Montgomery's forces to the north were not yet able to cross the Rhine and move to the north German Plain. That would eventually happen on 23rd of March. On the 7th of March, elements of the 9th Armored Division, part of the 1st Army, had discovered an intact railway bridge that crossed the Rhine at Remagen. As these soldiers watched, the Germans were making feverish attempts to destroy the bridge. After two explosions, the bridge was still standing although it had suffered some structural damage. With Eisenhower's approval, Bradley pushed across the bridge nearly five complete divisions in order to establish a very firm footing on the east bank of the Rhine. Montgomery was pleased with the good fortune, as it would serve to divert some German units from the area he would be soon attacking. After ten days the Remagen Bridge fell into the Rhine. To the south of Remagen, General Patton's 3rd Army had quickly breached the Siegfried Line, roared through Luxembourg and entered Germany on a front that included the wooded Eifel region, the wine growing region of the Mosel River and to the east were on the outskirts of the historic Rhine city of Mainz. **(See included Patton letter to his personnel, 23 March 1945)** To the south of Patton, Lt. General Patch's 7th Army crossed into the southern German border of the Rhineland-Palatinate and moved quickly to the vicinity of the Rhine city of Worms.

As Eisenhower noted that the clearance of the German troops west of the Rhine was going much better than he had anticipated, he decided to make modifications to the overall operational concept. The 12th Army Group had made very rapid gains and was now at the banks of the Rhine River. Rather than halt the momentum of these forces Eisenhower authorized Bradley to cross the Rhine and continue the pursuit of the retreating Germans. With this action in progress Montgomery would launch his on 21st Army Group to the north and the Germans would be hit very hard and would not be able to mount determined resistance. Efforts were made again to induce the Germans to cease fighting and encourage them to lay down their weapons and surrender. Leaflet drops were made over enemy lines by both aircraft and artillery shells all along the Rhine River that explained the situation of the Anglo-American forces in the west and the Russian

forces in the east and how the Third Reich was quickly shrinking. **(See included Allied situation propaganda leaflet dated 28 March 1945)**

With three Army Groups in place the barrier of the Rhine was about to be breached in force. On the 23rd of March 1945 Montgomery's 21st Army Group crossed the Rhine at Rees, Xanten and Rheinberg. Bradley's 12th Army Group expanded from their bridgehead at Remagen and Patton's 3rd Army and Patch's 7th Army crossed the Rhine meeting little real defensive opposition. This led to a massive advance of the American mechanized forces that would see gains of nearly 200 miles in only a matter of days. Once the initial assault forces had crossed the lower Rhine region in Northwest Germany, Montgomery launched what would prove to be the largest one-day airborne operation of World War II. Code named "Operation Varsity", the American 17th and the British 6th Airborne Divisions were made up of 22,000 paratroopers who would land behind the German lines and link up with the Rhine assault forces. This would ensure the success of the bridgehead and would force the German defenders to withdraw. Operation Varsity was the last airborne operation of World War II in Europe.

To Montgomery's southern flank was the industrial heart of Germany, the Ruhr River Valley. This area still held significant numbers of German soldiers and was still heavily defended as it had been throughout the war. Many of the industrial plants were ringed with the fearsome German 88mm anti-aircraft gun which the Allies learned was very lethal against armored forces. Rather than risk unnecessary losses, plans dictated that elements of the 9th Army would advance parallel with the Lippe River in a flanking movement, thereby avoiding the confining hills and woods of the Ruhr. The lead element of this force was the US 2nd Armored Division which was able to make rapid progress, advancing 50 miles in a matter of days. To the south of the Ruhr was the 1st Army under Lt. General Hodges. After the breakout of the Rhine bridgehead, elements of the 3rd Armored Division moved along the Sieg River and within days had units 60 miles to the front. Recognizing the significance of the situation, Bradley ordered the 1st Army to move to the northwest and ordered the 9th Army to move to the southeast. By executing this plan the entire Ruhr was now encircled by a double pincer movement that culminated when the 2nd and 3rd Armored Divisions met at Lippstadt. Bradley directed that each Army leave several Corps units behind to "mop-up" the Ruhr while the remainder of the Army Groups would continue their push eastward. This mopping up operation began on the 1st of April and by the 18th of April the Allied armies now had another 325,000 prisoners of war (POW). This was a greater number of POW's than what the Russians had captured at Stalingrad in February 1943. Because of this large of number of prisoners, the Allies literally had to create makeshift POW camps by fencing farmers open fields with barbed wire. This would contribute to the logistical strain that was being placed on the advancing Allied forces.

With the rapid advance now of all Anglo-American forces on a broad front Eisenhower directed that Montgomery turn his 21st Army Group to the north and seize all the areas that led up to the Danish border. This adjustment included having the 3rd and 7th Armies now move eastward in the quickest possible manner to link up with the advancing Russian forces. This action would then split the German defenders in two, thus leading to an easier conquest of smaller forces. This change in plan angered Montgomery and

some of the American field commanders who saw the chance to capture Berlin prior to the Russians. Eisenhower recognized this as a needless task. Earlier at Yalta the postwar zones of occupation for Germany had already been decided and capturing any additional ground would not change the political outcome. Further, Eisenhower recognized that the Russians were now on the Oder and Nesse Rivers, only 40 miles outside of Berlin while his closest unit was still over 100 miles away. Another concern in Eisenhower's mind was the need to come up with an easily recognizable boundary where his forces could halt and wait for the Russians. The boundary that was agreed on between the Soviets and the Americans was the Elbe-Mulde River line. By the 25th of April a small American patrol had encountered a lone Russian cavalryman on the outskirts of the village of Leckwitz and the next day the "link-up" was accomplished amid festivities at Torgau on the Elbe River.

Recognizing the significant gains made against limited German defenses, Generals Patton and Patch were directed by Bradley to move their forces through southeastern Germany and into Austria. In these concluding operations, the only real struggle would be for the Nazi Party citadel showplace of Nuremberg. Sadly this once beautiful medieval city had been pounded by allied bombing raids and now in the course of five days it would be reduced to even more rubble. In the planning for these final operations of the war, fears had been discussed among the American generals that the Germans would prepare for a final defense in what would be called the "Alpine Redoubt". By moving forces quickly into the area it was hoped that a link-up could be accomplished with the American 5th Army forces moving up from Italy the Alpine Redoubt could be eliminated. This was accomplished by the 4th of May when forces from both armies met in southern Austria at the Brenner Pass. **(See included Stars and Stripes Paris Edition, 4 May 1945)** Earlier the swift American capture of Hitler's mountaintop retreat at Berchtesgaden was celebrated by victorious G.I.'s when they realized that they had no further objectives to take because it turned out there was no Alpine Redoubt to worry about.

As the Allied forces overran the central Germany a curious discovery was made on the 6th of April 1945 by elements of the 90th Infantry Division at the town of Merkers. Days earlier, the Americans had heard rumors about gold being stored nearby in some of the mines belonging to the Wintershal AG's Kaiseroda potassium mine. Comments made by a woman to an American Military Policeman led to the discovery in a mine that contained literally the treasure of the Third Reich". With the Russians approaching in the east, a decision was made in Berlin to move all the transportable wealth of the government to a secure location in the west. By the end of March 1945, the Merkers mines now contained priceless art treasures from the German state museums as well as many of the looted treasures from the major cities of Europe. Additionally it turned out that the mine, as well as other surrounding mines, contained the wealth of the Reichsbank in the form of hundreds of millions of printed currency notes as well as currencies from England, France, Norway, and the United States. What was most remarkable was the quantity of gold that was found in the mine. As listed in the subsequent inventory reports prepared by the American forces they initially discovered "8,198 bars of gold bullion; 55 boxes of crated gold bullion; hundreds of bags of gold items; over 1,300 bags of gold Reichsmarks, British gold pounds, and French gold francs; 711 bags of American twenty-dollar gold pieces; hundreds of bags of gold and silver coins; hundreds of bags of foreign

currency; nine bags of valuable coins; 2,380 bags and 1,300 boxes of Reichsmarks (2.76 billion Reichsmarks); 20 silver bars; 40 bags containing silver bars; 63 boxes and 55 bags of silver plate; 1 bag containing six platinum bars; and 110 bags from various countries". In addition to this incredible find the Americans discovered what would turn out to be the looted wealth of the victims of the Holocaust. Since early 1942, the SS, under the direction of its head Heinrich Himmler, had been taking many of the valuables confiscated from the concentration camp inmates and storing them in the Reichsbank. When those assets were moved to Merkers a carefully inventory and accounting was made which documented the ownership of the SS. Within days of the announcement of this discovery Allied officials began to secure the mine, inventory the contents and move it to secure facilities. Within several days Eisenhower had cabled to General Marshall that the rough estimate of the value of the recovered assets was over \$500,000,000. By mid-April the contents of the Merkers mine had been taken to the Reichsbank facilities in Frankfurt for safe keeping. When the war ended a month later efforts were then begun to ensure that the looted precious metals, art works and currencies would be returned to the rightful owners and their national governments. The items that had been identified as being from the Holocaust victims would eventually be used to provide compensation through various organizations to the survivors of the concentration camps.

Revelations of the Holocaust

As the Allied forces advanced across Western Europe in the fall of 1944 elements of the 1st French Army entered the French province of Alsace. To the south of the city of Strassbourg, in the Vosges Mountains, these soldiers arrived at the French border town of Natzweiler. As they moved through the town on the 23rd of November 1944, they came across the deserted concentration camp that was known as "Natzweiler – Struthof". This was the only concentration camp that was established by the Third Reich in France and was used to quarry granite for the Nazi building programs. Natzweiler was one of the smaller camps within the system that was administered by the SS. With the rapid advance across France the SS authorities became concerned about the possibility of their discovery by the Allies and decided to evacuate the inmates to other camps. By late September 1944 the majority of the prisoners had been moved to other camps such as Dachau. When the French began to examine the Natzweiler camp, the full scope and evidence of the atrocities of the Holocaust was not immediately understood. The nature and existence of concentration camps was well known to the Allies. As early as 1938, Life magazine had published articles which highlighted Dachau. By 1942 a few escapees from Auschwitz had made their way to England and informed the allies of the horrors of the specific death camps. This was later broadcast over the BBC news. Various discussions were even held with regards to bombing some of the rail lines that led to these death camps like Auschwitz in order to prevent the widespread murder of the Jews of Europe. But these camps and their level of depravity had as yet, not fully been comprehended by the western Allies.

Earlier on the 23rd of July 1944, elements of the Red Army liberated the concentration camp at Majdanek, outside of Lublin in Eastern Poland. This was the first camp that was liberated by any of the Allied forces in either eastern or western Europe. Because of the rapid advance of the Russians the Germans did not have the time to destroy the camp.

Within a month Russian authorities were documenting what they had discovered and were preparing a museum on the site. Majdanek was not a camp that was exclusively used to kill people, it had served as a Russian POW camp and a work camp that supported a nearby munitions factory. Nonetheless it had murdered nearly 59,000 Jews in three short years. On the 27th of January 1945, the Soviet Army arrived outside Krakow, Poland and had overrun the Auschwitz – Birkenau concentration camp complex. Auschwitz was actually divided into three sub-camp organizations with camp II being the death camp that would account for over one million deaths. The Russians by now had begun to fully recognize the horror of the death camps that they were now discovering. In contrast to treatment received from the British and American forces it has been stated by some of the inmates, such as the Italian Jew Primo Levi, that the Russians simply “liberated” the camps and left the inmates on their own to return to their homes. In contrast the “liberating” Anglo-American armies provided food and medical care to the prisoners as well as initially restraining them in the camps in order to adequately take care of them.

Word of the Russian revelations was slow to get out the Anglo-American forces in the west for a variety of reasons, although rumors of these discoveries had been circulated for several years. It was not until the 4th of April 1945 that these military leaders and the ordinary soldier fully understood and comprehended the depth of the depravations of the German “Final Solution”. The term “Final Solution” had been earlier coined by Himmler’s Deputy, Reinhard Heydrich at the Wannsee Conference in the suburbs of Berlin in January, 1942 to mean the organized and systematic destruction of Europe’s Jewish population. Some debate still exists about how much knowledge the Allied military leadership had of the Holocaust, but it is for the most part quite clear that the individual soldier lacked a basic knowledge of the German killing system. On the 4th of April 1945, elements of the 4th Armored Division and the 89th Infantry Division entered the central German town of Ohrdruf. The concentration camp that was discovered here was the first camp to be entered by the western Allies in Germany which bore stark evidence of the Holocaust. Ohrdruf was a sub-camp of the infamous camp known as Buchenwald that was 30 miles to the northeast. The shocked American soldiers found stacks of bodies, walking skeletons and ovens still packed with bones and partially decomposed corpses. **See letter from an American soldier to his family in the United States after his visit to Buchenwald** So astounded at this discovery and the ones made over the next week, word was sent to General Patton of the discovery who in turn sent word of the discoveries to Generals Eisenhower and Bradley. On the 12th of April, after touring the mines at Merkers Eisenhower, Bradley and Patton arrived at Ohrdruf. Walking around the camp and interviewing former inmates they very quickly gained an understanding of the depth of the German Holocaust. Eisenhower later stated he wanted to be a firsthand witness to these camps so no one would ever try to tell him these events did not occur. In one area of the camp, Patton was so overcome by what he had witnessed that he vomited. General Eisenhower directed that the Allied news media be immediately brought to the camp in order to document what they saw. Later Eisenhower would cable to General Marshall with the suggestion that the editors of all the major news organizations in the United States be notified with a request to have them dispatch personnel to document these discoveries. In his cable Eisenhower informed General Marshall that what had been discovered should be made an official record so that in the

future there can be no doubt that these events occurred. He even asked that congressional delegations that had been in the European theater for visits be brought to these camps. The photographs and newsreels that were subsequently made were later incorporated into a movie that was used at the International Military Tribunal in Nurnberg where the German leaders were tried for Crimes against humanity.

As more of the camps were overrun, Allied military personnel directed that local German residents be brought in to view the camps and in some cases thousands of Germans were brought in to help clean up the camps and bury the dead. In the city of Ohrdruf the mayor and his wife committed suicide after being brought to the camp. On 14th of April members of the 102d Infantry Division discovered the bodies of 1,016 murdered slave laborers, prisoners of war and political prisoners outside the small town of Gardelegen. Their deaths occurred on the 13th of April 1945. Major General Keating, the Commander of the 102nd directed that local citizens bury the dead in mass graves. Shortly thereafter when General Eisenhower learned of the deaths he directed that 1,000 townspeople from Gardelegen be tasked to each bury a single individual body and that the entire town was to be made responsible for the care of the cemetery. Each selected townsman was to have his own name engraved on the tombstone as a reminder for the upkeep grave.

The liberation of these camps provided a new source of concern for the Allies. In addition to the hundreds of thousands of German POW's that had to be sheltered and fed, there were now an equal number of ex-camp inmates that had to be protected. In the majority of the camps there was always the threat of diseases and epidemics particularly typhus. Because of this the Anglo-American forces instituted a policy where inmates would remain in the camps in a state of quarantine until they could be disinfected and fed an adequate diet that would save their lives. Earlier, some liberated inmates had eaten Allied rations that were so rich for their emaciated bodies that they then died. Orders were given to ensure that people were to be gradually nourished back to health. For the future these former inmates would come to be known as "Displaced Persons" or DP's and it would years before many of them would, if ever, return home to the lives that they had left behind.

Soviet Advance through Germany

By the 15th of April 1945 the Russians had consolidated all of their gains along a 900 mile front that stretched from the Baltic Sea at the Oder River to the Adriatic Sea near Trieste. On the morning of the 16th of April the Russians launched their final attack against the crumbling Third Reich. Between Marshall's Zhukov and Konev were 17 armies that totaled in excess of one and a quarter million soldiers. Facing them were remnants of two German armies that at best totaled 400,000. The opening artillery barrages from Zhukov's 17,000 pieces of artillery, rocket launchers and mortars that were nearly aligned wheel to wheel along a front that stretched for ninety miles could be heard all the way to Berlin. To the south on a front that stretched for 240 miles Konev launched his attack on the final frontiers of Germany. Although he had fewer forces available to him and a wider battlefield to cover Konev would make the greatest progress on the first day of the battle. This would be with his breakthrough of the German lines

between Forst and Muskau on the Niesse River. This Russian penetration would soon threaten the German rear area with flanking movements and possible encirclement.

When Zhukov launched his attack on the 16th of April he was storming perhaps the strongest part of the German defensive lines. The area was called the Seelow Heights and it stretched for nearly 28 miles of terrain that overlooked the Oder River. Zhukov's forces would have to fight a German position that had the tactical advantages of better observation and more efficient fields of fire. The first day and subsequently the second did not go well for Zhukov's forces. So much so that Stalin called him and chided him for his failure to take even the first days' objectives after two days of battle. Zhukov was furious and committed even more of his forces to the battle. The result for him was nothing less than chaos as the tanks, vehicles and soldiers became hopelessly mired in mud, shell holes and traffic jams. The German defenders felt that they had halted the Soviet juggernaut. This was a premature judgment because by the end of the first day they would suffer the loss of 30% of their forces. The Russians could fight a battle of attrition while the Germans could not.

In the early months of 1945 Stalin had been concerned and focused on the capture of Berlin before the western Anglo-American armies. He became aware that Churchill and the British had the desire of capturing the capital of Germany and gain the associated prestige that would come from that victory. As the battle in the west raged Stalin knew that since the breakout from the Rhine River his western Allies were making great progress in their drive eastward. Politically speaking, Stalin had plans for all the ground that the mighty Soviet armies conquered. These areas would eventually be added to the greater sphere of Russian influence after the war. For Stalin, capturing Berlin would be a very reassuring bargaining chip at what would be the Potsdam Conference talks. Even though the postwar borders and zones of occupation for Germany had already been recognized at Yalta, there was still some thought by both Churchill and Stalin that there could be changes. For the British this was nearly the same goal as Stalin. However Churchill wanted to hold the ground captured by the Anglo-Americans in the proposed Soviet zone of occupation until the Russians would do what the British and Americans wanted with regards to the future of Western Europe. In the United States President Roosevelt was in such declining health that he would not factor into these postwar discussions. When Eisenhower realized the significant gains that Bradley's 12th Army Group led by Patton's 3rd Army he was determined to take military advantage of the situation. This led to the issuance of a change in the strategic direction of the Anglo-American armies. Montgomery's 21st Army Group would focus on the northern port cities and cut off the German forces from any reinforcements. Eisenhower realized that the capture of Berlin would cost needless casualties and would not necessarily contribute militarily to the defeat of Germany. This change was transmitted to Major General John Deane, head of the U.S. Military Mission in Moscow, to pass on to Stalin. On the 31st of March Stalin was briefed that Eisenhower had changed his plans and was now focused on dividing Germany with a link-up of forces to the south of Berlin, and that Berlin would no longer be an objective. Stalin initially agreed with Eisenhower's decision and pledged that his forces would attack to the south and would meet in central Germany. However, Stalin was a very distrustful and suspicious man. Within a day he met with his top level military advisors and announced that the western Allies were planning an attack on

Berlin. This then would then add fuel to Stalin's desire to capture Berlin as soon as possible at what ever cost was necessary. Further, Zhukov has been suggested as having been Stalin's most favored general. This did not sit as well with Konev who had been Zhukov's rival for many years and neither had a good relationship with the other. In that meeting Stalin drew a line westward separating the armies of both of these generals, placing Konev's northern boundary 45 miles south of Berlin. Thus Zhukov was given the "honor" of capturing Berlin by Stalin prior to the start of the final offensive operations.

With the failure of Zhukov to make any progress westward and Konev's success, Stalin decided to increase the rivalry between these two generals. By the third day of the battle Stalin had directed Konev to turn his successful breakthrough to the northwest and flank Berlin from the south. Other elements of Konev's forces would continue their push to the west where they would eventually link-up officially with the American's on the 25th of April at Torgau on the Elbe River. When Zhukov learned of the change in the boundaries and the shifting of Konev's forces he became even more determined to break through the Seelow Heights and move toward Berlin. Finally on the 19th of April after literally hammering and wearing down the German defenders through attrition, Zhukov's forces broke the German defenses of the Seelow Heights and advanced to Muncheberg, just 20 miles from Berlin. To the north, Zhukov's forces at Wriezen broke out and began a successful flanking movement around Berlin. By constant attack with fresh troops rotating in to replace those lost in suicidal attacks the Russians were closing the noose on Berlin. By the 24th of April elements of Zhukov's 8th Guard's Army and elements of Konev's 3rd Guards Tank Army would meet outside of Schonefeld in the western suburb of Berlin. The city was now encircled by half of a million Russian combat troops and would fall to the Soviet armies of Stalin in a matter of days.

The battle for Berlin can be characterized as one that was savage and involved desperate house-to-house fighting for every city block. The German defenders would consist of old men, veterans of World War I who were impressed into the "Volksstrum" or home army, and young teenagers who had barely reached adolescence. The artillery bombardment of Berlin had begun on the 21st of April, one day after Hitler's 56th birthday which would be his last. With the mounting Russian assault on the German capital reaching the height of intensity, Stalin ordered the redrawing of the boundaries between the armies of Zhukov and Konev. The border now fell through the city, but with the main center of government, the unused Reichstag building and Hitler's "Führerbunker" on Zhukov's side. The fighting raged on with the piteous German civilian population huddled in what shelter could be found in basements or subway stations. Those leaving their shelters in search of food or water would be caught in artillery barrages or in machine gun duels and quickly die.

By the 26th of April the outer defense lines of Berlin had been breached and the fleeing defenders had set up positions on the final defensive ring in the city that bordered the government district and the Berlin Tiergarten and Zoo. The Tiergarten contained two of the Berlin "Flak Towers" that was used against the Allied air raids and had space to hold thousands of Berliners in safety. Unfortunately for the Germans these 88mm guns could not be depressed sufficiently to help the defenders. The focus of the fighting now

centered on the desolate Reichstag building near the historic Brandenburg Gate. German soldiers and small groups of impressed civilians held out in the basement, offices and the upper floors. The Russian soldiers did not know exactly where the Führerbunker was located so this became the final focal point of the Battle for Berlin. Beginning on the morning of the 30th of April the fighting intensified with grenade duels of soldiers hiding between furniture in the same room. By mid-afternoon two Soviet soldiers had managed to hang a Soviet flag from the second floor. As the Russians finally were able to capture and control the 1st and 2nd floors late in the evening, another red banner was attached to a pole and wedged in a hole at the base of the statue of “Germania” on the on the roof of the building. The jubilation of this flag raising was a bit premature as the Germans in the city still continued to fight on in the building. It would be another eight hours before the last of the Germans in the building surrendered.

When the Russians discovered the Führerbunker was only several hundred yards from the Reichstag it was too late. While the fighting was going on for the Reichstag, Hitler had taken his own life. With the Third Reich in its final death agony on the afternoon of the 30th of April Hitler and his new wife, Eva Braun, had taken cyanide to end their lives. Hitler had additionally taken the precaution of putting a bullet into his head as he bit into the cyanide capsule. Their bodies were brought up to a garden in Hitler’s Chancery complex where they were doused with gasoline in a shell hole. As these remains burned Russian shells still continued to fall nearby. The battle raged on.

After the war ended debate was to rage on as to the final disposition of the corpse of Adolph Hitler. Speculation existed that Hitler had not died in Berlin, but had somehow managed to escape. In truth after the final fall of Berlin, the Russian Military Counter-Espionage Department (known as “Smersh” which when translated means “death to spies”), made their way to the newly discovered Führerbunker. They had discovered the bodies in a shell hole and reburied them on the 4th of May, but did not realize they were that of Hitler. A day later they were back at the burial site and dug them up, taking the remains to their newly established headquarters. Within days some survivors of the German staff in Hitler’s bunker were interviewed and the details of Hitler’s final days and hours was revealed. In order to ensure that Hitler was in fact dead, Stalin ordered that confirmation be immediately made on the supposed remains of Hitler’s body. Since artillery shells had still fallen in the area after Hitler’s death there was some concern that the correct set of remains was identified as opposed to those of other individuals who may have died in the vicinity. On the 11th of May, Hitler’s dentist and his assistant confirmed the remains as being that of Hitler. This was easy for them because Hitler had some extensive bridge work done in his mouth because of his bad teeth. These remains were eventually then brought back to Moscow. Those few who were involved in this operation were ordered never to speak of it again. The Russians under Stalin were to later argue that they did not discover the remains of Hitler creating what would become known as “Operation Myth”. This would fuel later debate that Hitler was still alive and would plan to restore the Third Reich to Germany. Was this done deliberately by Stalin as an attempt to create tension within his crumbling alliance with England and the United States? It is very hard to tell. In 1945 a young British officer, Major Hugh Trevor-Roper was ordered to conduct thorough research into the circumstances of the final days of the Third Reich and the reported death of Hitler to determine the exact facts and details.

Trevor-Roper was an Oxford trained historian and this would be his greatest work. By 1947 Trevor-Roper had interviewed a number of individuals associated with the final days of Hitler and reviewed a variety of extensive evidence. The results of his efforts were published in his book titled "*The Last Days of Hitler*" which emphatically stated that Hitler had died in Berlin on the 30th of April 1945. However, it was only after the collapse of Communism in 1989 that the truth came out about the Russian details and evidence concerning the actual death of Hitler. Various parts of Hitler's skull and his teeth were retained in the Russian Secret State Archive and were only made known to the general public in the early 1990's.

Unconditional Surrender

With the death of Hitler on the 30th of April 1945, the war in Europe would drag on for another week as both the German High Command staff and the Nazi Party continued the struggle. The new leader in the Fuhrerbunker was Dr. Joseph Goebbels. Not sure of what steps to take, he allowed the futile defense of Berlin to continue. He also directed that the current German Army Chief of Staff General Krebs, who had been a military attaché in Moscow and spoke Russian, open up cease-fire talks with the headquarters of General Chuikov. It was his forces who controlled the areas around the government quarter of Berlin. After consulting with Zhukov who called Stalin with the information that Hitler was dead, Chuikov continued to parley with Krebs. In the end there was no mention of surrender and Krebs returned to Goebbels without the temporary cease-fire he desired. As the evening of the 1st of May approached Goebbels bade his staff and the bunker personnel good-bye and wife his wife committed suicide. Only a few hours earlier Magda Goebbels had murdered their six children by breaking cyanide capsules in their mouths as they slept a drug induced sleep. To the west, Radio Hamburg announced that Hitler was dead and that Grand Admiral Karl Donitz, Head of the German Navy was now the President of the Third Reich. It would be Karl Donitz who would negotiate the final surrender of the Third Reich to the Allies to the east and west.

In Berlin with the death of Goebbels and the failure of Krebs to obtain a cessation of the fighting it fell to the newly appointed Commandant of Berlin, Lt. General Helmuth Weidling, to end the battle for Berlin. Weidling had earlier been involved in orchestrating the final struggle against the Russians. When Weidling learned of Goebbels death and the departure of key Nazi personnel from Hitler's bunker he initiated contact with the Russian on the morning of 2 May. In his meeting with Chuikov he clearly announced his intention to halt the fighting and spare any further destruction. He quickly signed the surrender documents and prepared a recording announcing the end of the hostilities in Berlin. This recording was played by Soviet sound trucks, but was not completely accepted by all combatants. Finally, on the 4th of May the fighting ended for the complete control of Berlin. The casualties for the battle for Berlin have never been completely recognized. For the German civilians there were so many people who were moving through Berlin from the east it is difficult to conclude a firm number. It is estimated that nearly 150,000 died from a variety of causes such as heart attacks produced by fear, suicides, allied bombing raids, rampaging Russian soldiers, random artillery shelling or even SS killing squads. The ragtag German military that defended were so disorganized that it is almost impossible to determine how many died in the

battle, other than being in horrific numbers for such a small piece of ground. The Soviet forces in the battle for Berlin were estimated to have suffered between 100,000 – 150,000 death and even more wounded. These figures give authenticity to Eisenhower's decision not to attack Berlin and spare needless Anglo-American deaths.

From Admiral Donitz's headquarters at Plon, in northern Germany, he quickly consulted with a variety of Nazi and military personnel about the next course of action. The course of action that Admiral Donitz decided on was to attempt to save as many German military personnel from capture by the Russian forces as possible. His goal was to have them surrender to the Anglo-American forces and perhaps continue the struggle against the Soviets with their help. Because of the threat of the advancing British armies of Montgomery he had to relocate his headquarters to a German Naval Training school on the outskirts of Flensburg, near the Danish border. This became the defacto capital of the temporary German government under Donitz. His goal was simple, contact the Allies in the west in order to discuss surrender terms, stall the discussions and hopefully the German forces to the east could move westward and surrender to either the Americans or British. With that discussions were opened with Eisenhower's headquarters that was now located in a technical college in Reims, France. After a partial surrender of the German forces in the northern part of the Germany on the 4th of May to Montgomery by Donitz's representative Admiral Georg von Friedeburg it was decided that any further surrender talks would have to be accomplished at Eisenhower's headquarters. Still stalling for time von Friedeburg discussed surrender terms with Eisenhower's Chief of Staff, Lt. General Bedell Smith. At that time the Germans learned that they must surrender concurrently all their forces or the allies would continue their attacks. On the 6th of May, General Alfred Jodl arrived at Reims with more instructions for Donitz about any surrender. Coming to the point, General Smith told the German representatives that they should sign or the war would continue. Finally, with Donitz's authorization, at 02:41 on the morning of the 7th of May the terms of the unconditional surrender of the German government and military forces was complete. However, at the time of the signing the surrender document was not the one that had been earlier agreed to by the Allies. A new draft had been prepared to include the French and stated that the surrender applied to the forces now facing the Russians. Stalin was not happy with this and demanded another surrender ceremony. On the 8th of May at 11:30 in the evening, another the unconditional surrender of Germany was signed in a former German Army Officer's Club in the Karlshorst suburb of Berlin by German Field Marshall Wilhelm Keitel in the presence of Soviet Marshall Zhukov. **See included photograph of Field Marshall Keitel in Berlin** To Stalin the surrender at Reims was merely a pre-conditional document and the signing in Berlin was the formal surrender. To Churchill and Eisenhower, the signing in Berlin was considered to be a formal ratification of the Reims surrender. The war in Europe was finally over. Because of a news leak of the Reims surrender ceremony prior to the Berlin ceremony, it was subsequently announced in England the war was ended on the 7th. Subsequently, the 8th of May 1945 officially became known as "V-E Day" or Victory in Europe Day. Since the Russians had the Germans sign a surrender document on the 8th in Berlin, they made the announcement to the world that the war had ended on the 8th. To the Russians, the 9th of May would be known as "V-E Day". The war was now over, but cracks in the Allied Coalition were now becoming wider.

The Final Campaigns in Asia

When the war in Europe ended in May 1945, the American industries were then able to redirect their war production efforts toward supporting the Allied forces in the Pacific Theater. By that time the American forces on both the land and sea were fast approaching the outer defenses of the home islands of Japan. The war in the Pacific would continue to be primarily one that would involve primarily American forces with some support from the British and their dominion states such as Australia and New Zealand. The Soviet Union would not enter the war until early August 1945 and therefore saw little combat action against the Imperial forces of Japan.

Strategic Bombing Campaign in the Pacific

The aerial war that was fought in the Pacific was quite different from the war in the air in the European Theater. From the onset of the European war in September 1939, the British and later the Americans (1942) were able to attack both Germany and subsequently Italy (June 1940) from the sky. Initially the results were more symbolic rather than significant, but over the course of the European war the Anglo-American air forces were able to cause tremendous disruption and destruction to the war industries of the Axis powers. In the Pacific Theater the bombing campaign against the Japanese did not make its debut until April 1942. It was the 16 plane raid of Lt. Col Jimmy Doolittle that first brought the war home to the Japanese. Doolittle's raiders had been launched from the USS Hornet as it steamed towards Japan. The planes that had made this historic strike were twin engine B-25 Mitchell bombers that only carried a load of four 500lb bombs, one of which was an incendiary. Although the bombs did hit some industrial targets, the overall damage from the raid was minimal. What the raid did do was to let the Japanese people know that their sense of invincibility had now been shattered. They would not know when or where the next aerial attacks would come.

Since the Doolittle raid in the spring of 1942, the American forces had not been able to mount any further bombing missions against the Japanese homeland. This was primarily because of the distance involved and the absence of sufficient aircraft to carry out the mission. For the next two years the American forces would advance across the Pacific Ocean and across the Asian land mass towards Japan. By 1944 the American forces had advanced sufficiently so that the might of the American air forces could be brought to bear against the Japanese installations, industries and troop concentrations in both China and Japan. In addition to the B-17 and B-24 strategic bombers that were used in the Pacific as they had been in Europe, a new strategic bomber would enter service in the Pacific. This was the Boeing B-29 "Superfortress". Unlike the B-17 and B-24, the B-29 was pressurized which would allow for greater comfort of the aircrew. The B-29 was built to carry a larger bomb capacity of ten tons (twice as much as the B-17/24), had a ceiling of over 30,000', was able to fly 20% faster at 360 mph, and had an effective operating range of 3,800 miles which was double that of the B-17/24's. The defensive armament of the B-29 consisted of ten .50 caliber machine guns and one 20mm cannon. The fire control system for the weapons was directed from a centralized location within the pressurized compartments of the aircraft. The B-29 was designed specifically for long range missions and would be exclusively used in the Pacific and not in Europe. The

crew of the B-29 would consist of 11 men including the pilot and co-pilot, the bombardier, navigator, the flight engineer, radio operator, radar observer and four gunners. It would be the B-29 that would bring the war home to the Japanese over a period that would last 15 months and leave Japan in ashes.

The first B-29 mission against the Japanese homelands departed from Chengtu airfield in central China on the 15th of June 1944. The mission had originally been scheduled for 75 aircraft, however due to one crash on takeoff, six aborts and four returns to base after takeoff the mission would be reduced to 64 B-29s. Each of the planes was carrying a bomb load of 4,500 lbs and their target for the 3,200 mile round trip would be the Imperial Iron and Steel Works at Yawata on the island of Kyushu. This plant produced a quarter of Japan's rolled steel. The bombing was very inaccurate and only one of the aircraft actually hit a building within the complex. The mission had lost seven of the B-29s to a variety of causes. The mission was not really considered to be a success in terms of ordnance on target. However, within a month after learning the lessons from this first operational raid, the Americans had their first "successful" B-29 mission against the Japanese with nearly 100% bombing results. In this mission, seventy B-29s departed from Chengtu on the 29th of July 1944 and 60 of them managed to destroy the Japanese Showa Steel Works at Anshan in occupied Manchuria. The raid demonstrated the effective utilization of the B-29 at a loss of only three aircraft. The raids would now continue against strategic targets both in occupied China, the Pacific Islands and portions of the Japanese homeland. Unfortunately, the American B-29 air bases in China did not allow for missions over all of the Japanese home islands, particularly Northern Honshu and Hokkaido. That would change shortly.

By October 1944, the American forces had conquered the central Pacific Marianas Island chain. The three key islands in the chain were Saipan, Tinian and Guam and because of their proximity to Japan construction for US air bases was immediately begun. Each of these islands would be turned into a strategic B-29 airfield. Japan would now be much more accessible than from bases in China. Approximately halfway between the Marianas and the four main islands of Japan was the small volcanic island of Iwo Jima. As the B-29 raids increased in frequency on the home islands the response of the Japanese defenders became more deadly. As a result, more of the B-29 air fleet was being lost due to aircraft malfunctions over the target and damage inflicted by the Japanese anti-aircraft and fighter defenses. Because of this it was determined that by capturing the island of Iwo Jima, a mid-point could be established where damaged bombers could land if they determined they would not be able to make it back to the Marianas. By late 1944, Iwo Jima had two operational Japanese airfields and they were in the process of preparing to build a third. These airfields supported a variety of Japanese twin-engine bombers and single-seat fighters. By November and December 1944, the Japanese air forces based on Iwo Jima had launched raids against the American bases in the Marianas and inflicted noticeable damage to all three airstrips and destroyed dozens of B-29's. The importance of capturing Iwo Jima was highlighted by General LeMay in a conversation with Admiral Raymond Spruance when he said the island would be an invaluable staging area.

Iwo Jima would fall to the US Marine Corps in a bloody battle that lasted 27 days and would claim 7,000 American lives and 19,000 wounded. With the capture of the island

the Marines had also removed the Japanese fighter threat that had harassed B-29s on their way to and from Japan. Further, the Japanese radar installation on the island which had been alerting the home defensive forces of the movement of the bomber formations on their way to Japan was destroyed. Iwo Jima's capture would further allow the USAAF to base squadrons of the long range P-51 Mustang on the island. These P-51's would now meet with the B-29 bomber streams and accompany them all the way to their targets over Japan, thus eliminating any the threat of any Japanese fighter aircraft. By the end of the war nearly 3,000 American bombers and other aircraft would eventually land on Iwo Jima.

Earlier, in the summer of 1944, General Hap Arnold, Commander of the USAAF in Washington was concerned about the lack of significant operational successes for the missions of the 20th Bomber Command that were being flown out of China. His concerns would bring about an important and significant change to the leadership of the American air forces in the Pacific theater. That leadership change would be in the form of the youngest general officer in the USAAF, Major General Curtis LeMay. In August 1944 LeMay arrived in the Pacific with a set of specific objectives assigned from General Arnold. For nearly two years in the European Theater, LeMay had risen in the command structure of the 8th USAAF as he participated in the strategic bombing campaign against Germany. General LeMay was known as a hard charging, aggressive leader who led the 305th Bomb Group in England from the front by flying in bomber formations in the cockpit of a B-17 Flying Fortress. On his arrival in the Pacific he was appointed as the commander of the 20th Bomber Command. Flying from bases in China for the next five months, LeMay would direct missions against the Japanese facilities in China and Japan. Going on his first B-29 mission shortly after he arrived, LeMay quickly understood the problems that faced the aircrews in the Pacific. Utilizing the techniques that had made him successful in Europe, LeMay directed that all B-29's would fly in the 12 plane combat box formation that he had pioneered in Europe. Each plane would drop their bomb load in sync with the lead bombardier thus achieving a better percentage of ordnance on the target. He pushed for a tougher training schedule and ordered the more successful aircrews to instruct others on the secrets of their success. This in effect raised the morale of the B-29 pilots and aircrew, reduced the loss rate of aircraft on missions and improved accuracy. Overall, the loss rate of aircraft and crew in the Pacific Theater would be less than that of the losses in the European Theater when compared by percentage to the number of aircrew personnel involved. Part of that can be attributed to the improvement of the B-29 over the B-17/24, but also because the Japanese air defenses were not as effective as that of the Luftwaffe fighters and anti-aircraft batteries. The average aircraft loss rate per mission in the 8th USAAF from the fall of 1943 to the spring of 1944 was 3.2% while a year later in the Pacific the loss rate was only 2.2% over a six month period in early 1945. With the success of LeMay in the 20th Bomber Command, he was ready for the final challenge.

In January 1945, General LeMay took over command of the 21st Bomber Command which had been established earlier in the newly conquered Marianas Island chain. It would eventually consist of the 73rd, 313th, 314th, and 315th Bombardment Wings which would be made up of over 400 B-29 aircraft. Operating from the three main bases of Guam, Tinian and Saipan, LeMay would direct the final air assault on Japan with these

assets. The significance of the value of these island bases is statistically noted when considering that, from Guam alone by the end of the war the B-29's would fly 6,339 bombing sorties to Japan. Shortly after his arrival, General LeMay noted that since their first raids in November 1944, the 21st had not been achieving the desired results from their raids on Japan. These raids had been conducted from the higher altitudes that the B-29 had been designed for, but they were very inaccurate with only 10% of the bombs falling within 1,000' of the target. Part of the problem was the recent discovery by all of the aircrew of the jet stream winds that were encountered over Japan. On some days these stratospheric winds would be moving at rates of between 140 – 220 mph. Some of the aircrew would later state that when they were bombing from 30,000' and while coming in from the west that their airspeeds were approaching 450 mph because of the winds pushing them. At this speed the bombardiers did not have sufficient time to compute their bombing formulae on the Norden bombsight. When dropped there was a significant bomb drift and less than 10% of the ordnance would hit the target. When LeMay was confronted with this phenomenon, he began to push the pilots and crew to bomb at lower altitudes (24,000' – 27,000'). Later LeMay would ensure that the aircrews were effectively using their radar so they could bomb the targets through the cloud cover. These raids were beginning to produce the desired destruction of the Japanese war industry, but yet it was still not enough to effectively cripple the Japanese and end the war soon enough.

In late 1944 the American air force planners in the United States had been searching for more efficient methods to destroy the Japanese industrial infrastructure. By this time the results seemed to suggest that the idea of precision daylight bombing that had been successful in Europe was not working as well in the Pacific. Some of the factors that had been evaluated earlier including a look at the composition of the construction materials used in Japanese structures. Unlike Europe, where approximately 90% of the buildings had been constructed from brick, stone and concrete, the composition of buildings in Japan was approximately 90% wood and paper. Both highly combustible materials. Also, the compact building density of the major cities of Japan was much higher than that of Germany. The planners wondered if it would be possible to bomb Japan in such a manner that a fire storm could be created as had been in Hamburg, Germany in 1943. The closer the buildings, the more the destruction. Since Japanese buildings were made of mostly flammable materials, fire would easily engulf all structures and therefore destroy the nucleus of the Japanese industrial capacity. The final component that would add to this aerial destruction of Japan arrived in the American ammunition inventory in 1944 and was just reaching the Pacific. At that time a group of American industrial concerns, to include the DuPont Chemical Company, had developed a jellied gasoline composition called Napalm. It was discovered that this burned incredibly hot and stuck to literally everything that it touched. Napalm would become the heart of the incendiary bomb. On the 3rd of January 1945 a raid was undertaken against Nagoya, Japan utilizing incendiary bombs to determine the effectiveness of various bomb loads. The result was that an area the size of only a few football fields was "burned out". While the initial outcome was disappointing, more raids with mixed bomb loads of incendiary and general purpose bombs were ordered. The results of a raid on Tokyo on the 25th of February 1945 was that one square mile of Tokyo was destroyed. This confirmed that at a lower altitude and with increased bomb loads much greater destruction could be achieved. The

problems encountered with the weather and the jet stream were not noticeable at the lower elevations. Rather than cause more losses to the aircrews from the closer proximity of the Japanese defenders, the loss rates actually declined. In turn the lower altitude missions became much more accurate, jumping from a rate of 36% ordnance on target in February 1945 to 91% in March 1945.

March 1945 would be the final turning point in the aerial war over Japan. The success of the early fire bombing missions gave rise to some radical changes that General LeMay would implement. It would take a great deal of perseverance to convince the American aircrew, but LeMay felt that he had developed the ideal strategy. He ordered that the B-29's be stripped of defensive armament and ammunition as well as three of the aerial gunners. He had the extra bomb bay fuel tanks removed. By reducing the weight of the aircraft, he calculated that he could double the size of the bomb load. Further, he ordered that missions would be flown at pre-designated altitudes between 5,000' and 9,000'. The raids would be flown at night. When word of this plan was announced, many aircrews were close to rebellion because they felt this was sending them to sure death. It was at this time that LeMay rose to the occasion. He pointed out the fact that the enemy would not suspect such a strategy. The Japanese night fighters were weakened and usually ineffective and the planes would be past the targets by the time the anti-aircraft defenses went into action. The 9th of March 1945 was the date chosen for the first of the "Fire" raids over Tokyo. Beginning at 5:30 pm a total of 334 B-29's took to the sky from the Marianas creating a bomber stream that stretched for nearly 400 miles. Once at the targets over Tokyo, the bombs were released at such intervals that would place one on the ground every 50'. Within the 1st hour of the attack 40mph winds had developed that spread the fire and quickly overwhelmed the struggling firemen. For over three hours the people wondered if it would ever stop. Water boiled in the canals and the temperature would reach 1,800* F. By the time the B-29's made their way back to their bases in the Marianas the flying personnel were amazed at their success. Of the 334 aircraft on the raid, only nine with their crews were lost. To the Japanese in Tokyo the toll had been enormous. Nearly 84,000 were dead, 270,000 buildings were destroyed and over one million people were displaced from their homes. Sixteen square miles had been destroyed which included 18% of the industrial area and 63% of the commercial center. The 21st Bomber Command had achieved the success it desired. Over the course of the next eight days four more fire raids were launched against the Japanese cities of Nagoya, Osaka, and Kobe. The results indicated that the missions had wiped out nearly 32 square miles of prime industrial targets and their sub-plants. Additionally, the morale of the Japanese people began to crack as they trooped out of the cities for the safety of the countryside. The industrial targets of Japan were being eliminated, but there were other targets of equal importance.

With the upcoming landing on the island of Okinawa, scheduled for April 1945, the commander of the US Naval forces in the Central Pacific, Admiral Chester Nimitz, wanted to eliminate the potential for Kamikaze suicide aircraft attacks on his invasion fleet that could be launched from Japanese airbases on Kyushu in southern Japan. Over the period of the next two months the B-29's pounded these bases. It was not a mission that LeMay wanted, but in the end his 21st Bomber Command was able to destroy nearly 700 aircraft either in the air or on the ground. Sadly, this would be of little consequence when

the Okinawa invasion began. Over the course of the Okinawa campaign, nearly 2,000 suicide aircraft of all types would be sent against the Allied ships in Task Force 57 and Task Force 58. Beginning on the 6th of April 1945, these one way planes were launched in a series of ten “*Kikusui*” (which means floating chrysanthemums) attacks over the next several months from bases on Formosa and Kyushu. The end result would be that 122 ships were hit, 29 would sink and over 3,000 American sailors and Marines would be dead. It is interesting to note that even with this prolific loss of suicide aircraft to the American bombers or the US Navy at Okinawa the Japanese still had more planes. According to the postwar United States Strategic Bombing Survey, “the Japanese had more than 9,000 planes in the home islands available for Kamikaze attack, and more than 5,000 had already been specially fitted for suicide attack to resist our planned invasion”. In total the Japanese would expend 2,550 aircraft against the Allied forces of which 475 would actually hit a target. In addition to this mission, LeMay was also ordered to begin mining operations between Honshu and Kyushu. The B-29’s would drop magnetic aerial and acoustical mines along the major commercial routes of the Japanese merchant fleet and at the mouths of harbors. This mining campaign would become known as “Operation Starvation”. The 313th Bomb Wing would be given this mission which it embraced with its full capabilities. In the three months of March, April and May 1945, the 313th planted 12,053 mines which sunk 186 ships. This was an amazing feat; since it was a greater number than what the US Navy submarines in the area had sunk over that same period. In the end the Japanese merchant fleet had been reduced to one tenth of its 1944 sea traffic. When both of these tasks had been completed LeMay returned to his heavy bombing campaign on Japan. As the war dragged on through the summer of 1945, General LeMay began to run out of targets.

By August 1945 the devastation that was caused by the 21st Bomber Command had virtually destroyed 602 major Japanese war industries, military installations, shipping ports and naval bases and 170 square miles which equated to 40% of Japan’s 66 major cities. According to the Strategic Bombing Survey the total tonnage of bombs dropped on the Japanese Empire (656,000 tons) was only one quarter of the total tonnage of the bombs dropped in Europe. In this total only 24% or 160,800 tons fell on Japan’s home islands. By contrast to the European Theater, 50% of the total (2,700,000 tons) or 1,360,000 tons were dropped on Germany. Because of the high density of buildings and the smaller area of the country the physical damage and destruction to Japan can be said to equal that in Germany. Approximately 30% of the Japanese population was left homeless at the end of the war. In the nine months of continuous aerial bombardment on the home islands 330,000 Japanese were killed which included the fatalities from the two atomic bombs. While there was a great deal of destruction to the physical structures of the cities, the effect on the population was reduced because many had left for the countryside and the Japanese civil defense authorities had devised methods to counteract the raging firestorms. The price that the American aircraft and aircrew paid during the air war over Japan was nowhere near the catastrophic losses that the American aviators saw in Europe. After the war it was determined that 31,387 bomber sorties had been flown against the Japanese. Out of that number only 87 B-29s had actually been lost in aerial combat due to the Japanese defenders. However, this number is misleading because the loss rate due to accidents and equipment malfunctions on the B-29 was actually five times higher than the loss rate due to enemy combat. The losses among the Japanese

military forces in their defense of the home islands cannot be really determined, but only estimated. The success of the air war over Japan can be best described by a statement that came from a Japanese officer who was involved in the planning of the home island defenses. He lamented the loss of the ability of the Japanese air force to control the sky over Japan and the ability of the American aircraft to fly anywhere at will. He said that the Japanese air force still had the spirit to continue, but even as eagles, they were without wings.

The Battle for Iwo Jima

The island-hopping campaign of the Americans was slowly tightening the ring around the Japanese home islands. By February, 1945, few outposts remained to prevent direct U.S. attacks. Aware that Iwo Jima had become a target for American invasion, the Japanese Army and Navy rushed to reinforce its defenses. Under the command of General Tadamichi Kuribayashi, the garrison at Iwo Jima consisted of 21,000 men. In his planning for battle, Kuribayashi decided that rather than vigorously contest the Americans' initial landing on the beach, he would fill the island with strong defensive positions which played to the Japanese advantage. Due to incessant American bombing from the 21st Bomber Command in the Marianas and the naval gunfire barrages from constant fleet actions, the defenders resorted to building an extensive network of tunnels, pillboxes, and bunkers. Kuribayashi knew that he could not win the battle; but by inflicting massive casualties on the Americans, he might discourage them from attempting similar landings—most importantly an invasion of Japan itself. Kuribayashi's plan would have its desired effect, as Iwo Jima proved to be nothing short of a nightmare, which veterans remember as a hell on earth.

On February 19, 1945, American forces commenced the invasion of Iwo Jima. Under the command of General Holland Smith, Marines of the 4th and 5th Divisions hit the beaches, with their initial target the giant volcanic mountain of Mt. Suribachi at the southern tip of the island. Suribachi dominated the island, and it was assumed that the Japanese defenses would be centered there. The 3rd Marine Division was to follow in support, and join the battle as the U.S. forces turned north. The battle began at 2:00 AM on the 19th, as American battleships began their bombardment of the island, followed by a bomber attack. At nearly 9:00 AM exactly, the first wave of Marines hit the beaches. Unlike the invasion of Normandy, the first waves on Iwo Jima met little resistance. Kuribayashi's orders were to hold fire until the beaches were full of Marines and their equipment. After moving ashore, patrols of Marines began to push inland. It was when they reached the first line of Japanese bunkers that all hell broke loose. Machine guns and artillery opened up in force, mowing down scores of Marines. Fire erupted from all sides, and devastating blows were made from artillery positions on Mt. Suribachi. Groups of Marines attempted to push inland in an attempt to cut Suribachi off from the rest of the island. They suffered tremendous casualties, including the death of Marine Gunnery Sergeant John Basilone, one of America's great heroes of the war who was awarded the Medal of Honor for actions in Guadalcanal. It was quickly made clear that Iwo Jima would be one of the most difficult actions of the war.

Despite taking heavy casualties, the Marines were establishing a firm beachhead on the island by the end of that first day. Over 30,000 Americans had reached shore by the end of that first day, with 40,000 more to come. Those ashore feared Japanese suicide banzai charges that first night, as they had seen on other islands. Yet, these did not happen on Iwo Jima, as Kuribayashi's men were strictly disciplined, recognizing that such raids were generally not effective in their goals. By the fourth day of battle—February 23, 1945—Suribachi had been cut off from the rest of the island. Now, it was time for the Marines to take the mountain. Despite hard fighting at the base of the mountain, the patrols sent to climb the mountain itself encountered little resistance; most of the Japanese defenders remained hidden in their underground tunnel networks. After hearing that no substantial enemy contact had been made on the island, Marine Colonel Chandler Johnson ordered a platoon of Marines from the 28th Marines to scale the mountain, taking a flag with them to fly if they reached the summit. After reaching the top without encountering resistance, the Marines tied the flag to a length of pipe they found on the mountain and planted it in the ground atop Mt. Suribachi. This moment was met with cheers from the men on the beaches and ships surrounding the island. Later, this flag was replaced by a second, larger flag, the raising of which was captured by photographer Joe Rosenthal in what became the most famous photo of the war. Popular belief has it that the flag raising atop Mt. Suribachi signaled the end of the battle. In fact, fighting would rage across the island for another month, as the Japanese dug in to their defensive positions in the north of the island. The advancing Americans were met by surprise attacks from Japanese defenders hidden in their caves and bunkers, and the push north was agonizingly slow and bloody. The brutal fighting was characterized by the American use of flamethrowers and grenades used to flush the Japanese out of their tunnels. As the Japanese ran out of food, water, and ammunition, desperate nighttime attacks on the Americans increased. The last night of the battle, 300 of the last remaining Japanese defenders made a final attack on the Marine positions near Airfield Number 2, killing and wounding over 200 Americans. The next day, the island was declared secure, and the battle ended.

The Battle of Iwo Jima ended in the death of thousands of Japanese and Americans alike. 21,000 men defended the island. 20,703 died. A mere 216 were captured during the battle. The Americans suffered 6,825 killed, with an astounding 27,000-plus wounded. The battle proved to be among the most intense of the war, with 24 Medals of Honor being awarded to U.S. Marines for actions taken on Iwo Jima—a full one-quarter of all Medals of Honor awarded to Marines during the war. Five more were awarded to men from different services. A quiet debate has long raged on whether the seizure of Iwo Jima was worth the cost. On the one hand, taking Iwo Jima greatly reduced the losses among B-29 crews on bombing runs to Japan. It eliminated a key Japanese radar base which warned the home islands of impending attacks, and provided an important air base for the U.S. during the rest of the war. On the other hand, the loss of nearly 7,000 killed and 19,000 wounded was a tremendous price to pay for a small island that could not serve as a Naval or Army staging base; its only worth was as an air base. Consensus on whether Iwo Jima was worth it will never be reached. But, as far as the men who fought there, Admiral Nimitz said it best that, “Uncommon valor was a common virtue.”

The Battle of the Philippines

In 1942, Japanese forces invaded and overran the Philippine Islands, leading to the surrender of a large number of Allied soldiers and the infamous Bataan Death March. As it became clear that the Philippines would be lost, President Roosevelt ordered the U.S. Commander in the Pacific, General Douglas MacArthur, to retreat to Australia. The proud MacArthur stated upon his retreat, "I shall return." MacArthur's return to the Philippines would take place during the October 1944 Battle of Leyte. One of the larger islands of the group, Leyte also had a number of deep-water approaches and was a prime location for an Allied invasion. Consisting mainly of ships from the U.S. Seventh Fleet under Vice Admiral Thomas Kinkaid, the Allied invasion forces landed on Leyte on October 20, 1944. The attack would be led by Lt. General Walter Krueger's U.S. Sixth Army, which, in all, consisted of over 200,000 men. The invasion began at 10:00 AM on the morning of the 20th. Despite resistance, firm enough beachheads were secured by early in the afternoon to allow General MacArthur to come ashore in a dramatic entrance, announcing, "People of the Philippines, I have returned! By the grace of Almighty God, our forces stand again on Philippine soil." Over the next several days, U.S. Army forces slowly, but steadily, pushed across the island. The Japanese attempted to mount strong counterattacks on October 24, sending nearly 200 aircraft to attack American shipping and the beachheads. Despite inflicting some damage, the Americans repulsed most of the attacks and took control of land, sky, and water. The desperate Japanese resorted to kamikaze attacks which, while terrifying and deadly when successful, further reduced the fighting ability of the Japanese forces in the Philippines.

Battle continued on Leyte for the next two months, as the U.S. forces, backed by Philippine guerillas, gradually secured the island. Organized resistance on Leyte ended on Christmas Day, 1944, though small units fought on until December 31. By that point, the island was secure, despite small groups of stragglers who would fight on well into 1945. Leyte was the first, and decisive, battle of the Allied invasion of the Philippines, and it devastated the Japanese defenses. Of the 55,000 Japanese defending Leyte, 49,000 were killed. Four divisions and dozens of warships were wiped out, and air defenses in the Philippines were greatly weakened. While nearly a quarter of a million Japanese soldiers remained to defend the Philippine main island of Luzon, the lack of air and naval support meant that putting up an effective defense would prove difficult. Shortly after the end of major hostilities on Leyte, General MacArthur set his sights on Luzon, and the liberation of the Philippine capital of Manila. On January 9, 1945, General Krueger's Sixth Army landed at Lingayen Gulf, while January 29 Gen. Robert L. Eichelberger's Eighth Army landed at Subic Bay. Despite their earlier losses in air and sea support, the Japanese, under General Tomoyuki Yamashita, put up a fierce resistance. Fighting was brutal, with Allied progress slow. It was not until June 28 that organized resistance on the island ended, though pockets of fighting continued all the way until V-J Day, when General Yamashita finally surrendered his remaining 50,000 troops. By that time, Japanese casualties on Luzon reached 230,000. American losses were over 10,000 dead, with 35,500 wounded. There were astounding 93,000-plus non-combat casualties, mainly from disease.

The Battle for the Japanese Home Islands

With Iwo Jima in American control and the Philippines largely in Allied hands, attention could now be turned to the Japanese home islands. Standing in the way of any invasion attempt was the Ryukyu Island chain, stretching south from the Japanese home island of Kyushu to Taiwan. The largest and most important of these was Okinawa, which was to be the staging area for what was code named “Operation Downfall”—the Allied invasion of Japan. Okinawa was a clear target for the Allies, and thus, the Japanese defenders under General Mitsuru Ushijima had ample time to prepare their defenses. Ushijima knew he could not defend the entire island, so he decided to organize his forces around the historical capital of Okinawa, Shuri Castle. Based on steep ridges, this provided him a defense line which could not be easily flanked or broken. A large amount of materiel—tanks and artillery pieces—made the defenses formidable, and likely the hardest the U.S. faced during the war.

L-Day: Sunday, April 1, 1945. Easter Sunday. 60,000 American troops—the 7th and 96th Infantry Divisions and the 1st and 6th Marine Divisions—landed at Hagushi Beach on the western side of Okinawa. They were supported by a massive display of naval firepower, with 10 battleships, nine cruisers, 23 destroyers and destroyer escorts, and 117 rocket gunboats blasting the Japanese defenses on the island in support of the Allied invasion. However, as on Iwo Jima, the Japanese chose not to contest the landings, but instead, decided to lay in wait until the Americans made it further inland, fighting from their caves and tunnels and negating the Allied sea and air superiority. The Americans, organized under the Tenth Army commanded by Lt. Gen. Simon Bolivar Buckner, Jr., moved across the south-central part of the island with little resistance during the early days of fighting. The Kadena and Yomitan Airbases were seized, and the Allied goal of pushing to the eastern beaches of Okinawa, clearing the northern part of the island, and occupying the smaller outlying islands were all accomplished with relative ease. However, it was the push south against the dug-in enemy positions, that would prove to be agonizingly difficult, earning the Battle of Okinawa the nickname, “Typhoon of Steel.” The securing of the islands surrounding Okinawa was not without loss, however. On April 18, 1945, on the island of Ie Shima off the coast of Okinawa, the celebrated war correspondent Ernie Pyle was slain by enemy machinegun fire while traversing across the island. Pyle had become a beloved figure among the American military, writing from the perspective of the common soldier, rather than focusing on the macro-view of the generals. He had won the Pulitzer Prize in 1944 for his work, and his loss foreshadowed the carnage to come.

While the Marines in the north of Okinawa encountered lesser resistance, the Army’s 7th and 96th Infantry Divisions began to take substantial casualties in their attacks on the Japanese fortified positions in the south. By April 8, they had taken Cactus Ridge, northwest of Shuri and one of the Japanese outposts of their main defense at the Shuri Line. Already, 1,500 Americans had been lost, while 4,500 Japanese had been captured and killed in fighting that often was reduced to brutal hand to hand combat. The Americans and Japanese attacked and counterattacked over the coming days, as the Allied advance stalled at Kakazu Ridge, a major Japanese defensive point north of Shuri. Fighting remained intense, and Buckner’s forces continued to assault fortified points

along the Shuri Line, hills with names like Sugar Loaf, Strawberry Hill, Conical Hill, and Chocolate Drop—despite their benign names, the battles that took place on them were brutal. Casualties mounted, and death was constant.

The shock of President Roosevelt's death on April 12, and the elation of the surrender of Germany on May 8 were muted by the constant strain of battle among the men on Okinawa. Victory in Europe meant little to men who were fighting in this bloodiest battle of the Pacific War, facing an enemy that, if resolved to defeat, was determined to take as many Americans out as possible. The Japanese defenders hoped that, in their deaths, they would demonstrate that the bloody battle of Okinawa was merely a slight preview of the ultimate carnage that awaited the Americans should they choose to invade Japan. This might provoke the Americans to seek terms favorable to Japan, short of an invasion. Instead, the huge numbers of casualties among U.S. and Japanese forces—and the civilian population on Okinawa—encouraged U.S. leaders to seek alternative means to end the war. The result would be the unleashing of the most terrible weapon ever created: the atomic bomb.

The fighting on Okinawa continued throughout May, as the rains came and the battlefields melted into a muddy mess, resembling the bloody stalemates that characterized the First World War in Europe. Finally, on May 29, the Stars and Stripes were raised above Shuri Castle, a major blow to the morale of the Japanese survivors. General Ushijima withdrew his remaining forces south to make their final defensive stand on the Kiyamu Peninsula. Wounded Japanese who could not travel committed suicide or were left to die. On June 18, 1945, General Buckner watched as elements of the 8th Marine Regiment battled the remnants of the Japanese defenders, when he was hit directly by incoming enemy artillery fire and killed instantly. His death made him the most senior American commander to be killed by enemy fire in the war, and was yet another example of the unfathomable slaughter that characterized Okinawa. Within a few days of General Buckner's death, Okinawa fell to the American forces. "Mopping up" the few remaining enemy holdouts proved a bloody affair, as many Japanese refused to surrender, but instead committed suicide by holding grenades to their stomachs. General Ushijima had already committed ritual suicide, known as hara-kiri, by disemboweling himself with his sword. On General Ushijima's orders, Major Hirmichi Yahara surrendered to the enemy, enduring this shame so that the history of Okinawa could later be told. Yahara was the most senior Japanese officer to have survived the battle. Thus ended the bloody Battle of Okinawa.

Casualties on Okinawa were unfathomable. In the wake of Iwo Jima only a few months before, the U.S. Army and Marine Corps lost another 72,000 men—with over 12,500 men killed or missing, an appalling number over twice that killed on Iwo Jima. Of the 100,000 Japanese defenders, 66,000 were killed with 17,000 wounded; 7,500 were taken prisoner. Most disturbing was the deaths of up to 140,000 civilians on the island. Some were caught in the fighting, while a great many were used as human shields by the Japanese defenders, many of whom looked down on the locals as not fully Japanese. Others died from mass starvation, as food supplies were used by the military. Sadly, many more committed suicide, believing that the U.S. forces would rape, mutilate, and kill those who fell under their control. Attempts to counteract this propaganda, spread by

the military defenders, had little effect. The Battle of Okinawa proved deadly not merely for those fighting on land, but also those fighting on the seas. Especially fearsome were the desperate kamikaze attacks by Japanese pilots against Allied ships. Translated to mean “divine wind,” kamikaze attacks saw Japanese planes, laden with bombs, torpedoes, and full fuel tanks intentionally slam into Allied ships. This basically turned the plane into a manned missile, making them far more accurate than conventional bombs, though the pilot was killed in the process. The attacks had escalated throughout 1944, as the Americans slowly gained control over the Pacific and the Japanese became increasingly desperate. By Okinawa, it was clear they could not win the war. They could, however, inflict significant damage to slow the Allied advance on the Japanese home islands, as well as discourage an invasion. In what was known as Operation Kikusui, hundreds of Japanese planes attacked American ships off Okinawa, sinking or knocking out of action at least 30 ships, and killing up to 5,000 Allied sailors. The effectiveness of the attacks were limited, and the loss of pilots great, but the fear instilled among the enemy was real, and another demonstration of the determination of the Japanese to fight fiercely until the very end.

Planning for the Invasion of Japan

With Iwo Jima and Okinawa secure in U.S. hands, plans for Operation Downfall—the invasion of the Japanese home islands—could proceed. Operation Downfall consisted of two parts: Operation Olympic and Operation Coronet. Scheduled to begin in October of 1945, Operation Olympic involved the invasion of the southernmost Japanese island of Kyushu, with Okinawa as the staging ground. In the following spring, Honshu—with the Japanese capital of Tokyo—was to be taken as part of Operation Coronet. The American plan was obvious to the Japanese, with Kyushu a necessary first-stop in any invasion due to the necessity of using Okinawa as a staging base. Therefore, the final stand was to be made at Kyushu, with little in the way of support for any defense of Japan should the Americans succeed there. Both sides knew what was coming, and in the aftermath of Iwo Jima and Okinawa, with their in comparison few numbers of combatants and civilians, the casualty estimates for Operation Downfall were astronomical. Should the Japanese civilians resist the invasion—and they were being trained to do just that—Allied casualties were figured to number in the millions. Tens of millions of Japanese soldiers and civilians would be killed or wounded. Planning for the invasion would fall under the command of General Douglas MacArthur, aided by Fleet Admiral Chester Nimitz.

The challenge to the Allied commanders was to limit both Allied and Japanese casualties to the smallest number possible while ending the war as speedily as possible. The Navy proposed a blockade, and a gradual capture of Japanese-held positions in Korea and China, which would avoid the actual invasion of Japan. The Army, however, believed that such a blockade would merely prolong the war, and result in greater casualties in the long-run. In the end, it was decided to proceed with Downfall as planned by the Army. November 1, 1945 was to be X-Day: the invasion of Japan. Throughout the fighting on Okinawa, the Japanese built up their defenses in Kyushu. Intelligence estimates had over 500,000 troops defending the island. It was clear to General George Marshall and American war planners that the invasion of Japan, should it take place as planned, would

in fact result in the millions of casualties feared. Another way to end the war, resulting in fewer American and Japanese deaths, had to be found.

Decision to use the Atomic Bomb

Since the 1930s, scientists in both Germany and the United States had been investigating the possibility of creating a weapon of incredible power through the use of nuclear fission, in which massive amounts of energy would be released through a chain reaction splitting of atoms. Such a weapon would be thousands of times more powerful than conventional bombs, and give whichever country wielded it an overwhelming advantage in the war. The effort to create this “atomic bomb” by the U.S. government was dubbed the Manhattan Project, and was under the control of the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, led by General Leslie R. Groves. The research was headed by the physicist J. Robert Oppenheimer. The project’s research was kept top-secret, with few government or military officials knowing of its status, or its very existence. Three major sites were chosen at which to undertake the research: Los Alamos, New Mexico; Oak Ridge, Tennessee; and Richland, Washington. Each was chosen for its remoteness from population centers, and from the coast, making it much more difficult for the Japanese or Germans to mount air raids should they learn of the project. Despite the project’s secrecy, it grew to a massive scale—the research site at Oak Ridge had become the fifth-largest city in Tennessee at its height, despite the fact that none outside of the project knew it even existed.

One man who knew nothing of the existence of the Manhattan Project in April of 1945 was Vice President Harry Truman. Truman had been Vice President for a mere 82 days when President Roosevelt died on April 12. He had joined the ticket in 1944, and had rather little communication with Roosevelt during his Vice Presidency. Upon his ascension to the office of President of the United States, Truman was briefed on this most secret of plans. On July 26, 1945, the Potsdam Declaration, which detailed the terms which the Allies demanded for the surrender of Japan, was issued by Truman, Winston Churchill, and Chiang Kai-shek of the Chinese Nationalists. The declaration promised that if Japan did not surrender, it would suffer “prompt and utter destruction.” Japan did not surrender. **See Stars and Stripes Newspaper (Paris Edition), July 27, 1945** Truman was faced with two choices: proceed with Operation Downfall, and risk the deaths of millions or to deploy the now complete and operational atomic bomb, in the hope that its demonstration of power would encourage or force the Japanese to surrender short of a full-scale invasion. After weighing his options, Truman came to his decision: he would use the atomic bomb.

On Monday, August 6, 1945: the 509th Composite Bomb Group’s B-29 Superfortress *Enola Gay*, named for the mother of its pilot, Paul W. Tibbets, lifted off at 02:45am from the island of Tinian. Its destination was the Japanese home islands—specifically the city of Hiroshima. For months, American bombers had been firebombing Japanese cities, leaving many of them in ruins. Despite the utter destruction and massive loss of life, the Japanese will to fight to the end seemed unwavering. *Enola Gay* was not on a firebombing mission, however. It carried a single weapon; an atomic bomb nicknamed “Little Boy.” The bomb derived its power from the nuclear fission of uranium 235. It

would explode with the power equivalent of up to 16 kilotons of TNT. The transport of “Little Boy” proved quite risky. Its design was relatively simple, in which a hollow sub-critical mass of U-235 was fired into a solid-target spike, creating a super-critical mass and starting a nuclear chain reaction. The hollow “bullet” was fired at the “target” through the detonation of simple conventional explosives. Therefore if *Enola Gay* were to crash, an electrical short circuit were to occur, or the bomb encountered fire or lightning, it was conceivable that it could detonate. Yet, the simplicity of “Little Boy’s” design, as opposed to its counterpart “Fat Man” (set off by the implosion of a plutonium-based core), made it more certain that the bomb would work. This was of immense importance of the use of the deployment of the bomb was going to convince the Japanese to end their resistance and surrender unconditionally. Colonel Paul Tibbets was the commander of the 509th Composite Bomb Group that had been stationed on Tinian since mid-June 1945. The 509th was composed of highly skilled volunteer personnel who had been selected nearly a year earlier to begin training for this particular mission. The aircrew of the 509th had trained in the mid-west as well as Cuba practicing the release of a very heavy, single bomb on a variety of target areas. None of the personnel had any idea of what type of a “super secret” mission they were training for. The men of the flight crews waiting on Tinian began to get anxious when they saw other Bomb Groups fly to Japan and back. When the mission finally took place, there was actually six B-29’s involved in the air and one was in reserve on the island of Iwo Jima. The first three aircraft that took off on the 6th of August would be the weather planes, one going to each of the three possible targets. They would be followed by Colonel Tibbets and the *Enola Gay*, which was followed by the B-29 “the Great Artiste” that served as the blast instrumentation aircraft and bringing up the rear of the flight was the “Necessary Evil” which was to observe and photograph the explosion.

At 07:24 on the morning of the 6th of August, Captain Claude Eatherly, flying the B-29 “Straight Flush” had arrived over Hiroshima. He was alone and it was his mission to serve as the weather plane and report the conditions over the target to Tibbets who was in route behind him. Eatherly had found the weather to be nearly perfect for their mission. His very short message to the *Enola Gay* was “bomb primary”. The *Enola Gay* was now only 100 miles out from Hiroshima and the navigator, Major Theodore Van Kirk, was making final changes to the correct heading as the plane lumbered on at 30,000’. Within 45 minutes the *Enola Gay* would make history. At exactly 08:15 Major Thomas Ferebee, the bombardier, was peering through his Norden bombsight saw his aiming point, the T-shaped Aioi Bridge, and yelled “bombs away”. In order to avoid the impact of the anticipated shock waves, Tibbets then plunged in a turn that would take it away from the explosion. One of the officers aboard the *Enola Gay* was First Lieutenant Jacob Beser. Beser was the plane’s radar-electronics specialist who was tasked to monitor the Japanese radar stations to determine if the B-29 had been detected or if they had the potential to disrupt the bomb. At 06:00am the Japanese radar stopped and Beser knew that the plane would be expected over Japan. Once the bomb had been dropped, Beser was tasked to record the reactions of the crew members for history. Seated in what would considered to be the “best seat in the house” was Sergeant George Caron, the tail gunner. Forty-three seconds later the flash went off and Sergeant Caron was viewing from the rear of the plane what had never been seen before. At first Caron could not speak, it was as if his voice had frozen. Then the first shock wave hit the plane and Colonel Tibbets

thought that the Japanese anti-aircraft batteries were shooting at the Enola Gay. When the first shock wave hit the plane it shook violently and shifted altitude, causing confusion among the crew. Finally, Lieutenant Beser remembered to turn on the recorder. Moments later Sergeant Caron regained his voice and shouted “there’s another one coming”. Again the B-29 was buffeted in the sky and the shock wave was replaced by calm air. With the recorder moving Sergeant Caron began to describe what he saw. “A column of smoke rising fast. It has a fiery red core. A bubbling mass, purple-gray in color, with that red core. It’s all turbulent. Fires are springing up everywhere, like flames shooting out of a huge bed of coals. . . Here it comes, the mushroom shape that Captain Parsons (note: Captain Parson was the Navy ordnance – armament officer who went on the mission and had the task to arm the bomb) spoke about. It’s like a mass of bubbling molasses . . . It’s nearly level with us and climbing. It’s very black but there is a purplish tint to the cloud. The city must be below that . . .” On the ground in Hiroshima, the temperature was reaching nearly 11,000°F. The air pressure was approaching eight tons per square yard. At ground zero in Hiroshima building materials were melting and anything else such as wood or paper and even people were simply vaporized. People who were outdoors, within a quarter of a mile of the center of the detonation, were hit with such force that their clothes were ripped from their bodies and they began to bleed everywhere. This came from the flying glass that produced cuts as well as the shock wave over pressure that burst blood vessels and caused internal bleeding. People were in a daze and many recalled that they did not hear the explosion, but only saw a flash of light. The principal targets in Hiroshima and the reason for its selection as the primary target were the headquarters of the Japanese Second Army and the numerous war production factories all around it. In the evaluation of the post strike photographs, it was clear that these targets ceased to exist. The heavy industry facilities that were on the outskirts of the Hiroshima had survived the blast almost untouched. The human toll of the atomic blast hovered near 70,000 dead from a city of 245,000 inhabitants at the time. Approximately 72% of the city’s buildings were either gone or were unusable. The Japanese people were in absolute shock over what had just happened to Hiroshima. They could not explain the cause, although within a day Japan’s best known nuclear physicist, Yoshio Nishina, was on the ground at Hiroshima. He had no difficulty in confirming that the city had been struck with an atomic bomb. This information was subsequently passed to the Japanese War Cabinet. But the War Cabinet could not come to a consensus on what should be done next.

It was sometime before 3:00 in the afternoon when the Enola Gay touched down at Tinian. The Enola Gay and Col Tibbets had completed their mission and had done it well. Within hours the news of their mission success had reached the ears of President Truman and his staff. From the United States President Truman made an announcement to the world that the United States had used atomic power to end the war as soon as possible and “It was to spare the Japanese people from utter destruction that the ultimatum of July 26 was issued at Potsdam”. This presidential announcement was picked up in Japan and brought to the attention of the chaotic Japanese War Cabinet. Among the War Cabinet were those members such as Cabinet Secretary Hisatsune Sakomizu who when he heard of the bomb was determined to end the war. A day later when the cabinet met, the Army under War Minister Korechika Anami felt that to

surrender was premature. Thus the indecision of the War Cabinet to reach a conclusion about ending the war would cause even further destruction.

After his return to Tinian he realized that he had another mission to complete. Earlier, when President Truman had approved the first atomic mission he also had approved a second one that was to occur three days later. Colonel Tibbets knew that if he did not receive a cancellation of the orders, the second atomic bomb would be dropped on Japan. At this time Tibbets selected Major Charles Sweeney to drop the atomic bomb known as "Fat Man". Major Sweeney had been on the 6 August mission as the pilot of "the Great Artiste", the instrumentation aircraft and was familiar with the mission requirements. The second mission would be flown in the B-29 Superfortress "Bockscar". The primary target would be the city of Kokura because of its munitions and armament factories scattered all over the city. The secondary target would be the coastal city of Nagasaki, a center for shipbuilding and torpedo manufacturing. The flight mission would consist of five aircraft, two weather planes, Sweeney's aircraft followed by the instrumentation plane and the observation and photographic aircraft. The mission would end up having a number of gremlins (broken fuel transfer pump prior to departure) that would cause consternation throughout the mission. After a near perfect take off at 3:49am Bockscar was on its way to Japan. Once airborne the bomb arming specialists, this time it was Navy Commander Frederick Ashworth and Lieutenant Phillip Barnes, went to work. Suddenly they noticed that the instrumentation on the bombs console was not functioning correctly. They quickly had to take the console apart where they discovered two wires that had been reversed. That corrected the bomb was armed. Sweeney continued along for several hours to the rendezvous point where he met the instrumentation plane he had flown three days earlier. There was no sign of the observation-photography plane at the rendezvous point. After waiting

LESSON PLAN - DAY SEVEN

Subject:

1945 - POST WAR:

The period of history in Europe and the world as the ashes of Germany, Japan and Italy were sifted to bring some sort of organization to Europe and the world and to set a new world order among the victorious allies.

Educational Goals:

The Student will learn facts and comprehend the events pertaining to:

- The aftermath of the final surrender of the Germans in Europe
- The aftermath of the final surrender of the Japanese in the Pacific
- The facts and circumstances surrounding the Allied occupation of Germany, Austria and Japan
- The initial development of the “Cold War”
- The procedures and conduct of war crimes trials in Europe and Asia
- The demobilization of the Allied and Axis military forces
- The final results of the war in terms of destruction and loss of life

Duration of instruction time required:

- 45 – 50 minutes

Required materials:

- World or American History Textbook
- Map of Europe
- Map of Asia

Supplemental materials (included):

- American Military Government Travel Authorization, May 1, 1945
- American Military Government Identity document, 10 August, 1945
- Personal Identification document from the British Occupation Zone in Germany
- Shoe ration card for Germans living in the French Occupation Zone in Germany
- Four Power Travel Permit for the Occupation Zones of Austria

Instruction evaluation (included):

- Ten question multiple choice quiz
- Answer sheet

Topics to be covered:

1. Europe
 - Occupational Zones
 - Germany -- Berlin
 - Austria -- Vienna
 - Policies
 - Reparations
 - Reconstruction
 - Marshall Plan
 - Cold War Face-off
 - Reductions of US Troop Strength
 - U.S. Constabulary
2. Asia
 - Occupation
 - Japan
 - Division
 - Korea
3. The War Crimes Trials
 - Crimes against humanity vs. military crimes
 - Germany -- Nuremburg
 - Japan -- Tokyo

LESSON PLAN - DAY ONE (SUPPLEMENTAL)

Subject:

American Leadership:

Those men who provided the military leadership to the American forces that were engaged in this epic struggle. Their unique and yet ordinary background and experiences that catapulted them onto the world stage.

Educational Goals:

The Student will learn facts and comprehend the events pertaining to:
The American Political Leadership during World War II
The American Military Leadership during World War II

Duration of instruction time required:

- 45 – 50 minutes

Required materials:

- World or American History Textbook
- Map of Europe
- Map of Asia

Supplemental materials (included):

- Photograph of General George Marshall (US Army Center for Military History)
- Photograph of General Dwight Eisenhower (US Army Center for Military History)
- Photograph of Generals Omar Bradley and George Patton (US Army Center for Military History)

Instruction evaluation (included):

- Ten question multiple choice quiz
- Answer sheet

Topics to be covered:

- **Army**
 - General George C. Marshall, 1880 - 1959
 - General Douglas MacArthur, 1880 - 1964
 - General Dwight D. Eisenhower, 1890 - 1969
 - General George S. Patton, Jr., 1885 - 1945
 - General Omar N. Bradley, 1893 - 1981

- **Navy**
 - Admiral William D. Leahy, 1875 - 1959
 - Admiral William F. Halsey, Jr., 1882 – 1959
 - Admiral Chester W. Nimitz, 1885 - 1966

- **Army Air Corps**
 - General Henry H. (“Hap”) Arnold, 1886 - 1956
 - General Curtis E. LeMay, 1906 – 1990
 - General James H. (“Jimmy”) Doolittle, 1896 - 1993

- **Marines**
 - General Holland M. Smith, 1882 - 1967
 - Lt. General Lewis B. (“Chesty”) Puller, 1898 - 1971

LESSON PLAN - DAY TWO (SUPPLEMENTAL)

Subject:

American Battlefields: The Battle of the Bulge

The Battle of the Bulge (German Ardennes Counter-Offensive), located along the Belgian-German frontier lasted from December 16, 1944 to February 12, 1945, was the largest land battle of World War II in which the United States participated.

Educational Goals:

The student will:

- Examine motives of the German expansion into the Ardennes.
- Explain the Battle of the Bulge as one of the principal theaters of conflict in Western Europe
- Assess the political and diplomatic leadership of such individuals as Hitler, Eisenhower, Bradley, Peiper, Patton and McAuliffe and the outcome of their actions on the battle.
- Assess the consequences of the Battle of the Bulge on the Americans, Europeans and Germans including prisoners of war.

Duration of instruction time required:

- 45 – 50 minutes

Required materials:

- World or American History Textbook
- Map of Europe
- Attached Primary Source Documents

Supplemental materials (included):

- **Photo of Soldiers in Snow** (From Musee National D'Histoire Militaire Diekirch, Luxembourg) and poem by John McAuliffe.
Question to the students: Using the photo and the poem, what role did the weather and the geography play in the battle? How was it a help? How was it a hindrance? Answer: The weather played a major role. Hitler had consulted a meteorologist to determine when to start the battle. He wanted to hinder superior allied air power. When the clouds lifted then the Americans were able to resume air attacks. The dense forests and rocky terrain hampered troop movement.
- **Memo from Eisenhower dated December 22. From Eisenhower Library**
Question to the students: Describe Hitler's motives from the Eisenhower memo. What leadership qualities did he use to rally his troops? Answer: Eisenhower said

Hitler was fighting to take back all that the Americans had won and kill you. Eisenhower said that he will fail and that the men should rise to new heights of courage to destroy the enemy.

- **Prayer of General George Patton (from Patton Museum Luxembourg)**
Question to the students: Summarize the situation and Patton's tone.
Answer: Patton gives an overall explanation of the fighting, its problems with the weather and asks for God's help. He said that he could not do it without his help.
- **Congratulations You men of Bastogne.** (from Musee National D'Histoire Militaire Diekirch, Luxembourg) This is a copy of the leaflet that was dropped on the tanks of Company "C", 707th tank battalion, during the Battle of the Bulge, December 1944.
Questions to the students: From whose point of view is this written? What is the purpose of this leaflet? Answer: This is a form of German propaganda trying to get the Americans surrounded by the Germans in Bastogne to surrender.
- **Camp regulations January 1, 1944** (from William Bearisto)
Question to the students: From whose perspective is this written? What conclusions can you draw about how the Germans treated the POW's?
Answer: This is from the German perspective. The POW's were treated very strictly.
- **Western Union telegrams:** (from William Bearisto)
Question to the students: How long before William Bearisto was missing was he found to be in a prisoner of war camp? What conclusions can you draw about communications? Answer: He was reported Missing December 17 and the family was notified January 16. Then it was April 6 before they reported him as a POW. The communications were very slow.
- **"Don't worry my dear child; I'll take you home again."** (from Musee National D'Histoire Militaire Diekirch, Luxembourg)
Question to the students: Who are these people and what is the message?
Answer: President Roosevelt and the Grand Duchess Charlotte of Luxembourg. Roosevelt will help her and the nation owes him gratitude for liberating their country.

Instruction evaluation (included):

- Ten question multiple choice quiz
- Answer sheet
- Suggestions and exercises for evaluation and review of primary source materials.

Topics to be covered:

The Battle of the Bulge

- Geography-Topography of the surrounding countryside
- German battle plan vs. subsequent American counter offensive
- Role of leadership among the forces engaged
- Prisoners of War (POW's)
- Consequences of the Battle and Impact on the Allied Plans

Methodology:**Part I:**Option One:

Instructor can provide to each student copies of the related materials as listed above and lead the students in a discussion of the events as they transpired.

Option Two:

Instructor can highlight and summarize in a lecture format the events that encompass each of the above listed topics.

Part II:

Instructor will provide to each of the studies copies of the various primary source documents (included) and perform and review and critique of each in the following manner:

- a. What is the overall purpose or theme of each document? (what is the document type: memo, letter, etc) What is the point of view?
- b. What is the significance of each document to the people of the period? (what is the time period in relation to the battle)
- c. Does each document provide a good visual imagery of the particular period of history being represented?

The Battle of the Bulge

The Allied landing in Normandy on June 6, 1944 was a psychological defeat for both the German army and the German people. The Allied troops landed 16 army divisions into occupied Europe in only five days. Then the allied armies liberated the continent. France was liberated first and then Belgium including the cities of Liege and Bastogne. These armies included the second British Army and the third US Army under General Patton and the first US Army under General Hodges. Units of the first US Army cross the German border and march to Aachen. Unfortunately they met with German counter attacks and had to retreat behind the border. The Germans stabilize the front along the Siegfried line. The allied offensive comes to a halt in the Ardennes before the border. General Patton is planning on entering the Saarland and occupies the city of Trier before marching towards the Rhine. Field Marshall Montgomery is heading as quickly as possible to Berlin to prevent Russia from taking that city.

Meanwhile in the United States President Roosevelt is busy preparing his next election campaign as well as the Yalta conference that will take place in February 1945. Here, Roosevelt and Stalin will divide Europe into two zones. This means that General Eisenhower who is in charge of operations at the Western Front will have to wait for the new tactics to be determined.

In late 1944 Germany was clearly losing the war. The Soviet army was steadily closing in on the Eastern front, while German cities were being devastated by intense American bombing. The Italian peninsula had been captured and liberated, and the Allied armies were advancing rapidly through France and the Low Countries. Hitler knew the end was near if something couldn't be done to slow the Allied advance.

The fighting quiets down and the Ardennes becomes the place where the Allied divisions come to take a rest. It is during this quiet period that the Germans seize the opportunity to prepare an enormous counter offensive. Hitler carefully brought together his last reserves of tanks and infantry for a desperate attempt to reverse the situation in the West. The plan was to rush through the Luxembourg and Belgian Ardennes, cross the Meuse River and head for Antwerp. Hitler's primary objective was to seize and recapture Antwerp which was an important harbor for the Allied forces. At the same time, Hitler intended to drive a wedge between the English and American Allies. While hoping to win the battle, Hitler also hoped to win the whole war, or at least buy some time to launch his jet flight wonder-weapons the Messerschmitt ME-262 and new generations of V2 rockets. Hitler's generals did not believe in the campaign. At best they hoped to be in a position to obtain a negotiated peace rather than submit to the unconditional surrender demanded by Churchill and Roosevelt. Hitler believed that only he had the answers.

The Allied troops had been using the Antwerp harbor to bring military equipment into Europe. Consequently, the Germans needed to destroy the harbor to block

allied progress. Possession of Antwerp would cut the allied divisions off from the sea and they would remain stuck in Belgium and Holland. The success of this operation hinged on three factors: a rapid push through the Ardennes, the taking of the Allied fuel depots and the communication routes between St. Vith (Belgium) and Bastogne and the enlargement of the corridor that would allow the German troops to attack Belgium. The pressure of the German offensive would be on the 6th SS Panzer Division of General Sepp Dietrich (the division would have to cross the Meuse River between Huy and Liege), and on the 5th SS Panzer Division of General Hasso von Manteuffel (which would have to cross the Meuse between Namur and Dinant). The northern wing of the attack would be defended by the 15th Army of Von Zanngren and the southern wing by the 7th Army of General Brandenberger. Specially trained groups of soldiers that spoke English and were dressed in American military uniforms infiltrated the Allied divisions to create confusion.

The Allied front was backed in the North by the 9th US Army of General Simpson and the 1st US Army of General Hodges. The southern wing was backed by the 3rd US Army of General Patton. In the middle (the Ardennes front) is the 8th US Corps of General Troy Middleton together with the 106th and 28th Infantry divisions and the CCA of 9th Armored divisions as well as the 4th Infantry divisions.

Allied air power ruled the skies. Thus Hitler planned an offensive to occur when inclement weather would ground the allied planes or limit their attacks on his advancing columns. The determining factor was the terrain itself. The Ardennes consists of a series of parallel ridges and valleys generally running from northeast to southwest as did its few good roads in 1944. About a third of the region was coniferous forest with swamps and marches in the northlands and deep defiles and gorges where numerous rivers and streams cut the ridges. Road centers such as Bastogne and Hoffalize in the south and Malmedy and St. Vith in the north were crucial for military operations. Thus the German plan focused on the initial breakthrough and the run west to the Meuse. For the offensive to work, the American line had to be broken and crushed immediately to open paths for the attacking panzers. If this did not happen, the offensive might bog down into a series of fights for roads and numerous villages on the way to the Meuse. Fuel would be lost as well as precious time in giving the defenders the opportunity to position blocking forces to attack enemy flanks. Only by surprise could there be success. If the Americans fought long and well, the same terrain that guaranteed surprise would become a trap.

The weather also played a major factor in the Battle of the Bulge. Hitler consulted a meteorologist to find out when the worst weather would occur. Hitler used his recommendations for the start of the battle. Although he was fairly accurate the snow did not begin until December 21. There was a dense fog that kept the U.S. aircraft from flying until a clearing on Christmas day. The battle was fought in frigid temperatures as low as zero.

After several postponements, the German offensive finally began on December 16th, 1944 at 5:30 AM under the cover of bad weather conditions from Monschau, Belgium on the German border until Eternach, Luxembourg along a 135 kilometer front alongside the Siegfried line. The pre-dawn attack came when 200,000 German troops launched a surprise attack against 83,000 Americans in the hilly and wooded Ardennes region of southern Belgium. Units of the 28th Infantry Division and elements of the 9th Armored Division fought desperately to hold the Allied line against the German advance. But 60 ton German Tiger tanks were soon rumbling through Ardennes villages. As a result of the element of surprise with many US troops untested in combat and taking advantage of the weather, the initial hard-hitting German assault met with great success.

General Eisenhower and General Bradley were having a conference at SHAEF Forward Headquarters on December 16, 1944 when they received word of the beginning of the German counteroffensive. General Eisenhower rushed a combat command of the 10th Armored Division and the whole 101st Airborne Division to reinforce the beleaguered troops fighting east of Bastogne. Tanks from the 10th Armored Division reached Bastogne seven hours ahead of the Germans, thanks to the delaying tactics of the 28th Infantry and part of the 9th Armored Division, just in time to provide a screen for the arrival of the 101st Airborne Division.

The tragic massacre at Malmedy, Belgium occurred on December 17 where 86 Americans out of 140 taken prisoner at nearby Baugnez were shot by their SS captors. The word spread quickly through the American ranks and the tactic backfired for the Germans.

On December 20th Bastogne was totally surrounded by contingent of the German Fifth Panzer Army. On December 22, the sixth day of the battle, the ammunition supply was so low that General McAuliffe, acting commander of the 101st Airborne Division, rationed the artillery to no more than ten rounds per gun per day and gave orders not to fire unless a German breakthrough was imminent. Then at 11:30 A.M. Americans saw four German soldiers approaching, one is carrying a white flag. A note was brought to McAuliffe asking for his surrender. McAuliffe asked: "You mean they want us to surrender"? McAuliffe laughed and in his famous one line reply said: "Aw nuts". In a radio broadcast after the "Nuts" incident, McAuliffe said that prisoners later told them that their officers had told them that Bastogne was to be a Christmas present for the Furher.

On December 23 the skies cleared sufficiently to permit the Eighth and Ninth Air Forces to join the battle and drop supplies to the besieged defenders at Bastogne. Short of fuel and denied critical road networks, hammered by air attacks and confronted by American armor, the German spearheads came up short at the Meuse. Meanwhile Patton had altered the Third Army's Axis of advance and attacked northward relieving Bastogne on December 26. The U.S. First Army counterattacked from the north on January 3, and ten days later linked up with the Third Army at Houffalize, Belgium. On January 23, St. Vith was retaken and by the end of January the threat no longer existed.

There were 20,905 missing or imprisoned. William Bearisto of Massachusetts was one of those. He spent six months in a POW camp and on the road in Germany during the last months of the European war. He was caught in Wilts, Luxembourg during the Battle of the Bulge and spent time in Stalags 8 A and 4 B. He recalled the continual marching between detention camps. His health is still affected by his prison camp days.

Hitler's element of surprise did not turn into an immediate crushing blow for the Americans. They did fight long and hard and won the battle. The ending of the battle is under dispute. Some say that it ends on January 28, 1945. However other areas were not liberated until February 12, 1945 such as Vianden, Luxembourg. The Americans lost 8,447 killed; 46,170 wounded and 20,905 missing or imprisoned. The 30th British corps lost 200 killed; 239 wounded and 969 missing or imprisoned. The Germans lost 10,749 killed, 34,439 wounded and 32,487 missing or imprisoned. The bombings killed 2,500 civilians.

The Battle of the Bulge was over. But the war would continue until May 8 with a victory in Europe declared. The war in Japan continued. Many of those who fought in the Bulge had orders to go to Japan. One of those veterans, Harvey Waugaman and his nurse fiancé Gladys McWilliams, both with orders to go to Japan, decided to hurry home and get married. On that day of their personal celebration, August 14, 1945, the church bells tolled not only for them, but for Victory in Japan day. The Waugamans were not going to Japan. The war was over.

From December 7-December 17, 2004 113 veterans from the Battle of the Bulge and their family members retraced the battle ground in Belgium and Luxembourg. The temperatures were frigid and the weather was snowy much like it was 60 years ago. The citizens applauded the veterans at every town, claiming: "You gave us freedom! We will never forget you!"

Name: _____ Date: _____

**Multiple Choice Quiz Lesson Battle of the Bulge
(circle the correct answer)**

1. The Battle of the Bulge was fought in?
 - a. France
 - b. Belgium
 - c. Luxembourg
 - d. b & c

2. The overall objective for the Germans was the capture of?
 - a. Paris
 - b. Berlin
 - c. Brussels
 - d. Antwerp

3. This General was famous for saying “Nuts” when asked by the Germans to surrender?
 - a. Patton
 - b. McAuliffe
 - c. Hodges
 - d. Middleton

4. A successful German attack on December 16 would depend on all of the following except?
 - a. slow push through the Ardennes
 - b. taking of Allied fuel depots
 - c. enlargement of corridor to attack Belgium
 - d. control of Allied communication lines.

5. The city that was totally surrounded by the Germans?
 - a. Paris
 - b. Bastogne
 - c. St. Vith
 - d. Antwerp

6. The Germans planned an attack during inclement weather to?
 - a. take advantage of the rocky terrain
 - b. because the Americans had summer uniforms.
 - c. to ground superior allied air power
 - d. because the Germans were familiar with the area.

7. The German loss at the Bulge can be attributed to?
 - a. fuel shortage
 - b. Allied air attacks.
 - c. American armor
 - d. all of the above

8. The American General who turned his troops around and relieved the besieged Bastogne was?
 - a. Eisenhower
 - b. Hodges
 - c. Patton
 - d. Middleton

9. The massacre at Malmedy was significant because?
 - a. Germans were captured.
 - b. Americans vowed never to surrender but to fight on
 - c. Americans were put in prisoner of war camps.
 - d. it was the last battle of the war.

10. The Battle of the Bulge was significant because?
 - a. It represented a turning point in the war.
 - b. It was critical to the defeat of Nazi Germany
 - c. It liberated Europe
 - d. all of the above.

Multiple Choice Quiz Lesson Battle of the Bulge

Correct answers:

1. d b Belgium and c Luxembourg
2. d Antwerp
3. b McAuliffe
4. a slow push through the Ardennes (should be fast)
5. b Bastogne
6. c Ground superior Allied Air power
7. d all of the above
8. c Patton
9. b Americans vowed never to surrender but to fight on (in subsequent battles)
10. d all of the above

LESSON PLAN - DAY THREE (SUPPLEMENTAL)

Subject:

Unique Experiences; The Home Front:

Those small stories that describe the bulk of the actions that were encountered by the participants of the war. These individual accounts place a human face on the personal experiences of each and every person who donned a uniform. Life on the Home front and the sacrifices that were made to eventually provide the support to make the Allies victorious in the war.

Educational Goals:

The student will demonstrate knowledge of the effects of World War II on the home front by:

- Explaining how the United States mobilized its economic, human and military resources;
- Describing the contributions of women and minorities to the war effort;
- Explaining the internment of Japanese Americans during the war;
- Describing the role of media and communications in the war effort;
- Gaining an understanding of the roles of individuals and groups that shaped the war;
- Reconstructing and reinterpreting the past by using a variety of sources, providing, validating and weighing evidence;
- Improve their test-taking skills, especially as applied to document-based questions.

Duration of instruction time required:

- 45-50 Minutes (Adaptable to 90 minute blocks: extra material available for enrichment)

Required materials:

- World or American history textbook
- Primary source documents

Supplemental materials (included):

(Author's note: although Nevada has been used as a case study in many instances, the same would have applied to any state.)

- **Document Group Red Cross** (from Nevada State Museum and Historical Society)

Read the documents about the Red Cross.

Also use this excerpt from Nevada Educational Bulletin November 1943 p. 31

Last year's satisfying increase of 31 % in the number of Nevada's schools participating in the vital activities of the American Junior Red Cross indicates that this means of educational motivation has taken on additional importance with the war. Through this youth organization students are distilling good from the evil of the day. War, through the working of the Junior Red Cross, has brought to students the meaning of altruism as an end in itself.

Mastery of handicraft, for instance has a new and lasting value when the student is making a loom to be used by a shell-shocked veteran of Guadalcanal struggling back to normal muscular and nervous control.

...During the past eight months the young people made more than 4, 324 articles for hospitalized and able-bodied servicemen.... Translate those numbers into fracture pillows, pneumonia jackets, potted plants, writing materials, joke books, games, book wagons and literally hundreds of other comfort, convenience and recreational articles. ...

Questions to the students: Using the documents and readings what were some of the activities that the Red Cross did? How important were these? How does this compare to their activities today?

Answer: They wrapped bandages and made other items for servicemen in hospitals. They wrote letters and had health related training classes.

- **V-Mail** (from Jim Graff and Nat Futterman)

Read the V-Mail letters from the Graff and Futterman families.

Question to the students: Describe the content of these letters.

Answer: Graff letter: The family is voicing concerns for the end of the war.

There is a discussion of the weather and when their son Jim wrote. Futterman letter: He discussed that he had a rash on his arms. He is lamenting the lack of mail.

- **Photo analysis:** (from Johnson County Museum)

Question to the students: Look at the pictures and summarize the importance of each one from the reading.

Answer: The radio brought them together as a family as they listened to programs and also news alerts on the war. The blue star flag showed that they had a family member serving. The Coca Cola was recreation. The Red Cross implied the work done by them in helping servicemen in the hospitals.

- **A Child's View** (from Pat Jacobson) Read the oral history.
Question to the students: Analyze the impact that the war had on this teenager.
Answer: They were lucky to get bikes and other toys of metal. They grew victory gardens.
- **108th Congress Resolution on Rosie the Riveter**.(from Rosie the Riveter Historical Park)
Question to the students: Summarize the importance of Rosie from the document. What was their legacy?
Answer: They opened up the work force to women who had never held such jobs. These were jobs held by men who were at war. They helped up keep up the wartime production.
- **Cartoon WWII Nevada in the Homefront** (from Nevada Historical Society)
Question to the students: Explain how each of the cartoons characters did their part to conserve during the homefront war effort. What was the overall effect of these efforts?
Answer: They helped conserve resources and boost production.
 Also use the following from Nevada Defense Newsletter November 24, 1943 in answering the questions:
Let's All Work to Shorten the War
From the lips of many high officials, including President Roosevelt, Churchill, General Eisenhower and others we have heard that we are going to win this war—but these statements are usually accompanied by certain "ifs". We will win the war if we can keep up the production of war material, if we can produce sufficient food, and other ifs. However to the man on the street the ifs are lost to him and the statement the "war will be won" tends to indicate that everything has been done that is necessary to win the war...I think we should say that our job at home is to do all these things that we can do in order to SHORTEN THE WAR and bring our boys home. To shorten the war one day, may mean that thousands of our boys need not die. It will mean to Mrs. Jones that is she and her neighbors will save their fats and greases, tin cans and other vital material, accept the rationing of food and clothes cheerfully and other things that will help to SHORTEN THE WAR that her boy or her neighbor's boy will have a better change of coming home.
- **Japanese internment documents** (from Harry S. Truman library)
 Also use this article from *Las Vegas Evening Review Journal* February 17, 1943:
Governor Signs Application for Japs at Moapa
Carson City, Feb. 17
Governor E.P. Carville has signed with reservations an application to the war relocation administration which would permit the importation of approximately 100 Japanese evacuees into Moapa Valley to aid in planting tomato crops.
The reservation which the governor signed called attention to the fact that the "state has only one paid state policeman available for all matters of law

enforcement” and the chief executive “under the circumstances” feels he “cannot promise full supervision and protection of the evacuees on the part of the state” as demanded by the federal government.

Governor Carville stated in his letter that he believed protection of the state’s people resources and defense plants against sabotage is of paramount importance to protection of the evacuees.

The war relocation administration before permitting evacuees to be brought into any area for work has insisted on a pledge not only by city and county officials of the area where the Japanese are used, but by the chief executive to the effect the state’s “entire resources” would be available at all times for the protection of all men and women who were evacuated from Pacific coastal areas.

Moapa Valley ranchers in letters and telegrams to the Governor had urged his approval to the plan to bring the Japanese into Nevada. The ranchers pointed out the shortage of labor in their area is so acute the planting of seeds which furnishes plants for 10,000 acres of tomatoes in California, Utah and Colorado and Nebraska would have to be abandoned unless the Japanese are imported.

Question to the students: Analyze these documents. What were the concerns of the authors?

Answer: They were concerned about the mistreatment of American citizens and wanted to give them aid.

- **Victory Gardens Documents**(from Alice Graff)

Also check out the website World War II The Homefront to see posters encouraging people to plant victory gardens:

<http://library.thinkquestion.org/15511/museum/garden.htm>

Question to the students: Explain how the victory gardens and crop production efforts helped in the war efforts.

Answer: At one point 50% of the vegetables were grown in victory gardens. It helped feed the people on the homefront and keep prices down.

Use the following to help in answering from Nevada Educational Bulletin March 1943 Vol. XXIV No. 4

Growing Victory Gardens

By Mary S. Buol Assistant Director Extension Home Economics

Growing Victory Gardens in Nevada is being urged as a real War Service. Every victory garden that is grown will help produce more food for the Nation. The vegetables that are produced will be of great value in increasing and improving the family food supply.

A home-grown supply of vegetables is greatly needed right now because of the rationing of commercially processed fruits, vegetables and other foods under that ration system that has just been established.

...The Schools of the State can be of real assistance by helping committees plan their victory garden campaigns and by assisting the school children and their families with their vegetable and fruit production problems by supplying authentic information.

...The need for vegetables is so very urgent that it might be well to replace some of the flowers with a few vegetables or plant vegetables among the flowers.

...If each school will take up the victory garden campaign as part of their war service program many vegetables will be grown this year.

- **Role of Teachers**

Question to the students: Use the cartoon and the following memo to explain the role of the teachers in the homefront war effort. (from Nevada Educational Bulletin November 1943)

Answer: They were very important in war bonds, victory gardens, and just being there preparing the leaders of the future as well as thrifty citizens.

War Stamp Program in Nevada Schools

By Thomas C. Wilson, Promotional Director War Finance Committee

For generations, Americans have realized in a vague way that great contributions were being made to our rapidly growing society by our teachers. It was one of those uncomfortable little realizations, back almost in our collective subconscious mind. We called upon one of our most highly trained professions to build the character of our youth. We placed the actual molding of future generations in the hands of these educators, but then kept them among the poorest paid groups in the nation virtually bursting with wealth.

Every time our country has faced an emergency we turn almost as if we were all back again in the first grade, to our teachers to help us out of trouble.

The teachers have made so many contributions to our effort in this war that it is almost superfluous to mention them. Our rationing program, scrap and salvage drives, community and war chest campaigns have been built around the schools of the state. As the war progresses we find more and more of our community war efforts centered in the public schools....

In this state much of the success of the war bond sales can be directly attributed to the untiring efforts of our teachers. In every school, from the little country districts to the larger city institutions, Nevada children are taking part in the national drive for bond and stamp sales with regularity and enthusiasm.

...Our teachers in encouraging the war stamp program have done a magnificent job of instilling the habit of thrift in their students at a time when the theory of saving has taken many hard knocks.

...Seldom realized is the powerful effect on adult purchases of war bonds in the state resulting from the influence of the teacher on children who come home and pass it on to their parents.

- **Women in the Armed Forces.**

Women not only went to work in new roles in factories, they also joined the Armed Forces. Some like Gladys (McWilliams) Waugaman worked in hospitals state side caring for the wounded from the Pacific. Others like Dorothy Davis were tending to the wounded on the battle sites of the Battle of the Bulge.

Question to students: Explain the role that individuals played in the promotion of women in the military by analyzing the documents.

Answer: General Marshall and Ovieta Culp Hobby played major roles as well as other congressmen. Mrs. Roosevelt also played a role in

Instruction evaluation (included):

- Ten question multiple choice quiz
- Answer sheet

Topics to be covered:**The Homefront**

- Red Cross
- USO
- V-Mail
- War Bonds
- Rationing
- Japanese internment
- Changing role of women
- Legacy

Methodology:**Part I:****Option One:**

Instructor can provide to each student copies of the related materials as listed above and lead the students in a discussion of the events as they transpired.

Option Two:

Instructor can highlight and summarize in a lecture format the events that encompass each of the above listed topics.

Part II:

Instructor will provide to each of the students copies of the various primary source documents (included) and perform and review a critique of each in the following manner:

- a. What is the overall purpose or theme of each document? (what is the document type: memo, letter, etc.) What is the point of view?
- b. What is the significance of each document to the people of the period? (what is the time period in relation to the activities of the homefront and the war)
- c. Does each document provide a good visual imagery of the particular period of history being represented?

THE HOME FRONT

During World War II, even though the United States was not under direct attack, it was at war. Thousands of American servicemen were fighting and dying overseas. The blue star flag flown in the window at home recognized that a family member was serving in the armed forces. By displaying these banners, Americans not only acknowledged their contributions to the war effort, they expressed pride in the sacrifices made by their loved ones. Those at home feared that if America did not win the war, the United States would be the next victim of the Axis powers. To stop this from happening, civilians in the United States were urged to support the war effort. They were encouraged to make huge sacrifices. The United States government used the public media to get this point across. The following tips were given:

Work hard at your job!
Take care of your health!
Don't waste
Get in the scrap!
Buy War Bonds!
Plant victory gardens!
Give blood!
Observe rationing!
Maintain security!
Write to servicemen!
Walk Don't ride!
Take your place in civilian defense!
Rent out your spare room!

In these efforts civilians could help in dealing with the problems created by the wartime economy. Life at home became the “home front” where daily existence became part of the war effort.

As millions of men went into the armed services the need for workers grew more acute. Jobs that had been open only to white men were now being offered to women and to a small extent to blacks and teenagers. More women were working and at more strenuous jobs than before. Rosie the Riveter became a wartime stereotype. This best known female occupation in the defense industries were the riveters who assembled thousands of airplanes. These women worked in pairs. One woman shot the rivet into the metal plates with a gun while another woman “bucked” or flattened the rivet on the opposite side. Due to the urgent need for many airplanes, these women became national heroines. More than any previous wars World War II hinged on as much industrial production as they did on the battlefield clashes. With millions of men away fighting and with the inevitable horrendous casualties, there was a severe shortage of labor in a range of industries. Women moved into the labor force to fill this need. Before the war women comprised 25% of the American labor force. By 1944 the peak year of female wartime employment, women constituted 36%. In all five million women joined the work force. They were actively sought by government and industry through advertisements telling them to “join

the work force and put a man on the frontlines.” There is little doubt that this expanded view of the role of women in society did change the outlook of what women could do and their place in the workforce. Women not only worked in factories, munitions plants, and farms but also drove trucks, provided logistic support for soldiers and entered professional areas of work that were previously reserved for men. Women were now working full time and yet still trying to maintain their home life. One group that suffered from this was the children whose mothers were working in the factories and the shipyards. Youngsters were sometimes locked up alone at night or allowed to wander the streets. Many attended all night movie theaters while their mom worked. Juvenile delinquency increased. A few factories did provide day care facilities. Attracted by waiting jobs, the number of high school dropouts increased significantly, resulting in the teenage work force swelling from one million to three million youngsters. Separation from fathers or sons left devastating effects. With the family shifting roles, the American family was undoubtedly changed forever.

Women were also joining the Armed forces. General Marshall was a big supporter of the bill for the Women’s Army Auxiliary Corps. He said that women must be employed in the “over-all” effort of this nation”. Mrs. Ovieta Hobby was the first director of the Women’s Army Auxiliary Corps. In a statement for a WAAC recruiting movie they said:

The conservation of manpower is a matter of first importance. The Women’s Army Auxiliary Corps was organized to assist in meeting this need by releasing soldiers from non-combat duties. These women are to take over the jobs of soldiers behind the lines and here at home, and already they are doing this in a fine manner.

All over the country the demand for goods and services exceeded availability. People had to stand in line everywhere. Shortages were an ongoing reality—shortages of both raw materials for war production and of consumer goods for everyday living. The war cut us off from traditional sources of supply. Because of the Japanese occupation in the Pacific we could no longer get rubber or tin from Malaya or sugar from the Philippines. Production of nonessential items was banned by the government. To save steel for tanks and guns, the manufacture of safety pins, clothes irons and children’s wagons were halted.

Individual citizens were urged to conserve. All over the country communities organized scarp drives to collect materials for recycling paper, cooking fat, rubber, tin and iron. Rationing was used to limit scarce items and hold down inflation by controlling prices. The Office of Price Administration was set up to increase total production and to control wages and prices and also to determine rationing regulations. The government rationed twenty essential items during the war like sugar, butter, milk, cheese, eggs, coffee, meat and canned goods. There were now substitute foods as dried powdered eggs and liquid paraffin instead of cooking oil. Gas restrictions were even more elaborate. The government also imposed a nationwide 35 mile per hour speed limit and a ban on pleasure driving to conserve both rubber and gasoline. For those who violated the rationing rules, the punishment was strict. Citizens were also urged to do what they could to keep prices down such as by making only necessary purchases, observing the price freeze the government put into effect by shunning the black market and by investing

in War Bonds. War bonds were seen as a way to remove money from circulation as well as reduce inflation. The war bonds were actually a loan to the government to help finance the war effort. The sports world did its part by holding special football and baseball games with a war bond as the price of admission. The sale of war bonds and war stamps also helped the United States to stage a rapid economic recovery. At the end of the war, more than 85 million Americans, half the population had purchased war bonds.

Americans all over the country were making do and giving up. They were also contributing to their community. Fear of an enemy attack prompted millions to volunteer to assist their community in civil defense efforts. People served as air raid wardens, fire fighters, plane spotters and defense plant and shipyard security guards. In the cities almost every block had its own air raid warden, and throughout the country people regularly “blacked out” their windows each night. Women were volunteering for the Red Cross, folding bandages, helping out at canteens and visiting wounded servicemen in the hospitals. Boy and Girl Scout troops awarded badges for Red Cross skills and received pins for their scrap drive efforts. All over the country people were planting victory gardens because labor and transportation shortages made it hard to harvest and move fruits and vegetables to market. Nearly 20 million Americans answered the call. Magazines such as the *Saturday Evening Post* and *Life* gave women instructions on how to grow garden produce. Statewide competitions were conducted and winning recipes were published. The government believed that the program did make a difference because at one point during the war, fifty percent of the nation’s vegetables were grown in victory gardens.

They were also volunteering at USO centers. The United Service Organization was formed in response to a request from President Franklin D. Roosevelt. Founded on February 4, 1941 it was manned and funded by civilian volunteers. The original mission of the U.S.O. was to provide an affordable place for newly drafted soldiers, many away from home for the first time to be entertained without getting into trouble. The first U.S.O. centers were in railroad sleeping cars, barns, museums, and churches. Within its first four years it had operations in three thousand locations. Hollywood also looked to do its part. Just the presence of these stars brought the sick, lonely and wounded G.I.’s a desperately needed slice of home. In times of peace and war, the USO has consistently delivered its special brand of comfort, morale, and recreational services to service members and their families.

The war was an ever present part of a child’s life and children learned to “pitch in” to help with the war effort. Children were among the most enthusiastic volunteers. They used their wagons walking door to door to haul junk for scarp drives; they distributed government pamphlets and collected cans for recycling. Most toys of the war were made of stamped metal. This meant that new metal toys, tricycles, even new bikes were hard to find. For those children who already possessed metal toys like the toy truck or peddle car, the war had less impact. The radio became a focal point where the family fathered to listen to the most recent war news and to be entertained by comedy shows featuring Fibber McGee and Molly, Jack Benny, Edgar Bergen and Charlie McCarthy. There were big band shows and thrillers like *Little Orphan Annie*, *the Shadow*, and *the Green Hornet*.

Mail to troops overseas was a vital part of the war effort. Government posters stressed "Be with Him at Every Mail Call". Because letters took up scarce space on military transports, the government introduced V-Mail. Letters were written on a specially designed 8 ½ by 11 inch stationary available at all post offices. Then the letters were photographically reduced before shipping.

The surprise attack and bombing of Pearl Harbor by Japan in 1941 set into motion far-reaching measures to prevent the reoccurrence of such treachery. Considering it to be of utmost importance to the national security, the government began the registration of enemy aliens on February 2, 1942. At the same time, the FBI began the secret, random search and seizure of raids at the homes and businesses of Japanese residents, rounding up dangerous members of the Japanese Black Dragon Society. The Secretary of War met with President Franklin D. Roosevelt to ask for authorization to remove alien and citizen Japanese to detention camps. Facing the uncertainty of war, President Roosevelt signed Executive Order 9066 on February 19, 1942 which resulted in the forcible internment of people of Japanese ancestry. Under military supervision, the U.S. Government evacuated more than 110,000 people of Japanese descent and placed them into 10 wartime enclaves. More than two thirds of those interned were U.S. citizens and none had demonstrated any disloyalty.

Many changes took place during the war years. The war brought a return of prosperity. It brought a permanent demographic change. The migrations toward war production centers created population shifts that affected the postwar geographic balance. The baby boom that accompanied the return of service personnel affected the development of all American institutions in the decades that followed. For those that were discriminated in the past such as women and blacks, there was model for change. The war changed the configurations of political power. Americans now looked to the federal government to deal with problems which were previously held in private or state levels. Housing constructed to meet wartime needs continued to be used in later years. The Presidency grew more powerful. But with all the change, there was continuity with the past as the basic American values endured. The war restored their self-confidence. The American dream remained their goal.

Name: _____ Date: _____

Multiple Choice Quiz for Homefront Lesson
(circle the correct answer)

1. Americans put the blue star flag in the window to:
 - a. indicate a family member was serving in the armed forces.
 - b. acknowledge their contributions to the war effort.
 - c. express pride in the sacrifices made by loved ones.
 - d. all of the above.

2. Americans were encouraged to make sacrifices including all of the following except:
 - a. wasting fat
 - b. buying war bonds
 - c. planting victory gardens
 - d. rationing

3. Jobs that had been open to white men were now being offered to:
 - a. women
 - b. teenagers
 - c. blacks
 - d. all of the above

4. Changes on the homefront included all of the following except:
 - a. women working in factories
 - b. women joining the armed forces
 - c. more women at home
 - d. women entering professional offices.

5. Fear of attack prompted millions to
 - a. save fat
 - b. recycle paper
 - c. volunteer in civil defense
 - d. listen to the radio.

6. To prevent recovery of Japanese treachery the U.S. government:
 - a. began registration of enemy aliens
 - b. sent Japanese to school to learn new careers
 - c. sent Japanese to internment camps
 - d. a & c

7. Changes brought about by the war:
 - a. return to prosperity
 - b. migration trends to war production centers.
 - c. housing increased
 - d. all of the above

8. Changes in government included all of the following except:
 - a. Americans looked to the federal government to solve problems
 - b. The President became less powerful
 - c. American values endured
 - d. none of the above.

9. Children were affected by the war because:
 - a. Children were left alone while mothers worked;
 - b. dropouts increased
 - c. teenagers entered the workforce;
 - d. all of the above.

10. War bonds helped finance the war effort by
 - a. increasing money in circulation
 - b. increasing inflation
 - c. as a loan to the government
 - d. none of the above.

Multiple Choice Quiz Home front Lesson

Correct answers:

1. c all of the above
2. a. wasting fat
3. d. all of the above
4. c more women at home
5. c volunteer in civil defense
6. b sent Japanese to school to learn new careers
7. d all of the above
8. b President became less powerful
9. d all of the above
10. d none of the above

APPENDIX A

Suggested Reading List

United States Perspective:

Band of Brothers; Stephen Ambrose (1992)
Citizen Soldiers; Stephen Ambrose (1997)
Victors; Stephen Ambrose (1998)
The Wild Blue; Stephen Ambrose (2001)
Eisenhower and Berlin 1945; Stephen Ambrose (1967)
Eisenhower and the German POWs; Stephen Ambrose & Gunter Bischof (1992)
The Feuding Allies; William Breuer (1995)
Ploesti; James Dugan & Carroll Stewart (2002)
Crusade in Europe; Dwight Eisenhower (1949)
General Ike; John S.D. Eisenhower (2003)
Patton, A Genius for War; Carlo D'Este (1995)
Monte Cassino; David Hapgood & David Richardson (1984)
Fortitude, the D-Day Deception Campaign; Roger Hesketh (2000)
Berlin Alert; Robert Hessen ed. (1984)
Thirty Seconds Over Tokyo; Ted Lawson (1943)
We Band of Angels; Elizabeth Norman (1999)
Up Front; Bill Mauldin (1945)
Brave Men; Ernie Pyle (1944)
The Longest Day; Cornelius Ryan (1959)
Operation Market Garden; Cornelius Ryan (1974)
The Battle of the Hurtgen Forest; Charles Whiting (2000)
Pacific Alamo, The Battle for Wake Island; John Wukovits (2003)
The Last Mission; James Smith (2003)

British Perspective:

Pegasus Bridge, June 6, 1944; Stephen Ambrose (1985)
Churchill's Generals; John Keegan (1991)
Operation Market Garden; Cornelius Ryan (1974)
The Longest Night; Gavin Mortimer (2005)

Russian Perspective:

The Fall of Berlin 1945; Anthony Beevor (2002)
Stalingrad; Anthony Beevor (1999)
Enemy at the Gates; William Craig (1973)
The War: 1941 – 1945; Ilya Ehenburg (1964)
The Last Battle; Cornelius Ryan (1966)
Ivan's War: Life and Death in the Red Army, 1939-1945; Catherine Merridale (2006)

German Perspective:

The Fall of Berlin 1945; Anthony Beevor (2002)
Stalingrad; Anthony Beevor (1999)
Enemy at the Gates; William Craig (1973)
The Last Battle; Cornelius Ryan (1966)
Is Paris Burning?; Larry Collins & Dominique LaPierre (1965)
The Forgotten Soldier; Guy Sajer (1971)
Inside the Third Reich; Albert Speer (1971)
The Nightmare Years, 1930 – 1940; William Shirer (1984)
The Rise and Fall of the Third Reich; William Shirer (1960)
Dresden, Tuesday, February 13, 1945; Frederick Taylor (2004)
Krueger's Men; Lawrence Malkin (2006)
Iron Coffins; Herbert Werner (1969)

Japanese Perspective:

Kamikaze; Yasuo Kuwahara (1982)
Samurai; Saburo Sakai (1957)

APPENDIX B

Suggested Motion Picture Sources

VHS Cassette/DVD Formats

U.S. Army Perspective

- To Hell and Back (1955)
- Patton (1970)
- A Bridge Too Far (1977)
- The Big Red One (1980)
- Saving Private Ryan (1998)
- Band of Brothers (2002)

U.S. Navy Perspective

- They Were Expendable (1945)
- The Caine Mutiny (1954)
- The Enemy Below (1957)
- Run Silent, Run Deep (1958)
- Torpedo Run (1958)
- PT – 109 (1963)
- The Sand Pebbles (1966)
- Midway (1976)
- The Winds of War (1983)

U.S. Army Air Force Perspective

- Thirty Seconds Over Tokyo (1944)
- God is My Co-Pilot (1945)
- Twelve O'Clock High (1949)
- Memphis Belle (1990)
- Tuskegee Airman (1995)

U.S. Marine Corps Perspective

- Wake Island (1942)
- Guadalcanal Diary (1943)
- Sands of Iwo Jima (1950)
- Halls of Montezuma (1951)

Individual/Personal Perspective

- Mrs. Miniver (1942)
- Go For Broke (1951)
- Heaven Knows, Mr. Allison (1957)
- The Young Lions (1958)
- The Diary of Anne Frank (1959)
- The Great Escape (1963)
- The Execution of Private Slovik (1974)
- The Scarlet and the Black (1983)
- A Soldier's Story (1984)
- The Assisi Underground (1984)
- Empire of the Sun (1987)
- Schindler's List (1993)
- The Swing Kids (1993)

British Perspective

- Glory at Sea (1952)
- The Desert Rats (1953)
- Dam Busters (1954)
- The Man Who Never Was (1956)
- The Bridge over the River Kwai (1957)
- Sink the Bismarck (1960)
- Merrill's Marauders (1962)
- A Bridge Too Far (1977)

German Perspective

- The Desert Fox (1951)
- Die Brücke (*The Bridge*)(1959)
- Is Paris Burning? (1966)
- Hitler, the Last Ten Days (1973)
- Cross of Iron (1976)
- Das Boot (*The Boat*) (1981)
- The Bunker (1981)
- The Wannsee Conference (1987)
- The Swing Kids (1993)
- Stalingrad (1996)
- Enemy at the Gates (2001)

Russian Perspective

- My Name is Ivan (1963)
- Come and See (1985)
- Enemy at the Gates (2001)

Japanese Perspective

- The Bridge over the River Kwai (1957)

Documentary

- World at War, 26 Volume series, B.B.C. (1981)
- Search for the Battleship Bismarck, N.G.S. (1989)
- Untold Stories of World War II, N.G.S. (1998)
- Submarine I-52, Search for World War II Gold, N.G.S. (2000)
- Berga: Soldiers of Another War, P.B.S. (2002)

The United States Army Center for Military History (CD-ROM Sets)

The United States Army and World War II, Set 1 of 7 (2002)

The United States Army and World War II, Set 2 of 7 (2002)

The United States Army and World War II, Set 3 of 7 (2004)

APPENDIX C

Suggested Internet Web Sites for Further Information

Untold Stories of D-Day @ National Geographic

<http://magma.nationalgeographic.com/ngm/0206/feature1/index.html>

Documenting America. The Library of Congress. America from the Great Depression to World War II.

<http://rs6.loc.gov/fsowhome.html>

World War II Poster Collection from Northwestern University.

<http://www.library.northwestern.edu/govpub/collections/wwii-posters>

The Institute on World War II and the Human Experience.

<http://www.fsu.edu/~ww2>

BBC – History – World War II.

<http://www.bbc.co.uk/history/war/wwtwo/index.shtml>

The Avalon Project: World War II: Documents.

<http://www.yale.edu/lawweb/avalonwwii/wwii.htm>

American Battle Monument Commission

<http://www.abmc.gov>

Imperial War Museum – United Kingdom, the national museum of war and conflict

<http://www.iwm.org.uk>

U.S. Army Center of Military History

<http://www.army.mil/cmh-pg>

The US National Archives and Records Administration: Digital Classroom, Teaching with Documents; Research Room, Captured German Sound Recordings; Research Room, Voices of World War II, 1937 – 1945; Research Room, World War II Photos

<http://www.archives.gov>

A Teacher's Guide to the Holocaust

<http://fcit.coedu.usf.edu/holocaust/default.htm>

APPENDIX D

Original/Primary Documents for Supplemental Instruction

(Newspapers/Personal Letters/Period Documents)
(Documents enclosed as indicated)

United States:

At Home

- Office of Price Administration Handbook "Farmers in the War"

At War

- War Department Pamphlet No. 8-3: Health Precautions for African and Asiatic Countries Along Southern and Eastern Mediterranean Sea, Red Sea, and Persian Gulf (1943)
- Combat Lessons Number 1
- Notes from Normandy, Army Talks, European Theater of Operations, Volume II, No. 27, 5 July 1944
- Map of Plan for the Occupation Zones of Germany and Austria, 1944
- HQ, 38th Cavalry Reconnaissance Squadron (Mech) After Action Report 1-31 December 1944
- Supreme Headquarters, Allied Expeditionary Force (SHAEF) Public Safety Manual of Procedures, Military Government of Germany, September 1944
- General Headquarters, U.S. Army Forces in the Pacific, "Downfall" Strategic Plan, 28 May 1945
- Headquarters Sixth Army, the Japanese Plans for the Defense of Kyushu, 31 December 1945.

German:

At Home

At War

British:

At Home

At War

APPENDIX E

World War II American Veterans Organizations/Associations

GENERAL:

American Legion
Catholic War Veterans
Jewish War Veterans
Military Order of the Purple Heart
Veterans of Foreign Wars

ARMY:

Association of the United States Army (AUSA)
Army Historical Foundation
First Infantry Division Association

NAVY:

Navy League

AIR CORPS/AIR FORCE:

8th Air Force Association
Air Force Association

MARINE CORPS:

Marine Corps League
Third Marine Division Association

APPENDIX F

World War II Military Museums in the United States

ARMY:

US Army Museum, Ft. Myer, VA
US Army Museum, Aberdeen Proving Grounds, MD

NAVY:

US Navy Museum, Washington Navy Yard, DC

AIR CORPS/AIR FORCE:

USAF Museum, Wright-Patterson AFB, Dayton, OH

MARINE CORPS:

US Marine Corps Museum, Quantico, VA
US Marine Corps Museum, Washington Navy Yard, DC

COAST GUARD:

APPENDIX G

Glossary of Abbreviations

AA	Antiaircraft
AAR	After action report
Abn	Airborne
AC	Air Corps
AEAF	Allied Expeditionary Air Force
AEF	Allied Expeditionary Force
AFHQ	Allied Force Headquarters
A Gp	Army group
AIS	Allied Information Service
ANCXF	Allied Naval Commander, Expeditionary Force
AT	Antitank
ATS	(Women's) Auxiliary Territorial Service (British)
Br	British
Br COS	British Chiefs of Staff Committee
CAD	Civil Affairs Division
CCAC	Combined Civil Affairs Committee
CinC	Commander in Chief
cm.	Centimeter
CNO	Chief of Naval Operations
Comdr	Commander
COMZ	Communications Zone
Conf	Conference
COSSAC	Chief of Staff to the Supreme Allied Commander (Designate)
DD	Duplex drive
DDT	Dichloro-Dithenyl-Trichloroethane
Dir	Directive, director
DUKW	2 1/2-ton 6x6 amphibian truck
E-boat	Small torpedo boat (German)
ETOUSA	European Theater of Operations, U.S. Army
Exec	Executive
FAAA	First Allied Airborne Army
FFI	<i>Forces Françaises de l'Intérieur</i> (French Forces of the Interior)
Flak	Fliegerabwehrkanone (antiaircraft artillery gun) (German)
FO	Field order
FUSA	First U.S. Army
FUSAG	First U.S. Army Group
GHQ	general headquarters
G-1	Personnel section of divisional or higher staff
G-2	Intelligence section
G-3	Operations section
G-4	Supply section
G-5	Civil Affairs Division of SHAEF

G-6	Short-lived division of SHAEF which dealt with public relations and psychological warfare
GO	General order
Gp	Group
<i>Heeresgruppe</i>	Army group (German)
Hq	Headquarters
Intel	Intelligence
JCS	Joint Chiefs of Staff
JIC	Joint Intelligence Committee
JPS	Joint Staff Planners
J S M	Joint Staff Mission (British mission to Washington)
JU.	Junkers (designation of airplane built by company of that name) (German)
<i>Kampfgruppe</i>	German combat group of variable size
<i>Kw.</i>	<i>Kraftwagen</i> (motor vehicle) (German)
LBK	landing barge, kitchen
LBV	landing barge, vehicle
LCI	landing craft, infantry
LCI (L)	landing craft, infantry (large)
LCM	landing craft, mechanized
LCM (3)	landing craft, mechanized (Mark III)
LCP (L)	landing craft, personnel (large)
LCP (R)	landing craft, personnel (ramp)
LCR	landing craft, rubber
LCR(S)	landing craft, rubber (small)
LCT (R)	landing craft, tank (rocket)
LCT (6)	landing craft, tank (Mark VI)
LCV	landing craft, vehicle
LCVP	landing craft, vehicle and personnel
LST	landing ship, tank
Ltr of Instr	Letter of instructions
Luftwaffe	German Air Force
LVT	landing vehicle, tracked
LVT (1)	landing vehicle, tracked, unarmored (Mark I) ("Alligator)
LVT (4)	landing vehicle, tracked, unarmored (Mark IV)
LVT (A) (1)	landing vehicle, tracked (armored) (Mark I) ("Water Buffalo," turret type)
LVT (A) (2)	landing vehicle, tracked (armored) (Mark II) ("Water Buffalo," canopy type)
LVT (A) (4)	landing vehicle, tracked (armored) (Mark IV)
<i>M. G.</i>	<i>Maschinengewehr</i> (machine gun) (German)
Mil Mission Moscow	U.S. Military Mission to Moscow
mm.	Millimeter
MOI	Ministry of Information (British)
NATOUSA	North African Theater of Operations
NUSA	Ninth U.S. Army
<i>Ob. d. H.</i>	<i>Oberbefehlshaber des Heeres</i> (Commander in Chief of the Army) (German)
<i>OB NORD W E S T</i>	<i>Oberbefehlshaber Nordwest</i> (Headquarters, Commander in Chief Northwest [northwest Germany, Denmark, and the Netherlands]) (German)

<i>OB SUED</i>	<i>Oberbefehlshaber Sued</i> (Headquarters, Commander in Chief South [southern Germany and several army groups on the Eastern front]) (German)
<i>OB SUEDOST</i>	<i>Oberbefehlshaber Suedost</i> (Headquarters, Commander in Chief Southeast [the Balkans]) (German)
<i>OB SUED WEST</i>	<i>Oberbefehlshaber Suedwest</i> (Headquarters, Commander in Chief Southwest [Italy]) (German)
<i>OB WEST</i>	<i>Oberbefehlshaber West</i> (Headquarters, Commander in Chief West [France, Belgium, and the Netherlands]), highest German ground headquarters of the Western Front until May 1945 (German)
<i>Oberkommando</i>	Headquarters of an army or higher military organization (German)
OCS	Officer Candidate School
OKH	<i>Oberkommando des Heeres</i> (Army High Command) (German)
OKL	<i>Oberkommando der Luftwaffe</i> (Luftwaffe High Command) (German)
OKM	<i>Oberkommando der Kriegsmarine</i> (Navy High Command) (German)
Organization Todt	Paramilitary construction organization of the Nazi party, auxiliary to the Wehrmacht. Named after its founder, Dr. Todt. (German)
OSS	Office of Strategic Services
OWI	Office of War Information
POL	Petrol (gasoline), oil, and lubricants
PRD	Public Relations Division, SHAEF
PT	patrol vessel, motor torpedo boat
PWE	Political Warfare Executive
<i>Pz.</i>	<i>Panzer</i> (German)
Pz. Kpfw.	Panzerkampfwagen (tank)(German)
RAF	Royal Air Force
Rec	Records
<i>Reichskanzlei</i>	Reich Chancellory (German)
RN	Royal Navy
SAC	Supreme Allied Commander
SACMED	Supreme Allied Commander, Mediterranean Theater
SCAEF	Supreme Commander, Allied Expeditionary Force
SCR	Signal Corps radio
SFHQ	Special Force Headquarters
SGS	Secretary, General Staff
SHAEF	Supreme Headquarters, Allied Expeditionary Force
Sig C	Signal Corps
Sitrep	Situation report
SO	Special Operations
SOE	Special Operations Executive
SOP	Standing operating procedure
SP	Self-propelled
SS	<i>Schutzstaffel</i> (Elite Guard) (German)
Stu. G.	Sturmgeschuetz (self-propelled assault gun) (German)
Stu. H.	Sturmhaubitze (self-propelled assault howitzer) (German)
Stu. K.	Sturmkanone (self-propelled assault gun) (German)
TD	Tank destroyer
Tel	Telegram, teletype
TIS	Theater Intelligence Section
TNT	Trinitrotoluene; trinitrotoluol (high explosive)
UNRRA	United Nations Relief and Rehabilitation Administration
U-boat	Submarine

USAFIME	U. S. Army Forces in the Middle East
USAFBI	U.S. Army Forces in the British Isles
USFET	U.S. Forces in the European Theater
USSBS	U.S. Strategic Bombing Survey
USSR	Union of Soviet Socialist Republics
USSTAF	U.S. Strategic Air Forces
<i>Volkssturm</i>	A people's militia, partially organized in one of the last steps of German mobilization for total war
WAAC	Women's Army Auxiliary Corps
WAC	Women's Army Corps
WD	War Department
Wehrmacht	German Armed Forces
WO	War Office

APPENDIX H

Glossary of Code Names

ANVIL	The planned 1944 Allied invasion of southern France in the Toulon–Marseille area
ARCADIA	U.S.-British staff conference at Washington, December 1941 -January 1942
BIGOT	Special security procedure for OVERLORD
ARGONAUT	Yalta Conference, February 1945
BENEFICIARY	Plan for breaking out of the Normandy lodgment by means of a combined airborne-amphibious attack on St. Malo
BOLERO	Build-up of troops and supplies in the United Kingdom in preparation for a cross-Channel attack
BRADDOCK II	Dropping of small fuze incendiaries to European workers for use in sabotage operations
COBRA	Operation launched by First U.S. Army on 25 July 1944, designed to break out of the Normandy lodgment
COCKADE	Diversionary operations in 1943 to pin down German forces in the west
COMET	British plan, not carried out, for an air drop on 7 September 1944 in the Arnhem–Nijmegen area
CROSSBOW	A general term used by the Allies to refer to the German long-range weapons program and to Allied countermeasures against it
ECLIPSE	Name given in November 1944 to posthostilities plans for Germany
EUREKA	Tehran Conference, November–December 1943
GARDEN	See MARKET-GARDEN
GOODWOOD	British attack to break out of the Normandy lodgment, late July 1944, coinciding with U.S. Operation COBRA
<i>GREIF</i>	German deception operation in support of the Ardennes counteroffensive
GRENADE	Ninth Army supporting attack for Operation VERITABLE
GYMNAST	1941 plan for invasion of North Africa
HANDS UP	Plan for breaking out of the Normandy lodgment by means of a combined airborne-amphibious attack on Quiberon Bay
HUSKY	Allied invasion of Sicily in July 1943
INDEPENDENCE	Plan for First French Army attack against German garrisons on French coasts, December 1944
LINNET I	Planned airborne drop at Tournai, Belgium, September 1944
LINNET II	Planned airborne drop at Aachen–Maastricht Gap, September 1944
LUCKY STRIKE	21 Army Group plan calling for an eastward drive and the capture of the Seine ports as an alternative to plans for the earlier capture of Brittany, considered in May and June 1944

MARKET-GARDEN	Airborne operation intended to establish a bridgehead across the Rhine in the Netherlands, September 1944. Operation MARKET involved seizure of bridges in the Nijmegen–Arnhem area, and Operation GARDEN was to open a corridor from Eindhoven northward toward Germany.
NEST EGG	Plan for occupation of Channel Islands in case of German collapse or surrender
NOBALL	Term used by the air forces in referring to target sites in their attacks on long-range weapons
<i>NORDWIND</i>	German counterattack in Alsace, January 1945
OCTAGON	Second Quebec Conference, September 1944
OVERLORD	Plan for the invasion of northwest Europe, spring 1944
PLUNDER	Montgomery’s northern crossing of the Rhine, March 1945
POINTBLANK	The Combined Bomber Offensive from the United Kingdom against Germany
QUADRANT	First Quebec Conference, August 1943
RANKIN I, II, III	Plans for return to the Continent in the event of deterioration of the German position
REDLINE	Radio circuits set up in September 1944 for messages to and from the Supreme Commander
ROUNDUP	Various 1941–43 plans for a cross-Channel attack in the final phases of the war
SEXTANT	Cairo Conference, 22–26 November 1943
SHARPENER	Supreme Commander’s advance command post at Portsmouth, May 1944
SHELLBURST	SHAEF advance headquarters at Tournières, France, near Bayeux, established August 1944
SHIPMATE	Enlarged SHAEF forward headquarters near Portsmouth, replacing SHARPENER
SLEDGEHAMMER	Plan for a limited-objective attack across the Channel in 1942 designed either to take advantage of a crack in German morale or as a “sacrifice” operation to aid the Russians
SPRING	Canadian attack, July 1944, coinciding with Operation COBRA
STARKEY	Threat directed in 1943 against the Pas-de-Calais
WORDHILT	Plan for a combined airborne-amphibious operation to seize the area east of Brest, August 1944
SYMBOL	Casablanca Conference, January 1943
TALISMAN	Early name for posthostilities plans for Germany
TERMINAL	Potsdam Conference, July 1945
TINDALL	Threat directed against Norway in 1943
TOPFLIGHT	Signal for release of press information on D-Day assault
TORCH	Allied invasion of North and Northwest Africa, 1942
TOTALIZE	Post-COBRA attack in France
TRACTABLE	Post-COBRA attack in France
TRANSFIGURE	Plan for airborne operation to capture and control important road nets in Paris–Orléans area, 16–17 August 1944
TRIDENT	Washington Conference, May 1943
UNDERTONE	Seventh Army operation to breach West Wall and establish bridgehead over Rhine in Worms area, March–April 1945
VARSITY	FAAA operation in support of Operation PLUNDER
VERITABLE	21 Army Group plan for a Canadian attack between the Maas and the Rhine, January–February 1945
WADHAM	Threat directed against the Cotentin in 1943
WIDewing	SHAEF headquarters at Bushy Park, near London